A True, Authentick, and Impartial

HISTORY

OF THE

LIFE and Glorious ACTIONS

OF THE

CZAR of Muſcovy:

From his BIRTH to his DEATH.

CONTAINING,

I. An Exact Account of his Title, Deſcent, Family and Iſſue.
II. His DETECTION of the ſeveral PLOTS formed againſt him, and his Puniſhment of the Conſpirators.
III. His WARS with the *Turks*, *Swedes* and *Polanders*; and his ſucceſsful and unparalleled Conqueſts over thoſe People.
IV. His TRAVELS into *Europe*, *&c.* for the Improvement of Arts, Sciences, Military Diſcipline and Naval Affairs, more particularly to *Germany*, *Holland*, and the Courts of *England* and *France*.
V. His Remarkable SPEECH at his Return Home.
VI. His Proceedings againſt the CZARIEWITZ his Son, his Nomination of a Succeſſor, his Sickneſs, Death and Interment.

The whole Compiled from the Ruſſian, High Dutch *and* French *Languages*, State Papers, *and other Publick Authorities.*

A

LONDON:

Printed for *A. Betteſworth* in *Pater-Noſter Row*, *G. Strahan*, *W. Meadows* in *Cornhill*, *J. Stagg* in *Weſtminſter-hall*, *J. Graves* in St. *James's-Street*, *S. Chapman* in *Pall-Mall*, *R. Frankling* in *Covent-Garden*, *J. Harding* in St. *Martin's-Lane*, *T. Edlin* in the *Strand*, and *J. Jackſon* near St. *James's Houſe*. [Price 5 s.]

Aug 28, 1903

Resumption of 1902.

TENTS.

Title, Birth and Defcent p. 1
His Conduct 3
Abduction of the Circaſſian Tartars 9
Wars with the Turks 15
Triumphal Entry 31
Conſpiracy againſt him 35
Plot detected, and the Traytors execu- 43
Reception by the King of Pruſſia 52
by the States of Holland 61
England, By King William 75

THE

CONTENTS.

THE CZAR's *Title, Birth and Deſcent* p. 1

Reflections upon his Conduct 3

His Reduction of the Circaſſian Tartars 9

His Wars with the Turks 15

His Triumphal Entry 31

A Conſpiracy againſt him 35

The Plot detected, and the Traytors executed 43

He travels incognito 46

His Reception by the King of Pruſſia 52

—— *by the States of* Holland 61

—— *in* England, *by King* William 75

CONTENTS.

He returns home by the way of Vienna, *his Reception there* 83
Goes to Muſcow, *upon Advice of a Commotion there* 86
This Commotion quelled, and the Criminals brought to Juſtice 89
Declares War againſt the King of Sweden 93
Narva *inveſted by the* Czar's *Troops* 108
The Progreſs of the War in Poland 112
The Czar's *Letter to the Republick of* Poland 138
Takes Narva, *and publiſhes a* Manifeſto *to the* Poles *and* Lithuanians 156
Poſts to Muſcow, *on Advice of ſome freſh Diſorders* 162
He returns to Poland 176
His Letter to the General 179
His Letter to Queen Anne, *relating to the* Poliſh *Affairs* 183
Returns to Muſcow, *to levy Taxes for carrying on the War* 199
Encounters the Swedes *in Perſon, and gains a conſiderable Victory* 204
The Agreement between the Czar *and the King of* Sweden 216
The Czar's *Letter, upon his Victory obtain'd over the* Swedes 226
Publick Entry, and Rejoicings on this Occaſion, at Muſcow 238
The Czar *purſues his Conqueſts* 241

The

CONTENTS.

The King of Poland's *Circular Letter concerning his* Abdication *and Return to his Government* 247

The Czar's *Ambassador arrested in* England, *by some rude Tradesmen* 259

The Ambassador's *Letter, upon this Affront, to Mr. Secretary* Boyle 261

His Second Letter upon the same Occasion 263

Mr. Secretary Boyle's *Answer to the Ambassador's two Letters* 264

The Ambassador's *Third Letter to Mr. Secretary* Boyle 265

Mr. Secretary Boyle's *Reply*, &c. 266

The Ambassador retires to Holland 268

The Czar's *Letter to Queen* Anne, *concerning this Indignity offer'd to his* Ambassador Ibid.

Mr. Secretary Boyle's *Answer to the Ambassador's two first Letters* 272

The Ambassador's *Reply* 275

Mons. D'Ayrolle, *her Majesty's Secretary at the* Hague, *his Letter to the* Ambassador 278

Another Letter from Mr. Secretary Boyle, *to the* Ambassador 282

The Ambassador's *Answer* 284

A Relation of what pass'd at Muscow, Feb. 1701, *upon the* Czar's *giving Audience to his Excellency* Charles Whitworth, *Esq; her Majesty's Ambassador Extraordinary*

dinary, ſent expreſly and purpoſely to make ſolemn Excuſes, in her Name, for the Inſult done at London, Aug. 1, 1708, *to his Excellency Mr.* Andrew Artemonides de Mattueoff, *Miniſter of State, Governor of* Jaroſlaw, *and, at that Time, Ambaſſador Extraordinary of his* Czariſh *Majeſty, at the Court of* Great Britain 287

His Excellency's Speech *on this Occaſion* 289

Her Majesty's *Letter to the* Czar *on the ſame* 293

His Anſwer to her Majeſty's Letter 297

The Articles *ſtipulated in the Conference between the* Czar's *Miniſters, and her* Majesty's Ambaſſador 299

The Czar's *Declaration tranſmitted to* Vienna, *to preſerve the Publick Peace with the* Turks 302

Another Declaration, *the* Turks *having begun the* War 305

His Letter to the Grand-Signior 320

He proſecutes the War *with the utmoſt Vigour* 323

The Articles of Peace agreed upon between the Turks *and the* Czar 334

He marries his Son to the Princeſs of Wolfembuttel 347

Articles *of another Treaty by the* Turks 354

The

CONTENTS.

The Czar's *Birth-Day celebrated at the* Port 357
The Czar *leaves his Army to the Care of Prince* Galiczin, *and returns to* Petersbourg 360
Count Steinboch's *State of the* Swediſh War 372
——— *His Manifeſto* 374
A Letter from Count Welling, *Governor-General of the Dutchies of* Bremen *and* Verden, *to Count* Flemming, *and Monſ.* Scholten 376
The Anſwer of the Generals, Flemming *and* Scholten, *to General* Welling. 377
The Czar *at the Head of the Confederate Army in* Holſtein, *puſhing the* Swediſh *Army under Count* Steinboch 382
He leaves the Army, goes to Hamburgh, *and from thence to* Hanover 385
Count Steinboch *reduced, the Articles of his Capitulation* 389
The Czar *at* Petersbourg, *receives Advice of the* Turks *Inclination to Peace, and the Surrender of Count* Steinboch 393
His Expedition againſt the Swedes *in* Finland 394
Articles of Peace between his Czariſh *Majeſty and the* Turks 399
General Arenfield's *Account of the Defeat of the* Swedes *in* Finland 405

The

CONTENTS.

The CZAR's *Publick Entry at* Peterſbourg, *after defeating the* Swedes 413
The Danes *deliver'd from the* Swedes *by the powerful Fleet of the* CZAR 419
The CZAR's *Excellent Speech to his old* Ruſſians, *concerning Ship-building and other Arts and Sciences* 420
He makes a Journey to Holland *and* France 422
His Return to Peterſbourg 423
Proceedings againſt the Czarewitz 424
The CZAR *makes a Deſcent into* Sweden ib.
A Treaty concluded between him and their Swediſh *Majeſties, and the* CZAR *proclaimed* Emperor of all *Ruſſia* 425
His Sickneſs, Death, and Character 426
The CZARINA *proclaimed* 428
The Death of the Princeſs Natalia Petrowna, *her youngeſt Daughter, and her Interment with the Emperor her Father* ib.
EPITAPH *on the* CZAR 420

THE

THE LIFE AND Heroick Actions OF *PETER ALEXOWITZ.*

IT cannot be thought amiſs, before we enter upon this important LIFE, to give an Account of the Original of the Title of that celebrated PRINCE who is the Subject of it.

OUR Countryman, and learned Antiquary Mr. *Selden**, tells us, that the Dukes of *Muſcovy*, which anciently uſed no other Title than *Weliki Kneſi* (in *Ruſſian* Great Dukes) have had

B

* *See* Titles *of* Honour. *Folio.*

had of latter Times this Title of Emperor, or *Czar*, which *Baſilius*, that was Duke about 1520, firſt took to himſelf; yet this Title he uſed not to all Princes. His Son *John Baſiliowitz*, call'd himſelf *Czar*, which is Emperor, or King. And the Word *Czar* itſelf, can be certainly nothing more than an Abbreviation of *Cæſar*.

THIS Illuſtrious MONARCH was Son of the CZAR *Alexius Michaelowitz*, who died the 8th of *February*, 1676, and to *Natalia Nariskin*, his Second Wife, who died the 4th of *February*, 1694. He married to his Firſt Wife *Mary Ilgeniſa*, or *Ottokeſa Federowna*, Daughter of the Boyar *Feder Abromowitz Lapuchin*, from whom being divorced in the Year 1692, he married *Catharina Alexiowna*. This Marriage was not declared till 1711, tho' it had been celebrated ſeveral Years before. He had by his Firſt Wife Prince *Alexius Petrowitz*, born the 18th of *February*, 1690, and died the 7th of *July*, 1718. After having incurred his Father's Diſpleaſure by his firſt Flight into Foreign Countries, and his too ambitious Deſigns; for which, by all the Orders of the Monarchy aſſembled, he was tried and condemned. This Prince had married at *Torgaw*, the Princeſs *Charlotta Chriſtina Sophia*, the 25th of *October*, 1711, ſhe was Daughter to Duke *Lewis Rodolphus de Brunſwick* of *Wolfembuttel*, and Siſter to the Empreſs: She died the firſt of *November*, 1715. nine Days after the Birth of Prince *Peter Alexowitz*, whoſe eldeſt Siſter, the Princeſs *Natalia* was born, the 23d of *July*, 1714. The late *Czar*'s Children by his Second Wife, the preſent Empreſs, are, the Princeſs *Mary*, born the 20th of *March*, 1713, and contracted to the Duke of *Holſtein*, the 5th

of

of *December*, 1724, Princeſs *Anna Marguerita*, born the 19th of *September*, 1714, Prince *Peter*, born the 8th of *November*, 1715, he was declared Hereditary Prince, but died at *Petersbourg* the 6th of *May*, 1719, Prince *Paul*, born at *Weſel*, the 13th of *January*, 1717, who died the ſame Day, and Princeſs *Natalia*, born the 31ſt of *Auguſt*, 1718.

The late *Czar* ſucceeded his eldeſt Brother *Theodore*, who died the 27th of *April*, 1682, and who had appointed him his Succeſſor, preferably to Prince *John* his eldeſt Brother, as thinking him too weak and ſickly to undergo the Weight of the Government. By Virtue of this his Brother's Teſtament, *Peter* was proclaim'd CZAR, a few Days after the Deceaſe of his Brother *Theodore*, being then not twelve Years old.

The Princeſs *Sophia*, his Siſter by the Father's ſide, diſcontented at having no Share in the Government, by the Excluſion of her Brother Prince *John*, engag'd the *Strelitzes* in a Revolt, who then were a conſiderable Militia in *Muſcovy*. Several Perſons of the Firſt Rank were maſſacred in this Sedition; during which, Prince *John* was declar'd *Czar*, and aſſociated to the Government. The Czar *Peter* had like to have periſh'd in the Heat of this Revolt, had he not been taken out of his Apartment by Prince *Boris-Alexowitz-Galiczin*, who ſecretly conducted him to the Monaſtery of *Troiski*, a fortify'd Place, twelve Leagues from *Muſcow*. The Princeſs *Sophia*, too aſpiring to be contented with this firſt Succeſs, perſuaded the *Knes Convanski*, General of the *Strelitzes*, that he might aſcend the

Throne by marrying her, and accordingly they both conſpir'd againſt the Lives of the two Czars, *John* and *Peter*: But this Plot was diſcover'd by two of the Accomplices, who were ſeiz'd with Horror at it. The *Knes Convanski* was taken in an Ambuſh, carry'd to the Monaſtery of *Troiski*, and there beheaded. The Princeſs *Sophia* was ſhut up in the Monaſtery of *Dewitz*, near *Muſcow*, where ſhe was ſtrictly watched till *July*, 1704, when ſhe died there. The two *Czars* reign'd together till 1696, when *Czar John* died; leaving behind him three Princeſſes, by *Proſcovia Federowna Solticow*, his Conſort; *viz. Catherina*, who was marry'd the 19th of *April*, 1716, to *Charles Leopold*, Duke of *Mecklenbourg-Swerin*; *Anna*, marry'd the 13th of *November*, 1710, to *Frederic William*, Duke of *Courland*, of whom ſhe has been a Relict ever ſince the 21ſt of *January*, 1711; and *Proſcovia*, who is ſtill unmarry'd. *Czar Peter*, being thus become ſole Poſſeſſor of his Father's Dominions, declar'd War againſt the *Turks*; and in the ſame Year 1696, he took *Aſoph*, on the Black Sea.

The former Part of this Prince's Reign was taken up either in quieting the inteſtine Troubles of his Subjects, the Factions of his Courtiers, and the Rebellions and Conſpiracies of the Nobility and Soldiery, who were continually render'd uneaſy to him, by the inceſſant Conſpiracies of his Siſter, the Princeſs *Sophia*, and her Creatures, as we have obſerv'd, or in reducing the encroaching *Tartars*, on the ſide of *Aſtracan*, and the Country of *Circaſſia*, who ſeveral Times gave him great Diſturbance, ravag'd the Country, and car-

carried off great Numbers of his People into Slavery; but in all his Encounters with theſe People, he was follow'd with a Series of continual Succeſs, his Rebels were every where not only Conquer'd, but entirely Subdu'd, and almoſt univerſally fell into his Hands, and ſo were either cut off by the Hand of the Executioner, in which Caſes, tho' the Severities us'd were terrible, yet they were no other than the Cuſtom of the Country made lawful; or elſe, were baniſh'd to *Siberia*, where they are at full Liberty, and yet rendred entirely uncapable of ever returning to diſturb the Government.

THE utter impoſſibility of any Perſons, except ſuch as are at the Head of every Action, giving any Account of things in *Muſcovy*, where no Records are kept, or Hiſtory written of publick things, makes it not to be expected that I ſhould be able to give Journals of the March of Armies, and exact Accounts of the ſeveral Expeditions of his Czariſh Majeſty to the Southern part of his Dominions, either againſt his own Rebellious *Circaſſians*, the *Calmuck Tartars*, or any other, except ſuch as thoſe, the Accounts of which we have from the Hiſtory of the other Countries he was engag'd with, of which I ſhall give as full an Account as the beſt Intelligence of thoſe times will permit.

THE enterprizing Genius of the *Czar*, and his early attempts to put his Empire in a poſture of Defence againſt the Potent Neighbours who ſurrounded it, was not at all agreeable to the common Notions of the *Muſcovites*; Building Ships of War, Entertaining Foreign Artiſts and Engineers, and laying Schemes according to the Manner of the other Nations of *Europe*, whoſe way of making War is ſo eminently improv'd, were all things

diſagreeable to them, who as they had no Knowledge of Arts and Sciences, no Mathematical underſtandings, or Senſe of Improvement, ſo they Hated and Diſpiſed all thoſe who knew more than themſelves.

NAY, ſo eminently were they carryed out in the Eſteem of their own Ignorance, that they made it a Point of Religion, and thought it a breach of the Laws of God to mingle their Cuſtoms with thoſe of other Nations, or to bring the Uſage of Foreigners among them; as if Wiſdom and Knowledge were not to be ſearch'd after to the Ends of the Earth, and it were no loſs to them to be the moſt blind, and uninform'd Nation in the World.

BUT the *Czar* ſaw with other Eyes; it was eaſy to him who had a Penetrating Judgement, and a Mathematical Head, tho' uninform'd by the Knowledge of Art, to be ſenſible of the want of it; and when he ſaw the readineſs of Foreign Artiſts, how they acted their Part by Scale and Rule, and had a whole Syſtem of things in their Heads, there needed no more for a Prince thus able to ſee the Defect of his own People, and the Advantage which Neighbouring Nations had over them on that account; I ſay there needed no more than a Senſe of this, to cauſe him to reſolve upon a general Application to the great Work of informing himſelf, and by degrees his People alſo in the uſeful Knowledge which flouriſh'd among the other Nations of *Europe*; and to bring them to receive ſuch Notions, and ſuch Cuſtoms as might in time render them equal to their Neighbours: If any Man were to have a true Account of the former obſtinate Ignorance of the *Muſcovite* Nation; how they diſpis'd and refus'd all Information,

how

how they made it Criminal to ſuffer any of their People to travel Abroad, much leſs to pretend to bring Home any experimental Knowledge, or any Cuſtoms, however good in themſelves, from other Nations; one wou'd firſt wonder how the *Czar* came, as it were alone, among his whole Nation, to reſolve upon being better inform'd; and much more how he has been able to Conquer the obſtinate Ignorance of his People.

NOT that he has Effectually done it yet, or perhaps ever will; and if his late Son, the Prince of *Muſcovy* had liv'd, 'tis certain he had ſo little Taſt of thoſe things, tho' he had been Abroad, that he would have unravell'd all that his Father had done, and brought the Nation back to their Native ſtupidity again.

BUT that obſtacle is remov'd, and ſo are many other; the *Czar* lives ſtill, and proceeds to bring all the *European* Cuſtoms and Uſages into Faſhion with his People; and in a few Years more it may happen, that there will be ſo many Men of Learning and Judgement found in *Muſcovy*, that they will never return again to the brutal Life, which they formerly led; eſpecially, if the Succeſſor to his *Czariſh* Majeſty ſhould happen to be ſome *German* Prince, who may Marry his Daughter, or that the preſent Heir apparent ſhould live to have a foreign and learn'd Education.

IT has been ſaid, that this inſight which the *Czar* had ſo early receiv'd, into the Deficiency of his Countries Cuſtoms, and the Impreſſions of his own Ignorance, in thoſe things, which a Prince ought to know, were firſt formed by Converſing early with one Monſieur *Le Fort* a *French* Gentleman, of excellent Parts and Learning, who he had Entertain'd in his Court, while

he (the *Czar*) was very young, and whoſe Converſation he was extremely Fond of : That this Gentleman firſt exited him to Great and Heroick Actions, fill'd his Mind with generous and gallant Principles, and at laſt recommended to him to take that happy ſtep of Travelling incognito thro' all the polite Parts of *Europe*, that there he might ſee whether what he *Le Fort* had intimated to him of the exquiſite Management of things in other Countries were true or not; and that he might from thence return furniſh'd with Knowledge of all things relating to Peace, War and Government, and make himſelf Maſter of what ever was Neceſſary to make him truly Great, and ſo be in time an equal Match for his (at preſent) more powerful Neighbours.

IT is the hardeſt thing in the Worlds for Man to be Convinc'd of his own Defects, and till he is ſo Convinc'd, 'tis impoſſible to make him apply to Improvement; for who ſubmits to be taught what he believes himſelf to know enough of.

If Fools could their own Ignorance diſcern,
They'd be no longer Fools, becauſe they'd Learn.

BUT here was a Prince arriv'd to the Perfection of Knowledge, (*viz.*) to know that he knew nothing; and from this original Senſe of his own, and of his Peoples Deficiency, he firſt reſolv'd to Travel, that he might Learn every thing, and then return to be the general Teacher of his own People.

HAPPY Humillity! he Travel'd in queſt of Knowledge, that he might be qualified to be the Great School-Maſter of his Subjects; and we ſhall ſoon ſee the Succeſs in a Manner, ſuch as the whole

whole World can ſhow not One Example of the like.

But to return to his other Enterprizes, before the great Undertaking of all, which takes up ſo much Room in all the Hiſtories of the Age. The firſt of his Undertakings was the reduction of the *Circaſſian Tartars*, who in the infancy of this Reign had Revolted, or rather made War againſt the *Muſcovites*, had paſs'd the *Wolga*, and ſeiz'd upon *Aſtracan*, where they committed unheard of Cruelties, and Barbarities upon the Inhabitants.

The *Muſcovite* Army was not in this War Commanded by the *Czar* in Perſon, but by his Favourite Prince *Gollofkin*, and under him by ſome foreign Officers, who carried on the War at firſt with Succeſs, but made no great Progreſs till the *Czar* coming in Perſon with ſome additional Troops, puſh'd the *Tartars* with ſuch Vigour, and uſed his Victory ſo effectually, that he brought the whole Country of *Circaſſia* to his Obedience: And ſome of his Troops Ravaged the *Crimmee*, and ſtruck a Terror even into the ſeveral other Nations of *Tartars*, up to the Borders of the *Boriſthenes*.

This War brought on another of more Weight, and indeed of more Danger, and that was a War with the *Turks*, which it muſt be confeſs'd, the *Czar* ſhew'd his Pollicy in adventuring upon at that Time; becauſe the *Turks* were juſt then Embarraſs'd in a War with the Emperor of *Germany*, the King of *Poland*, and the State, or Common-wealth of *Venice* all together; ſo that they were in no Condition to ſend any Number of Men to make their Arms formidable to the *Czar*.

Un-

UNDER theſe fair Proſpects, the *Czar* of *Muſcovy* broke with the *Turks* in the Year, 1694, and then follow'd a Series of Succeſſes, which rais'd the Fame of the *Muſcovite* Arms above what they ever reach'd before; but eſpecially, gave the World a taſte of the perſonal Valour and Conduct of his *Czariſh* Majeſty, of whom they had heard very little till now.

THE *Tartars* who had ſo long been the Terror of *Muſcovy*, were miſerably Defeated by the *Muſcovite* Army in Three very conſiderale Actions; of which however, Intelligence coming very ſlow and uncertain from Places ſo Remote, and from Nations who held ſo little Correſpondence with the reſt of the World; we had no particular Account till ſome Years after, when we were beholding to the Relations given of them from the Memory of ſome *Scots* Officers who ſerv'd in the *Muſcovite* Army.

THE firſt thing done in this War, was to clear the eaſtern Banks of the *Wolga* from the *Tartars*, and drive them effectually into their own Bounds.

THIS had in part been done before, when Prince *Gollofkin* the Elder, had recovered *Aſtracan* from them. But they ſtill remain'd in great Numbers on the Calmuck ſide, and frequently made Incurſions into the Countries poſſeſs'd by the *Muſcovites*, and Ravag'd far and near, according to their uſual Method, making an inexpreſſible Deſolation wherever they came.

THE firſt Troops the *Czar* ſent this way upon his new Scheme of this War, effectually drove the *Calmuck Tartars* over the *Wolga*; at the ſame time the *Coſſacks*, ſuch of them as were Subject to the *Czar*, had fallen upon a great Body of the *Crim-Tartars*, who had made an Attempt to fall into

into the *Czar*'s Dominions on the ſide of *Circaſſia*, and gave them a great Defeat, killing 15000 of them upon the Spot.

BESIDES this, the *Czar*'s General *Gordon* a *Scots* Gentleman, and an Officer of great Experience entered into *Circaſſia* itſelf, and after giving the *Tartars* ſeveral Defeats, reduced that whole Country under the Obedience of the *Muſcovite* Government, as it remains to this Day.

IT ſhould have been obſerv'd here, that tho' the *Muſcovite* Militia were not yet brought to the happy Regulation and Diſcipline, they are ſince by the *Czar*'s Application and Management arriv'd to; yet they had been much Improv'd, and were in a much better Condition than they had formerly been in; and this by the Management and Direction of the late *Czar Alexis Michaelowitz*, the preſent *Czar*'s Father, who indeed began to alter ſeveral things in the former unpoliſh'd Method of the *Muſcovite* Government; and particularly that of the Army; and remarkably in this, that he reſolv'd to introduce the *German* Military Diſcipline among his Troops; and to have the Soldiers taught the Exerciſe for the handling their Arms, Marching, Counter-Marching, Wheeling, drawing up, Forming and Embattleing, &c. after the *German* Manner. And to this purpoſe, he Entertain'd a great Number of foreign Officers in his Army, who he Encourag'd to come out of the Service of all the Princes near him, by Promiſes of large Pay and good Uſage, with Preferments according to their Merit, and which Terms they found very punctually Comply'd with; and his Son the preſent *Czar* perſued the ſame Method.

BY

BY this means he had at the time of his Undertaking the War I am now ſpeaking of, two Generals (viz.) *Monſieur le Fort*, and Mr. *Gordon*, the firſt a *French* Man, the ſecond a *Scots* Man, and above 8000 inferior Officers of ſeveral Nations in his Pay, beſides Engineers, Cannoniers, Bombardiers, and Firemen in abundance.

AND this was the great Reaſon why his Enterprizes in this War were carry'd on with great Regularity; his Sieges managed, and Trenches open'd according to Art; his Batteries, Mines, Attacks &c. well ſerv'd; and every thing done as it ought to be done. Things which in former Times the *Muſcovites* knew little of.

I am oblig'd to paſs over the firſt Actions of his *Czariſh* Majeſty's Generals in this War, in a ſummary Method, not being able to come at the particular Days of the Month, or the particular Circumſtances of every Action, nor any Diary of the March of the Armies, in a time when as before, ſcarce any thing was done with that Regularity, which has been uſual in ſuch Caſes in other Countries, and which has ſince been better Manag'd there: Beſides, this was a kind of a Tumultuary War, the *Tartars* being a People that made only a kind of *Camp Volant* in all their Marchings; and in every thing they did, it might be only ſaid, that it was by way of Excurſion, and Incurſion; Plundering and Burning, when they Advanced, and Runing or rather Flying, when they Return'd; ſo that they were only to be Fought, with by the way of Intercepting them, and by Surprize; and when at any time they were brought to Fight, it could never be call'd a pitch'd Battle, but rather a runing Fight, their whole Army being

ing always on Horſeback, for as to an Infantry, they know nothing of them.

HOWEVER, as the *Coſſacks* were likewiſe Horſe, tho' not ſo well Mounted, they often met with and routed the *Tartars* too; and that rather, becauſe the moſt Soldiery part of the *Tartars* were at that time Engag'd againſt the *Polanders*, or in *Hungary*, againſt the Imperial Armies, in Conjunction with the *Turks*.

BUT to come back to the Perſon and Conduct of the *Czar*, it was in perſuit of his Conqueſts on this ſide, that his *Czariſh* Majeſty found how fair a way lay open to him to make himſelf Powerful by Sea; a thing which had long lain upon his Thoughts, but which till now he never had ſo much as room to find feazible, or indeed poſſible; having no Out-let into any Sea where his Power might exert itſelf: As to the *Wolga*, tho' it be a very great River, and of a prodigious extended Courſe, having run above 2500 Miles, including the Windings and Reaches of its Courſe, yet there is no depth of Water in the Channel at the Mouth or Influx of it into the Sea; but the Sands and Flats of the Shore in the *Caſpian* Sea on the *Ruſſian* ſide choking up the River, makes it uncapable to carry Ships of any Force, except at the time of the Winter Floods; and even then, the *Caſpian* Sea itſelf for ſome Leagues, has no depth of Water anſwerable for a Royal Navy of Men of War, ſuch as the *Czar* had Projected to Build.

ON the other hand, had the *Caſpian* Sea been deep and every where Navigable as wou'd be ſufficient, yet this reſpected only the Shores of *Perſia*, *Armenia*, *Georgia*, and thoſe Countries, which rendered the *Czar* no Proſpect of Glory, or Conqueſt:

queſt: But his Deſigns lay another way, that is to ſay, to open to himſelf a Navigation into the *Black* Sea, where he might either extend his Conqueſt or his Commerce, or perhaps both, into the leſſer *Aſia*, and even to the Gates of *Conſtantinople*; and either by Force or by Treaty, might obtain a Paſſage thro' the Straits of *Hellespont*, and the *Thracian Boſphorus* into the Mediterranean Sea, and ſo might eſtabliſh an open Trade between his Country and the Ports of *Italy*, *France*, and *Spain*, and conſequently with all the known World.

THIS open'd a Scene of Glory fit for a Prince, and ſuited to the great Enterprizes which his *Czariſh* Majeſty had formed in his Mind: In a word, here was a Field of Action large enough to gratifie the Ambition of a Sovereign, Born for great Things, and who poſſeſſing an Empire Superior to any of his Neighbours, wanted nothing but an Entrance upon the Stage of Greatneſs, that he might Act like himſelf.

HE ſaw at once all the great Things which might be the Conſequence of this Conqueſt in many Ages to come; and it was from this Judgment that he had made of Things, that he had purpoſed to Build a large Fleet of Men of War, even while the World ſtood Amaz'd at the Myſtery of it; ſeeing they were Built many Leagues up the Country, on the bank of a River, (*viz.*) the *Don* or *Tanais*, whoſe Out-let into the Sea was not in his Poſſeſſion, but Block'd up by the *Turks* with innumerable Obſtacles; ſuch as ſtrong Fortreſſes, narrow Straits, great Batteries, Ships of War, and the like; particularly, the City and Forts at *Aſoph*, the Lines at the Mouth of the River *Don*, and Works at the Straits of *Caffa*, which laſt is, the

the only Entrance into the *Black* Sea, out of that Sea call'd the *Palus Meotis*.

But his *Czariſh* Majeſty's deſigns were not to be Diverted with the Proſpect of thoſe Difficulties; and therefore even before he ſeem'd to aim at opening the Paſſage of thoſe Places, or Engaging in any War to bring it to paſs, he employ'd Agents into *Holland*, and into *England*, to furniſh him with experienc'd Ship-Wrights, and Builders, in order to build a Royal Navy of Men of War, even when no Body could foreſee in what Part of the World they ſhould be Employ'd; his *Czariſh* Majeſty having then not one Port in the *Baltick* Sea, the *Euxine* Sea, or any where elſe, except that of *Arch-Angel* opening to the North Seas, in the Latitude 72 degrees, where he could have no occaſion to uſe them.

But the Event ſoon diſcover'd the Sagacity of the Deſign, for the ſame Year the *Czar* having before been long Solicited by the Confederates, came into the War with the *Turks*, which was ſolemnly proclaim'd the twentieth, of *February*, 1694.

In purſuance of this War, and of the Meaſures concerted with the Allies, the *Czar* appear'd with two Armies in the Field, the beginning of the Year 1695, the one conſiſting of 90000 Foot, and 20000 Horſe and Dragoons, Commanded by his *Czariſh* Majeſty in Perſon, and with which he march'd into the *Ruſſian Circaſſia*, and entering the *Turkiſh* Dominions, ſat down before *Aſoph*, an important Fortreſs upon the Banks of the *Tanais*, near the Mouth of that great River, where it empties itſelf into the great Lake, or Sea call'd the *Palus Meotis*; and the other Army conſiſting of 24000 Foot and 36000 Horſe, the latter being

all

all *Coaſſacks*, and was therefore call'd the *Coſſack Army*, Commanded by Lieutenant General Prince *Czeremetoff*, of whom we ſhall often have occaſion to ſpeak hereafter in the Courſe of this Hiſtory. This Army march'd by the Way of the *Ukraine*, and keeping the Courſe of the great River *Boriſthenes*, or the *Neiper* to the Mouth of the ſaid River, ſat down before the ſtrong Town of *Kaſilkermeen*, a *Tartarian* City, Situated on the South Bank of the ſaid River *Neiper*, and within two Leagues or thereabouts of the *Black-Sea*.

THESE Towns were equally conſiderable, as Situated at the two great Enterances into the *Pontus Euxinus*, neareſt to his *Czariſh* Majeſty's Dominions; and moſt conveniently Seated, both to facilitate his Deſigns for the Commerce of his Subjects in thoſe Seas, and equally Advantageous to him for carrying on his farther Deſign againſt the *Turks*.

IF the Chriſtian World were agreeable ſurpris'd at the *Czar*'s breaking with the *Turks* in a Juncture ſo very Momentous, and ſo Seaſonable to the Confederates, they were even amaz'd to find a Prince, of whoſe enterpriſing Genius they had yet form'd no Notions, begin a War with ſuch apparent Proofs, both of an exquiſite Foreknowledge, and alſo of a perfect Underſtanding of the Weight and Conſequence of what he had Undertaken; on the other Hand, the manner of his Entrance into this War, and the formidable Power with which he began it, gave the *Turks* a terrible Alarm, eſpecially conſidering how their Affairs were at that time Embaraſs'd in a heavy War with the Emperor, the King of *Poland*, and the State of *Venice*, all at the ſame time, and in which they had receiv'd ſeveral terrible Overthrows

throws, and had already loſt almoſt all the King of *Hungaria*, all the *Morea*, and ſeveral conſiderable Fortreſſes in *Dalmatia*, and other Places, beſides having their Millitary Power, broken both at Sea and Land, by innumerable Defeats of their Armies and Fleets; but we ſhall ſee them farther Alarm'd in the proceſs of this War, by the Succeſs of his Czariſh Majeſty in the Proſecution of it.

IT was now too late, that the *Turks* ſaw their Miſtake, in that having for many Years the City of *Aſoph*, in their Poſſeſſion, if they had conſider'd it as one of the moſt important Frontiers of their whole Empire, they would have made it as impregnable, as the Conſequences of ſuch a Place requir'd, and as the Situation of it very well allow'd; for it was moſt advantageouſly Situated on the North Bank of the River *Don*, with a low Marſhy Ground oppoſite to it, which was capable of being ſo Fortify'd, as appear'd afterwards, and to be ſo ſurrounded with Water, as not to be any way attack'd, otherwiſe than by a Bombardment, or to be taken, but by a ſtrict Blockade.

ALL that the *Turks* could do, upon the ſudden approach of the *Czar*'s Army, was, to ſupply the Want, or Weakneſs of the Fortifications, with a bold reſolute Garriſon of ten thouſand *Janiſaries*, all old Soldiers; beſides *Tartars*; and under choſen Officers, well furniſh'd with all things for a vigorous Defence; and this they plac'd the more Confidence in, by how much they had the *Muſcovites* ſtill in the utmoſt Contempt, as to their Military Capacity of attacking ſuch a Place.

NOR did the Garriſon diſappoint their Maſters, or fail in doing their Duty, and in ſuch manner,

that altho' the *Czar* attack'd the Place in Form, and that his Engineers made their Approaches with the utmoſt Skill, and Batter'd and Bombarded the Place with a 100 Pieces of Cannon, and 40 Mortars; yet the Garriſon ſo Harraſs'd them with continu'd bold and deſperate Sallies, and ſo ply'd them with a numerous Artillery from the Walls, ſo often levell'd the Trenches of the Beſiegers, Nail'd their Cannon, and ruin'd their Works; that the Winter coming on, and Proviſions growing Scarce, the *Czar* tho' he was in Perſon at the Siege, was oblig'd to give it over, after having loſt as ſome have reported above 30000 Men before the Place, and half ruin'd his Calvalry for want of Forage.

BUT Prince *Czeremetoff* had better luck before *Kaſikermeen*, which tho' it was better Fortify'd, was not ſo well Defended; and the *Coſſacks* puſhing on their Attacks with a deſperate Fury, they carried the Place Sword in Hand, the Garriſon having but juſt time to retreat into two large Forts, which cover'd the City on the ſide of the River, where beating a Parley, they had good Conditions granted by the Beſiegers, and ſo the whole City was taken.

THERE was a complaint made againſt the *Muſcovite* General Prince *Czeremetoff*, for ſuffering the *Coſſacks* to Plunder the Garriſon after the Capitulation was Sign'd; and that Princes Diſgrace happening ſoon after, was aſſign'd to that Cauſe; but I do not take upon me to ſay, this was the Cauſe of it, and as that Prince has been receiv'd into his Maſters Favour ſince, that, with very great Reputation, 'tis generally ſuppos'd, that he acquitted himſelf of that Accuſation.

IF

IF the *Turks* committed an Over-ſight in their not fore-ſeeing the Importance, *and Fortifying in time the City* of *Aſoph*, they were now guilty of the greateſt and moſt inexcuſable Neglect and Omiſſion, in not taking the opportunity of the Winter, when the *Czar*'s Troops were with-drawn, to ſend a powerful Succour to the Garriſon, that they might have Defended the Place another Year, as they had done the Year before.

ON the contrary, the *Muſcovites* left a Body of Forces in the Country, who as it were, effectually Block'd up the Place by Land; and the *Turks* neither ſupplyed the Magazines with Proviſions, or reinforced the Garriſon with freſh Troops; both which it was very eaſie to have done by Sea; the *Muſcovites* having then no Naval Strength at all: Of both theſe there was an abſolute Neceſſity, for the Magazines were not only Empty, the Ammunition being extremely leſſen'd in the frequent Sallies and continued Fireings during ſo long a Defence, as that of the laſt Siege, but the Garriſon was reduced from ten Thouſand, to two Thouſand eight Hundred Men.

IN this diſtreſs'd Condition, they were oblig'd to ſuſtain the ſecond Siege, having long ſollicited for Succours but in vain, till it was too late to receive them, as will appear in the Sequel of the Story.

DURING the Winter, the *Czar* was not Idle; the prodigious Preparations made in all Parts of his vaſt Dominions, for Recruiting his Army, Remounting his Cavalry, and ſupplying the Magazines with all neceſſary Stores of Ammunition, &c. Intimated plainly, that the Attempt upon *Aſoph* was not laid aſide; but that which was moſt conſiderable of all, was the Expedition

with which his *Czariſh* Majeſty furniſh'd himſelf with a Fleet in one Winter; and that odd and extravagant Manner in which ſome of the Veſſels were Built, ſeveral of them having been Built in the River *Occa*, and carried over Land to the *Dona*, and moſt of the reſt at *Voranowitz*, a Town on a River of that Name, which emplies itſelf into the *Dona* above 300 Miles above *Aſoph*.

THE Detachment of Troops which the *Czar* had left to Block up the Place during the Winter, had maintain'd their Poſts upon the Neighbouring Hills, and ſo well ſcour'd the Country, that the Garriſon of *Aſoph* had no opportunity of receiveing any Relief or Supply by Land; and early in the Spring the *Muſcovite* Troops began to arrive, ſo that they were actually Beſieg'd again, before they had received the leaſt Recruit.

THE Preparations for this ſecond Attack, were ſo much greater than thoſe of the firſt Siege, that the Garriſon had much more need to have been doubled than leſſen'd, the Violence they had to ſuſtain, being ſo much the greater; for the Artillery the *Czar* had prepar'd for this Attack, were 400 Pieces of Cannon, and 150 Mortars.

THE Expedition us'd in all thoſe Preparations was ſuch, that the Body of the Army arriv'd before *Aſoph*, in the End of *April*; but the Rivers not being open for bringing the Veſſels loaden with Artillery, Bombs, *&c.* and for the Ships from *Veranowitz*, till the middle of *May*, it was the beginning of *June*, before the Siege was actually form'd; all which time the *Turks* had fairly before them to have relieved the Place; which however, as if an Ill-fate attended them, they omitted till about the middle of *July*, when their

Squadron

Squadron began to appear in the *Black* Sea, and when they found to their Coſt that they were too late, as we ſhall ſee preſently.

THE *Czar* came in Perſon to his Army the beginning of *May*, and the Siege begun with the utmoſt Vigour; the Garriſon, tho' extreamly reduc'd, and in want of many things, yet defended themſelves with a deſperate Valour, rejecting the Summons ſent them in his *Czariſh* Majeſty's Name, by General *Gordon*, with offers of an honourable Capitulation, and another Summons after that, threatening them that they ſhould have no Quarter, if they were taken by Storm.

THE *Muſcovite* General *Gordon* found that the Ground did not admit of Carrying on Trenches, ſo well as could be wiſh'd, and the Garriſon having near 300 Pieces of Cannon upon their Works, made ſuch a continual Fire, as ruin'd the *Muſcovite* Batteries; for the ſaid Batteries being made of a looſe Sandy Earth, which would not bear the Weight of the Artillery. When the Shot of the Town had but beaten them a little in the Front they fell down; ſo that the Guns were diſmounted by the Enemy, with the greateſt eaſe immaginable: Upon this, the ſaid General *Gordon* undertook to carry on a rolling Trench, or rather a rolling Parapet, which by the help of a multitude of Hands, and near ſix Weeks labour, he brought to ſuch perfection, that it terrify'd the Beſieged more than all the Bombs and Cannon in the Army.

THIS Work was begun at a good diſtance from the Place, and as there were above 30000 Men continually employ'd in it, who reliev'd one another every four Hours, the Work came gradually rowling forward, the Men behind it ſtill throwing the Sandy Earth from the bottom, up

to one another upon Stages, till the uppermoſt threw it quite over the Top, ſo that at laſt they brought it within half a Muſquet Shot of the Town, and the height ſo great, that it overlook'd the higheſt part of the Wall, and all the Baſtions, to the great aſtoniſhment of the Beſieg'd.

DURING all this time, the Batteries for Mortars, which were ſo effectually cover'd from the ſhot of the Ramparts, play'd ſo inceſſantly upon the Town, throwing Bombs Night and Day; that the whole Town was reduc'd to Aſhes, and the Garriſon continually Harraſs'd with the fury of the Bombs, no Place being ſecure for them; nor could they appear upon their Works, but they were immediately knock'd down with ſmall ſhot from the Top of the rowling Trench, which overlook'd them like a big Mountain, commanding the Town: While this was doing from the Land-ſide, the *Czar*, who took upon himſelf, the Direction of the naval Part in particular, brought his Gallies down by a different Channel of the River *Don*, which as it was out of the reach of the Cannon of the Town; ſo there was ſo little depth of Water in that part of the River, that no Veſſel of bulk were ever known to paſs that Way before, except in Caſes of great Freſhes, or Land Floods, which were all now over and gone.

THUS the *Czar* appear'd with a Fleet of Gallies below the Town, to the aſtoniſhment of the Beſieged, who believ'd it impoſſible they ſhould paſs any way, but in the Mouth of their Guns, which would have been altogether impracticable, there being above 150 Pieces of Cannon mounted to defend the Paſſage.

BESIDES this, his *Czariſh* Majeſty cauſed ſeveral Batteries of Cannon to be Planted on the other ſide of the River *Donn*, on a ſmall Iſland, which is very properly Situated to prevent Succours from coming to Relieve the Place; and behind this Iſland he placed all his Arm'd Shaloups and Brigantines, as in an Ambuſcade, to be ready to ſhow themſelves as occaſion ſhou'd preſent.

IN this poſture, both the Beſiegers and the Beſieged expected the *Turkiſh* Fleet, which at length appear'd, bringing Succours for the Garriſon; the Fleet conſiſted of 12 large Gallies, 30 arm'd Brigantines, and about 60 Tranſport Veſſels, having on Board 8000 Soldiers to Reinforce the Garriſon, a vaſt Quantity of Ammunition of all ſorts, Stores of Proviſion, and Cloths for the Garriſon, and 50000 Ducates in Money for the pay and Encouragement of the brave Fellows, who had ſo well behav'd themſelves as above.

IT was about the 24th of *July*, that they appear'd in the *Palus Meotis*, ſtanding in among the Iſlands in the Mouth of the *Donn*, ſo to enter the Place; the firſt thing they had to Encounter, was the *Czar*'s Gallies, who drawing leſs Water than the Great Gallies of the *Turks* lay farther up the River, where the other could not come.

IN the mean time the *Turkiſh* Saicks and Brigantines to ſhun thoſe Gallies, kept among the ſaid Iſlands in ſhoal Water, which the *Czar* perceiving, he took a ſufficient Number of Troops into his Shalloups and Brigantines, and reſolv'd to Attack them where they lay, which they did with ſuch Bravery and Succeſs, himſelf appearing in Perſon in the hotteſt of the Action, that the *Turks* were entirely Defeated and Diſpers'd, and the whole Convoy of Proviſions,

Ammunition, &c. taken even ſight of the Garriſon, not one Veſſel being able to reach the Town.

THIS Overthrow of the *Turkiſh* Fleet, with the Succours was follow'd with the Surrender of the Town; the Garriſon Capitulating the 28th of *July*, the *Czar* granting them very honourable Conditions, in Conſideration of that Bravery they had ſhewn in Defence of the Place: It was ſaid, that when they Surrendred, there was not above 1300 whole Men left of them, who were upwards of 12000 at the beginning of the Siege.

THIS glorious Victory of the *Czar's* ſurpris'd all *Europe*, and fill'd every Bodies Mouth with the Perſonal Fame of his Cazriſh Majeſty's Valour and Conduct, which was the more talk'd of, becauſe it had not been often, that the World had heard of the *Muſcovites* good Conduct, much leſs of a Warlike Emperor at their Head: On this Account and that I may be ſure to leave a full Account of this great Action, I ſhall give it in the very Words, in which it was publiſh'd to the World in the ſeveral Countries, from whence we had then an Account of it; *For Example*; one Account, and back'd with good Authority, which came by the way of *France*, is as follows.

HIS *Czariſh* Majeſty having before-hand receiv'd Intelligence of the approach of this Succour, had caus'd ſeven of his largeſt Gallies of a hundred Foot in Length each, beſides ſeveral leſſer, and a great Number of Brigantines to paſs into that ſmall Branch of the *Don*, which iſſues forth a little above the Town. As the Water is very Shallow in this *Channel*, ſo it was not without a great deal of difficulty, that the largeſt Gallies could be brought along that Way, and would in all likelihood not have ſucceeded, if the *Czar* by his

Pre-

Preſence and Encouragement, had not animated the Workmen to ſurpaſs all the Difficulties, which at laſt they did, to the no ſmall Aſtoniſhment of the Beſieged.

THIS Obſtacle being happily ſurmounted, his *Czariſh* Majeſty judg'd it of very great Conſequence, for his purpoſe to plant good Store of Cannon upon the little Iſland we have mention'd before, becauſe the Shoar being very Low, the Cannon-ball would ſtrike even with the Surface of the Water; beſides that the greateſt part of the Iſle being cover'd with Wood, did prevent the Enemy from diſcovering the Deſign.

THE ſame favourable Diſpoſition of this Iſland, furniſh'd the *Muſcovites*, with an opportunity of putting ſome of their lighteſt Gallies and Brigantines for a Reſerve behind the Iſle unperceiv'd by the Enemy, whom they intended thus to attack both in the Front and Flank as they paſſed by that Way, which ſucceeded according to Expectation.

FOR all theſe Precautions having been made before, when the Enemies Fleet came in ſight, the biggeſt *Muſcovite* Gallies, with many Brigantines were ſent out to meet them, making a ſhow as if they intended to Engage the *Turkiſh* Fleet; but no ſooner were they come within Cannon-Shot of one another, but the *Muſcovites* feigning to dread the *Ottoman* Fleet, as ſuperiour to them in Number, made a running Fight, making the beſt of their way towards the Shoar, and poſting themſelves below the Iſland: The *Turks* perceiving the Enemy to fly before them, and not in the leaſt forewarn'd of that Plot laid behind the Iſland, thought themſelves, by the ſmall Number of the *Muſco-*

vite

vite Gallies that appear'd in Sight, assur'd of the Victory.

FLUSH'D with these Hopes, they made all the Sail they could to fall in among the *Muscovites*, but no sooner were they come within reach of the Cannon from the Isle, but they receiv'd such a warm salute from thence, that they saw their Gallies torn to pieces on all sides, by the Enemies Cannon in an Instant, with a great Slaughter of many of their Men; but this was only the Forerunner of what was to ensue.

FOR his *Czarish* Majesty, who had a watchful Eye on all Sides, and who was sometimes upon the Isle, sometimes on Board the Fleet of Reserve that lay behind; having soon observed the Consternation the *Turks* were put in by this unexpected Salute, and willing to improve their Confusion to his Advantage, got on Board in Person one of the lightest Gallies, Mann'd only with forty Men, giving the Signal for the rest to follow him, with all the Oars they could. Thus the Enemy found themselves surrounded on all Sides by the *Muscovites*, who Attack'd them with great Bravery; the *Czar* himself Boarding the *Turkish* Admiral, and being successfully Seconded by the rest, the Victory was almost as soon compleated, as began. The *Turks* being Routed so entirely, that not one Galley escap'd, but what was either Sunk or taken; and it must be confess'd, that the *Czar* shew'd so much Conduct during the whole Action, that no more could have been expected, from the Prudence and Valour of the greatest Captain of our Time.

ANOTHER Account of this Affair expresses it self in these Words.

AT

At length it is agreed on all Hands, that the City of *Asoph*, which the *Turks* and *Tartars* had in vain attempted to Relieve; both by Sea and Land was Surrender'd to the *Muscovites*, upon Articles the 28th, of *July*; in pursuance of which, the Garrison consisting of three Thousand Men, besides *Tartars*, March'd out with their Arms and Baggage; 300 pieces of Cannon were found in the Town, together with a great quantity of Ammunition: But want of Provision hasten'd the Surrender of the Town; this Town was formerly call'd *Tanais*, as being Seated upon the River *Tanais*, now call'd *Don*, the ancient Bounds of *Asia* and *Europe* to the *North-East*: It is a Town of great Trade, especially in *Furrs*, lying not above 15 Miles from the Mouth of the River, upon the confines of *Muscovy*; but that which makes it more Considerable is, that it affords the *Muscovites* and *Cossacks* a fair Opportunity to become Masters of the *Euxinus* or *Black-Sea*, and gives an Entrance to the Victor, to penetrate as far as *Constantinople* itself, for which Reason, it has been more than once Contested for by the *Turks*, and *Muscovites*.

The News of this Loss was known at *Constantinople*, upon the 7th, of *August*, which put the City into a great Consternation, for fear of losing those Supplies of Provisions that come to that City by the *Black-Sea*. They tell us also, of a Victory obtained over the *Turks* and *Tartars*, by the *Muscovites* near *Precoop*; which Successes as they revive the Reputation of the *Muscovite* Arms, and render formidable an Enemy; that for several Years has hardly been thought worth taking Notice of; so the Consequences of their Prosperity,

may

may chance to prove more Fatal, then was at firſt expected to the *Ottomen* Empire.

THE *Muſcovites* have lain untalk'd of a great Time, and the *Turk* has look'd upon them, as a deſpicable Enemy for many Years: But 'tis ſcarce to be imagin'd how ſoon the change of the Monarch's Genius, alters the Manners and Conditions of a Nation; the Warmth and Vigour of Martial Princes, infuſe the ſame warlike Motions into the Breaſts of the People, as the voluptuouſneſs of a diſpirited Sovereign effeminates them, and overwhelms them in Sloath and Cowardice. The *Muſcovites* are now another ſort of People; they have a Valiant, and politick Leader, under whoſe Conduct they have wreſted one of the chief Barriers of the *Ottoman* Empire, from the *Turks*, who were Vanquiſh'd firſt by Sea, and then by Land: Encouraged thus by Proſperity, what may not the *Muſcovites* do? they want neither Numbers or Strength of Bodies; and there are few Princes that can reſiſt the Temptations of Succeſs, ſo that it is high time for the *Sultan* to call to his remembrance, how often theſe *Northern* Deluges, have proved Fatal to the Empires of the *South*.

THESE accounts ſhew the Sentiments of the reſt of *Europe*, concerning the *Czar* of *Muſcovy*, and his Affairs at that Time; and the Advantage which the *Czar* was repreſented with to the reſt of the Princes of that Age. The *Turks* in particular, were under a juſt Conſternation, and indeed, they had Reaſon, when they came to underſtand that the *Czar* had Built Men of War at *Veranowitz*, which carried 70 or 80 Guns each, and which would in Time, be able to Cope with the beſt Ships the Port was able to fit out. This gave them a juſt Allarm, even at *Conſtantinople* itſelf, which City would

would be but ill able to Subſiſt, ſhould the Freedom and Commerce of the *Black-Sea* be taken from them, or even Diſputed with them; and therefore the *Turks* are not to be blam'd at all, for the great Conditions which they Granted the *Czar* of *Muſcovy* afterwards, when they had him as it were in their Power, for the Recovery of this important Place out of his Hands.

When the *Czar* had made this Conqueſt, he was far from contenting himſelf with letting it remain in the Condition he found it in; but knowing of what Conſequence it was to the *Turks*, as well as now to himſelf, he immediately order'd it to be Strengthned with new Fortifications, and that of ſuch a Kind, as render'd it the moſt impregnable Place in thoſe Parts of the World; he not only repair'd the old Works, and added two new Baſtions to the Body of the Place, but he cauſed a new Counterſcarp, with a cover'd Way to be drawn round the whole, and the Ditch to be Secur'd with half Moons, Lunettes, Tenailles, and all ſuch neceſſary Out-works, as might render it Inacceſſible; bringing the River *Donne* ſo into the Ditches, as that it might be ſaid, not that the River ſupply'd the Ditches with Water, but rather, that the River ran round the Town.

On the other hand, in the low marſhy Grounds on the *South-Side* of the River, which the River uſually over-flow'd, and which was a meer Bog, his *Czariſh* Majeſty cauſed firſt, a firm ſolid Foundation to be made with Timber, Stones, Gravel, and the like Materials; and having rais'd the whole Surface to a conſiderable height, above the uſual Flux of the Water: He Built a Royal Fort upon it, containing ſix Baſtions, with their Cavaliers Courtins, and Counterguards, with ſome Out-

Works

Works where it was needful; joyning the whole afterwards to the main Land, with a prodigious Stone-Bridge of thirty Arches, reaching over the whole Moraſs.

THUS he made the Place truely Impregnable, there being no Attacking the ſaid Fort by any of the uſual Methods of Approach, the whole Ground round it being to be laid under Water by Sluices appointed for that purpoſe, when ever the Garriſon found it convenient.

IN this poſture the *Czar* left *Aſoph*, at the latter end of the next Year (*viz.*) 1697, and the *Turks* had as littles hopes of ever Recovering it again, as any Prince could deſire; he alſo left it well ſtor'd with all manner of military Proviſions, having above 400 pieces of Cannon mounted upon the Works, and Ammunition in proportion; and left in it beſides, a Garriſon of 15000 Men.

AND now it was, that his *Czariſh* Majeſty reſolv'd to furniſh himſelf with a Royal Navy, not of Gallies and Brigantines, Saiks and Armed Barks, ſuch as was the uſual Veſſels for thoſe Seas: But of capital Men of War, of 60 to 80 Guns each, the Magazine and Center of which, and of the Stores belonging to them, ſhould be always laid up at *Aſoph*, and the Ships themſelves be preſerv'd in the River *Don* at proper Places, of which I ſhall give a farther Account; waiting till a convenient Port might be poſſeſs'd in the *Black-Sea*, where they might be laid up and Secur'd.

WITH theſe vaſt Thoughts, the *Czar* left the Place, and ceaſed not after he was gone, to go immediately forward with the Execution of it; and here may be ſaid to be laid one of the firſt Foundations of that Reſolution this Prince took to go Abroad; not only to furniſh himſelf with

Skill

Skill in all the mechanick Parts of Knowledge, neceſſary in carrying on ſuch Undertakings; but likewiſe to furniſh himſelf with able Inſtruments, Men of Knowledge and Capacity for ſuch Things, that might not only do the Work for him as Occaſion requir'd, but Inſtruct alſo his own People to do it after them.

At his *Czariſh* Majeſty's return from this Conqueſt, he took a Reſolution to make a publick triumphal Entry into his capital City of *Muſcow*, and that with all the Pomp and Splendor that was poſſible to be Deviſed; but it is worth obſerving, that this was not founded upon the Vanity of Temper, which Princes have often been ſubject to upon ſuch Occaſions; but from the true *Roman* Principle of provoking Emulation in Vertuous Actions among his Nobility, and for acquainting his People with the Value and Importance of the Victory he had obtained.

In this triumphal Entry it was obſerv'd, that there was one of his Officers whoſe Name was *Jacob*, had in the firſt Siege of *Aſoph*, not only Deſerted to the Enemy, but Nail'd up ſome of the *Czar*'s Cannon, and thereby encourag'd the Garriſon to make a deſperate Sally on that Side, in which they ruin'd the Works, and ſo Diſcourag'd the *Muſcovite* Soldiers, as was one great Reaſon of raiſing the Siege: This *Jacob* was at the ſecond Siege ſurrender'd by the *Turks*, the *Czar* having refuſed to Grant any Terms to the Garriſon, unleſs he had this Traytor deliver'd up to him.

This Wretch made Part of the Triumph of the *Czar*; he was carried Naked and Chain'd on a Stage in an open Waggon, with a Gibbet over his Head; on which, after he had been three times Tortur'd, he was publickly Hang'd for the Terror

of

of Traytors; ſome ſaid he was broken firſt alive, which however, I do not affirm.

AT this Triumph of the *Czar*, there was an open Court, and all the Boyars or Noblemen of *Ruſſia*, were admitted to come and Kiſs the *Czar*'s Hand, and pay their Complements on the Occaſion, which was a Favour they were not admitted to formerly; but as the *Czar* reſolv'd to acquaint his People with the Cuſtoms and uſuage of other Countries, ſo he began already to make the open free Converſation of the *French*, and *Britiſh* Nations Familiar to them.

AFTER this, the *Czar* call'd them all to an Aſſembly, where he open'd and explain'd to 'em, the Nature and Advantages of his Conqueſts on the *Black-Sea*; and how he intended to improve it to the welfare of his own Dominions, in ſecuring the Navigation of the ſaid *Black Sea* to them, by a powerful Navy, and perhaps to obtain a Commerce even thro' the narrow Chanels, at *Conſtantinople* into the *Levant*.

TO this purpoſe, it was eaſie to convince them of the Neceſſity of building a good Fleet of capital Men of War, ſuch as ſhould be always a Match for the Grand *Seignior*'s Fleet, and ſhould maintain the Commerce if need were by ſtrong Hand: And at the end of this Diſcourſe, he acquainted ſome of them, that he reſolv'd to Travel in Perſon to ſome of the Maritime Courts of *Europe*, to make himſelf compleat Maſter of the Meaſures of thoſe Nations, who were ſo Superior to the reſt of the World by their naval Strength; and withal, to bring back with him the beſt Artiſts that could be found; not only to undertake the Building part for his firſt Fleet, and for the preſent Occaſion, which admitted no delay; but

alſo

alſo to inſtruct his own People in all the neceſſary Arts, Handicrafts, and Workmanſhip which might be wanting; that ſo in time none but his own Subjects might be employ'd, and they might be capable, in time to come, to make *Muſcovy* the Terror of all its Enemies. That they had the Materials for building and equipping the greateſt Ships in the World, and in ſuch Plenty, that all the Marine Powers of *Europe* were oblig'd to ſeek to them for their Naval Stores; and it was an unaccountable Indolence and Neglect, that they alone ſhould be ignorant of the building of Ships, and of the Sea Service of every kind, who were furniſhed by Nature and Providence with the principal Funds of all Naval Proviſions: That they had Timber for the Hulls and Maſts of Ships enough to ſupply all the World; Hemp and Flax for Cordage, Cables and Rigging; Iron for Anchors, Bolts, Spikes, Nails and Tools; Pitch and Tar for Caulking, Graving, Paying, and for working and preſerving the Cordage and Rigging; that all the Nations of *Europe* were ſupplyed with thoſe things from *Muſcovy*, and it was very hard that *Muſcovy* alone ſhould not know how to uſe and apply all theſe for themſelves, but that they ſhould buy and hire Ships of other Nations, and even of thoſe who firſt fetch'd the materials from *Muſcovy* by which thoſe Ships were made.

THIS was a Diſcourſe too rational not to conquer the Judgment of any reaſonable Creature, who was not before poſſeſs'd with an invincible Prejudice. But how far it fail'd to anſwer his Expectation, as to the Impreſſions it made on the Minds of his People, we ſhall have frequent occaſion to ſee.

BUT *Muſcovy* is not the only Nation in the World that are to be made Great, Rich, and Happy againſt their Wills; and in ſpight of the moſt obſtinate endeavours to ruin themſelves; there have been Nations infatuated before them, tho' I think ſcarce ever in ſo groſs a manner.

FOR inſtead of receiving juſt Notions of the Wiſdom of ſuch Councils, of the Opportunity that preſented to raiſe the Glory and Reputation of their Country, and to lay a Foundation of Wealth and Opulence for their Poſterity, they made this very Diſcourſe a Foundation of Faction, and even of Rebellion and Treaſon; forming a Conſpiracy againſt not the Government only of the *Czar*, but againſt his Life alſo, and giving thoſe very Deſigns of his for the advantage of his Country, as Reaſons for their conſpiring his Deſtruction.

AND that which was ſtranger ſtill than all this, was, that in forming theſe Factions, and fomenting the Treaſon I ſpeak of, they brought in the Clergy to inſinuate to the People, that it was contrary to the Principles of the *Greek* Church to oblige the People to converſe with Foreigners, and much more to bring Foreigners in among them on any pretence whatever; pretending that they would poiſon the People with Erroneous Doctrines, and Heretical Opinions, and that it was Dangerous to their Religion; *and the like.*

IT is to no purpoſe to exclaim here againſt the Abſurdity of theſe Things, it is ſufficient to my Hiſtory to relate the Fact as it lies before us, which I ſhall do in its order as diſtinctly as poſſible.

THE Triumph of the Day being over, and the Traytor *Jacob* executed as above, the *Czar* applyed himſelf with his uſual Reſolutions and Vigor,

gor, in perſuit of what he had propoſed to himſelf as above: *Firſt*, he ordered the building ſuch Men of War as he had immediate occaſion for, and to this purpoſe tax'd his principal Noblemen with ſuch proportions towards the Expence, as he thought fit, and as by the Cuſtom of that abſolute Government he might legally do; allowing them however this alternative, that if any particular Nobleman did not think fit to advance ſuch ſums of Money, and ſuch numbers of Workmen as he was Tax'd at, he might take upon himſelf the Work, and build ſuch Ship or Ships, or ſuch part of a Ship, or furniſh ſuch quantity of Materials as were equivalent to the proportion of Money he was aſſeſſed at.

BESIDES this, his *Czariſh* Majeſty obliged ſuch particular degrees of his Boyars and Gentlemen as he thought proper, to ſend abroad their Sons into Foreign Countries, to ſtudy and to improve themſelves in ſuch arts, as were neceſſary to qualify them for publick Employments; particularly Mathematicks, Navigation, Engineering, and the like; whoſe Expence however, the *Czar* ordered to be ſupplyed out of the publick Treaſury.

WHILE the *Czar* was thus buſied in laying a Foundation of Glory and Greatneſs for his Subjects, *Hard lot of Princes*! his Subjects reſiſting their own Advantages, were Conſpiring againſt his Life, and in a word form'd the moſt horrid Treaſon againſt their Sovereign, and for the cutting off all that were faithful to him, and to the Intereſt of their Country, that has been heard of in any Age.

It is true the Hiſtory, *if the few and looſe accounts that are to be found of this affair deſerve the Name of Hiſtory*, of theſe things, lay the main

part of this Treaſon upon the Princeſs *Sophia* his *Czariſh* Majeſty's Siſter: But as this turbulent Lady was a cloſe Priſoner on account of former Conſpiracies, and that it was not eaſie for her to correſpond or to carry on any Conſpiracy with People without Doors, without giving ground of ſuſpicion; So tho' ſhe might be made acquainted with the Plot, yet none of the Conſpirators, tho' put to the extremeſt Torture, ever charg'd that Princeſs with being the Author of it.

THE firſt of this Plot as I find it either in the publick Accounts, or from private Intelligence, was founded in the Diſcontents of the Nobility, at being rated, or tax'd for the building of Ships of War for the *Black Sea*, after the manner as above: All the other Pretences were brought in as an accumulated Charge upon the *Czar*, for impoſing Novelties upon them, ſuch as the ſending their Sons abroad to Travel, a thing always not only avoided, but even forbid in *Muſcovy*, and reckon'd or eſteem'd to be unlawful; nay, even the very building of Ships was counted Exotic and Abſurd, and was rendred as a wicked Deſign to puſh at foreign Conqueſt, and bringing War upon the Country.

THE better and more effectually to embark the Soldiery in the Quarrel, the *Strelitzes*, that is to ſay, the ſtanding Forces of the Empire, ſuch as were the Mamalucks in *Egypt*, the Pretorian Bands in the *Roman* Empire, and the Janizaries in *Turky*, were put in mind how hardly they had been treated; how their number was continually leſſen'd by the Executions among them in the former Tumult at the *Czar*'s coming to the Adminiſtration; how their number was not made up, or their Companys recruited, but as they were put upon

upon the hardeſt Services on all occaſions, ſo their Companies being not fill'd up, it was apparent the *Czar* had a mind to wear them out by Degrees; that the preſent *Czar* had no Affection for them, and had vowed their Deſtruction; and that his *Czariſh* Majeſty had frequently declared he would ſuppreſs the very Name of them as a Body; all which, in fact, might be true; for the *Czar* not only had no occaſion for them, but reſolved, in time, to ſink the Name of them out of the Army.

Now, much of this might be true (*viz.*) that the *Czar* having had terrible experience of the mutinous Temper of the Strelitz, and how they often took upon them to act in a bloody and furious manner; inſulting the Government, and even their Prince, pretending to ſet up or depoſe whoever they pleaſed, had ſecretly reſolv'd to let them wear gradually out, and by warm Service and hard Duty, to wear away as faſt as they could, without ſuffering them to be fill'd up or recruited, and he had abundant reaſon to reſolve to do ſo.

These Men were therefore the more eaſie to be brought into any deſperate Meaſures, to prevent the annihilation of their Order, and to keep up the figure they had always made in the Government; and as their pretences of Diſguſt were very plauſible and popular, ſo they were the more eaſy to be brought into the Deſign. But ſtill I muſt leave the dead weight of this Conſpiracy upon thoſe People, who, as I ſaid before, were pinch'd by the new Order for ſending their Children abroad, and upon the Boyars who were awarded to build Ships of War at their own charge, they and their Vaſſals as above

THESE Men provok'd at the Severity of the *Czar*'s uſage of them, as they call'd it, were beginners of the Treaſon, but they did not find it ſo hard as it might have been expected, to engage others in it for the Reaſons above-mentioned.

THE building of theſe Ships, which had not been done in *Ruſſia* before, and at the ſame time obliging the Boyars and Gentlemen to ſend their Sons abroad to Travel, were both look'd upon as a great Grievance, the one being not only to entail a Charge upon them beyond the common Tax, but of bringing in of Foreigners to build and ſail their Ships; and the latter, (*viz.*) the ſending abroad their Children, was ſuch an innovation they could not well bear; Beſides this, it was inſinuated by the Prieſts, that it would be a means of corrupting them in the Principles of their Religion, and which they held to be a thing that was directly contrary to the Law of God; adhering to thoſe Texts of Scripture which forbid the Children of *Iſrael* to have any Communion with the Nations that were round about them, that they might not partake of their Idolatry; for which Reaſon even the Envoys which have been ſent heretofore to foreign Courts, have been denied to take their Sons with them; and upon pain of Death it was forbid that any *Muſcovite* ſhould go out of the Country without eſpecial leave from the Patriarch; but they now murmured that the *Czar* wholly adhered to Strangers, went himſelf daily to their Houſes, and freely admitted them to his Converſation, which ſtirred up the diſcontents of the Party that were out of favour at Court, and who had been made uneaſy at their diſappointment ſince the laſt Rebellion; who were ſtill in the Intereſt of the Princeſs *Sophia*, and wanted to be themſelves

at

at the head of the Government, they therefore take this opportunity in hopes to give a turn to Affairs, and that they might effectually bring about their Purpoſe.

BUT to come to the matter of fact, the Conſpiracy being laid deep as Hell, and cruel as Death, is deſcrib'd by one of the Writers of that time in the following words:

" NOTWITHSTANDING that the whole " Empire ſeemed to take ſhare in the glorious " Conqueſts of their Prince, and that nothing but " Feaſting and Rejoicing were to be ſeen in all " parts during the whole Winter, there remained " nevertheleſs a certain diſcontented Party among " the Nobility, who being encouraged by the ſe- " cret Cabals of the Princeſs *Sophia*, found means, " in ſpight of her confinement, to keep an under- " hand Correſpondence with her for the promo- " ting their deſigns againſt the *Czar's* Perſon; " they were ſo well prepared for the undertaking " of any Enterprize of this nature, that there " wanted but little Fuel to kindle the Flame, " they could not brook the loſs of their beloved " Strelitzes, whom they had always looked upon " as the chief Supporters of their Authority, " which at laſt made them conceive ſo implacable " a hatred againſt the *Czar*, that they entred in- " to a Conſpiracy againſt his Life; to put their " Deſign in execution, they had brought over to " their Party four Captains of the firſt Regiment " of Strelitzers; but the difficulty was, in what " manner the Attempt was to be made, for they " looked upon it as impracticable to declare open- " ly againſt a Prince, who, beſides that he was " much beloved by the People, had at his Devo- " tion a good number of the beſt Troops, com-

" manded by foreign Officers, who were quarter-
" ed in and about the City of *Muſcow*, and ready
" upon all Occaſions to Sacrifice their Lives for
" his Majeſty; it was propoſed among them, that
" the *Czar* was uſed to go ſometimes abroad with
" very ſlender Attendance, and to appear in the
" Streets of *Muſcow* without any conſiderable Re-
" tinue; this was alſo look'd upon as too dange-
" rous, conſidering the general Love the People
" bore to the Perſon of the *Czar*.

" AFTER many Debates it was at laſt reſolved,
" that conſidering the *Czar*, who takes ſhare in
" every thing that concerns his Subjects Welfare,
" was wont to appear in Perſon, in caſe of any
" accident of Fire, which frequently happens,
" and makes moſt terrible havock in the City of
" *Muſcow*, where moſt of the Houſes are of Wood;
" they looked upon this as the moſt proper op-
" portunity to encompaſs their Deſign; where-
" fore it was concluded to ſet Fire to ſome Houſes
" in the night time, when they did not queſtion
" to draw the *Czar* thither, and during the con-
" fuſion, to find means to Aſſaſſinate him. The
" next thing to be done was, according to their
" own confeſſion, to have joined the *Donaick Coſ-
" ſacks* with their Party, to have releaſed the
" Princeſs *Sophia* from her Confinement, recalled
" Prince *Waſſily Galickzin* out of *Siberia*, and ſurren-
" dred the Adminiſtration of the Government in-
" to their hands, who were alſo to reſtore the Stre-
" litzes to their antient Station.

THIS was the Subſtance of the Plot, and to carry it on more effectually, four Captains of the Strelitzes, or Troops of the Houſhold were brought into it, beſides ſeveral great Men as well in the Court as in the Army.

THE

THE Attempt was now ripe for Execution, and a great number of the Strelitzes were come privately into the Town to aſſiſt at the horrid work of murthering their Sovereign, and perhaps at that of deſtroying the whole City; for any one that knows the City of *Muſcow*, how that not only the Houſes, but even the Pavement, as we call it of the Streets, are all of Wood; and what havock a Fire often makes among them, may eaſily ſuppoſe, that the City being wilfully fired in three places, and the People being put into ſuch a Fright and Confuſion, as would have been the caſe at the murther of their Emperor, and of ſuch bloody and cruel Executions, or rather Butcheries, as would neceſſarily have follow'd ſuch a thing, the neceſſary care for extinguiſhing the Fire would be omitted in a great meaſure, and perhaps the greater part of the City had been deſtroy'd, which is horrible but to think of.

THE Day appointed for the Execution was the 20th of *Feb.* 1697, when the Evening before two of the Captains of the Strelitzers, namely, Captain *Largou Giliſaroski* and Captain *Greg Siteri*, went and diſcovered the whole Plot to the *Czar*, who was then at Supper at Monſieur *le Fort*'s, a *French* Gentleman, of whom mention is often made in this Relation. The account of the Diſcovery, with the Name and Fate of the Conſpirators, take in a few words from another Pen as follows.

" It was on the firſt Day of *February* in the " Year 1697, when his Majeſty was informed " concerning this Conſpiracy formed againſt his " Life, at the Houſe of General *le Fort*, were he " happened to dine that Day; he appeared very " little moved at ſo ſurpriſing a piece of News;

" but

" but without any change in his Countenance, aroſe
" from the Table, and being followed only by a few
" Perſons in whom he confided moſt, he went di-
" rectly to the Houſe of one of the Conſpirators,
" whoſe Name was *John Sickler*, and elevated by
" the *Czar* to the chief Dignity of a Counſellor of
" State. When his Majeſty came to the Houſe of
" this wicked Wretch, he commanded the reſt to
" remain without Doors, and he himſelf entred, only
" with three Gentlemen more, and pretending he
" had occaſion to ask his advice in ſome matter
" of moment, ordered he ſhould follow him; but
" no ſooner was he come into the Street but he
" was ſeized and immediately carried to Priſon,
" as were likewiſe five more, to wit, the Boyar
" *Alexis Sekounin*, *Feodore Puskin*, Son of the Boyar,
" *Matfefeoa Puskin*, Ten Captains of the Strelitzes,
" and a *Donaick Coſſack*; they all confeſſed their
" Crimes, and being condemned by all the Boyars,
" were executed on the fifth Day of *March* in the
" Year 1697, in the great Market-place before
" the Caſtle. Firſt their Arms and Legs were cut
" off, then they had their Heads ſevered from
" their Bodies; their Heads were fixed on the top
" of a Stone Column erected for that purpoſe,
" and their Arms and Legs ſtuck upon Iron Bars
" round about it; the Trunks of their dead Car-
" caſſes were left in the Market-place for eight
" Days after, till the ſcent became ſo nauſeous to
" the Inhabitants, that they were forced to be re-
" moved from thence.

" It having by confeſſion of ſome of the Con-
" ſpirators been made apparent, that the Boyar
" *Ivan Miloſlaski* was the chief Head of the Rebel-
" lion which happened in the Year 1682, imme-
" diately after his preſent *Czariſh* Majeſty's Ac-

" ceſſion

" ceſſion to the Crown, his Body was diſinterred,
" which being found very near entire, without
" any conſiderable decay, tho' it had lain under
" ground near twelve Years; ſeveral Gibbets
" were erected, on which were hung the Quarters
" of the Carcaſs, which were torn to pieces in an
" inſtance by the enraged Multitude.

THE Severity of the Executions in this Caſe are excuſed by their being at *Muſcovy*, where Experience has taught them, that ſuch Executions are needful; and where if ſuch a ſevere courſe had not been taken, it might have been hard to perſwade the People to believe that the Conſpiracy had been real, or the Government in earneſt.

WHEN his *Czariſh* Majeſty had maſter'd theſe Commotions, and all things were calm again, the *Czar* who was now ſo reſolv'd upon his Deſign, as that nothing could divert him, I mean as to his Travelling Abroad, began to prepare publickly for his going, and to let the ſeditious Boyars know that he was not under the leaſt Apprehenſions from any thing they were able to do in his abſence, he made it publick alſo, in whoſe Hands he reſolved to entruſt the Government in his abſence: He appointed a good Army to Encamp within a League of the City of *Muſcow*, of whom a ſtrong Detatchment were to do Duty daily at the Palace; and among all theſe Troops which amounted to 22000 Men, it was eſpecially provided, that none of the Strelitzers were allow'd, intimating, that the *Czar* who had reſolv'd to ſuppreſs effectually that body of Men, did not think them worthy to be entruſted with the protection of that Government which they had ſo often attempted to diſturb.

WHILE this was doing, Expreſſes came frequently in from *Aſoph*, and from General *Skeen* who commanded the Army there, with News of Advantages gain'd every Day over the Tartars and Rebel *Coſſacks*, of whom great numbers were often cut off; and that General, who is a vigilant Officer, daily extended his Quarters in the *Crim Tartary*, ravaging the Country and bringing in a great Booty: So that all things went on that ſide to his mind; and as the *Turks* had their Hands full in *Hungary* with the Imperialiſts, who had beaten them in ſeveral great Battels, and continued their Conqueſts till even *Conſtantinople* it ſelf began to tremble at them, they were in no condition to do any thing towards the recovery of *Aſoph*; ſo that the *Czar*'s Affairs were in a moſt formidable Poſture on that ſide.

THE Preparations for the intended Progreſs of the *Czar* were now finiſhed; and tho' I cannot ſay I have a full account of them, neither perhaps was any full account ever publiſhed; yet, as I believe, the following Particulars are rather ſhort of, than an over reckoning of the vaſt Treaſure and Expence furniſhed on this Occaſion, I ſhall tranſmit it as I find it, leaving the Reader to judge of the Reaſonableneſs and Truth of the Relation by the Particulars they will meet with in the account of the Journey.

IT was for ſome time unreſolv'd in what Capacity his *Czariſh* Majeſty ſhould Travel, and ſeveral Propoſitions were conſidered of, as particularly firſt, that he ſhould go as a private Gentleman, and with a ſmall Retinue, which was the firſt Propoſal. (2.) As a Clergy-man of the *Greek* Church, as had been practiſed by ſome of his Boyars the Year before. (3.) As an *Armenian* Merchant

Merchant, under which Diſguiſe ſeveral *Perſians* and *Turks* had travelled into *Europe*; for as to going publickly, and owning himſelf to be what he really was, *Czar* or Emperor of *Muſcovy*, that the *Czar* himſelf had reſolved againſt for many ſubſtantial Reaſons; as, (1.) The Expence of it. (2.) The loſing the opportunity of inſpecting perſonally into things, which he had with great Reaſon ſeen could not be done but in a private Capacity. And (3.) Becauſe the whole time would be taken up in Shows and Ceremonies, things below the important Deſign of the Journey, and utterly inconſiſtent with it. At length Monſieur *le Fort* propoſed what the *Czar* immediately approved, a method which as he ſaid would conſiſt both with the Honour and Safety of his Majeſty's Perſon, and yet give him all the opportunity of a Concealment that he could deſire, and this was, that a ſolemn Embaſſy ſhould be ſent from his Majeſty to all the Courts to which he had intended to go, with a Compliment of Honour, and Propoſals of Amity and Commerce; and Ambaſſadors to be veſted with full Plenipotentiary Powers to enter into Treaties of Alliance and Treaties of Commerce with the ſaid Nations reſpectively; and that his Majeſty ſhould Travel *Incognito* in the Retinue of his ſaid Ambaſſadors, and under the Protection of the Embaſſy it ſelf, by which means it would at the ſame time be known that he was perſonally preſent, and thereby his Embaſſy would be receiv'd with the greater Diſtinction; and yet as he would be at liberty to receive all poſſible Ceremony and Honour where he thought fit to accept it, ſo he would be at liberty to decline it alſo, as he found occaſion.

THIS hit his *Czariſh* Majeſty's Thoughts immediately, and was ſo perfectly agreeable to his whole Deſign, which was to make himſelf Maſter of all the Methods of the Nations he intended to paſs thro', in the management of their Military and Naval Affairs; and particularly of all Mathematical and Mechanical Knowledge, which he preſently foreſaw he ſhould by this Method be fully able to do.

THIS being therefore reſolv'd on, ſeveral things remain'd to be done, and were to be fully concerted before-hand.

1. WHO ſhould be the Ambaſſadors appointed for this Honourable Poſt.

2. WHO the Government ſhould be committed to in the *Czar*'s abſence, what Power ſhould be committed to them in the Adminiſtration, and what Forces ſhould be left them.

3. WHAT Nations the Ambaſſadors ſhould go to, and the Form of their Powers.

4. THE raiſing a ſufficient Sum of Money for the Expences of ſuch an Embaſſy, and for the extraordinary Service abroad, namely, of purchaſing things proper to be brought away, and what Sum would be wanting.

5. PROVIDING ſuch Jewels and Cloths, Liveries and Habits as the Ambaſſadors and their Servants ſhould have occaſion to appear in on the occaſion of Publick Entries, Audiences, *&c.* or for preſents to carry with them.

6. THE determining who ſhould be appointed to Travel with or after the Embaſſy.

THE reſolving theſe Particulars took up ſome time, ſeveral of them being of very great Conſequence, and we find they were adjuſted with a great deal of Prudence and Caution.

THE

THE Choice of the Perſons of the Ambaſſadors fell upon theſe three; *Firſt*, General *le Fort* Captain of the Guards, and at that time Admiral of the Fleet, who, as he was a *Frenchman* born, had liv'd many Years at *Amſterdam*, and ſome time in *Italy*, ſo he in the firſt place was fully acquainted with all the Cuſtoms and Manners of thoſe Countries, and capable of adviſing in the particular Meaſures to be obſerv'd in each Country; and of the Ceremonial; as well what Reſpect was to be ſhewn, as what was to be expected where-ever they came; and in the next place, as he knew the Language, ſo he ſerv'd the *Czar* as an Interpreter upon the moſt important Occaſions. The next was *Theodore Alexiowvitz Golloffkin*, a Grave Majeſtick Perſon, and fully acquainted with the Intereſt and Trade, as well as the Laws and Cuſtoms of *Muſcovy*, and how to carry on any Treaty of Commerce, or receive Propoſals for the Advantage and Intereſt of Trade; having been Chancellor of the whole Empire, and the ſame who formerly made the Treaty of Peace between his *Czariſh* Majeſty and the Emperor of *China*, of which we ſhall ſpeak in its place, and who had been twice by Land at *China* in the Quality of Ambaſſador and Plenipotentiary to the Emperor there. The third was call'd, *Procofet Bodgnanovitz Woluitzin*, who had been employ'd in ſeveral Embaſſies to the Grand Seignior, and was perfectly acquainted with his Maſter's Intereſts, with reſpect to the *Turks*, the ſettling Limits, the Affair of *Aſoph*, and in any thing elſe that might happen on that ſide, eſpecially if at *Vienna* any Propoſals of an Accommodation ſhould be made to the Emperor and his Allies.

THESE

THESE were the three Ambaſſadors to whom the whole Affair was committed; nor were there three Men equally capable to ſo great a Work in his whole Dominion; and as his *Czariſh* Majeſty was always with them, there was no occaſion of any delay, or ſpinning out the Negotiations, as is uſual in other caſes.

THE General *le Fort* was made firſt Plenipotentiary, and conſequently was at the Head of this Embaſſy, being partly qualifyed by his Knowledge in the Languages and Cuſtoms of *Europe* as above, to appear at the head of all the Negotiations.

THE ſecond Article (*viz.*) who the Adminiſtration of the Government ſhould be committed to in the *Czar*'s abſence, was ſoon reſolv'd by the *Czar* himſelf, who pitch'd upon the Princes *Nariskin*, *Procorofski*, and *Boris Galitzen*, all faithful Servants of the Crown, and ſteady in the Perſonal Intereſt of the *Czar*; the firſt being the *Czar*'s Mother's own Brother and prime Miniſter; the ſecond the Grand Receiver, or Lord Treaſurer, an ancient faithful Prince, always ſteady to the *Czar* and to his whole Family; and the third a particular Favourite, poſſeſſing ſeveral high Truſts in the Government, and vaſtly rich alſo himſelf.

THE Military Truſt was committed to General *Skeen* or *Scherin*, who was made Generaliſſimo for all that concern'd the War againſt the *Turks* and *Tartars* on the Borders of the *Black-Sea*, and on the ſide of *Circaſſia*; and to General *Gordon*, a *Scots* Man, for what concern'd the Guard of the Palace and Capital City of *Muſcow*, and all the Northern Parts of the *Czar*'s Dominions: The former had under his Command the whole Army

at

at and in the Neighbourhood of *Aſoph*, or from *Aſtracan* to *Kaiſerkameen* on the *Boriſthenes*; and the other had the Command of the reſt of the Troops, as well at *Muſcow* as aforeſaid, as on the Frontiers of *Poland* and of *Sweden*, *Courland*, *&c.* and had in particular the Charge given him of Protecting the Adminiſtration in the hands of the three Princes above-mentioned.

3. THE third Article was to conſider what Nations or Courts this Embaſſy ſhould be directed to, and this was ſoon determined; the Rout or Cavalcade being ordered to paſs forward thus; Firſt to *Pruſſia* and the Court of *Berlin*. II. To *Holland*. III. To *England*. IV. To *Vienna* to the Emperor. And Laſtly, to *Venice*: Theſe being the Capital places where Military and Naval Knowledge were now to be found in the greateſt Perfection; except in *France*, which for weighty Reaſons his *Czariſh* Majeſty reſolv'd not to go to *France*, at that time, being engaged in a heavy War againſt almoſt all the other Princes of *Europe*.

4. THE next Head was the Funds for the Expence of this Journey: This the *Czar* took upon himſelf to direct; and I am aſſur'd that his *Czariſh* Majeſty ſet apart for this Work above two Millions of Rubles, which in *Engliſh* Money is near 800000 Pounds Sterling; but I do not poſitively affirm that ſo great a Sum was taken: Moſt of this Money, be the Sum what it will, was expended in buying Ships, materials for forwarding ſeveral Sciences for the publick uſe in *Muſcovy*, as alſo for buying Arms, Artillery and Ammunition to be ſent to *Muſcovy*.

5. THE Proviſion for Preſents to be made to ſuch Princes, and States where they were to appear

in Ceremony, and for Audiences, for which purpoſe twenty large Bales of the richeſt Furs, ſuch as Sables, Ermins, &c. were provided, and ſeveral Bales of rich Cloth of Gold made in *Perſia* and *Georgia*; and ſeveral Parcels of very valuable Jewels, as alſo ſome fine *Turkiſh* and *Tartarian* Horſes.

6. THE determining who ſhould be appointed to Travel with the *Czar*; and this Article was very Significant, as it intimated that the *Czar* took with him about Forty Perſons of the Prime Rank in his Dominion, or their Sons; This was call'd an Honour done them, but was wiſely determined to ſecure them from Plotting and Conſpiring againſt him during his abſence: In the mean time ſuch other Noblemen as were Diſtruſted, or out of Favour, were commanded to retire to their own Seats, and not to come to the City of *Muſcow*, or to Court on pain of Death.

HAVING thus with an inimitable Conduct aſſur'd things at home to his full Satisfaction, and having taken of the Foreign Merchants in his Dominions Bills of Exchange upon Merchants in *Holland* and *England* for a great part of the Treaſure he had appointed for his Journey; and all things being ready to depart; the Baggage was ſent before with a ſtrong Guard, and having obtained proper Paſſes for the whole Embaſſy for *Koningſburgh*, a City in the Ducal *Pruſſia* belonging to the King of *Pruſſia*, then Elector of *Brandenburgh*, his Majeſty ſet out the ſecond of *May*, or thereabouts, himſelf going *Incognito* at ſome diſtance from his Ambaſſadors and their Train, and the 10th of the ſame Month he entred the Province of *Livonia*, at that time belonging to the *Swedes*.

IT was ſaid his Majeſty receiv'd ſome ill Treatment at *Riga*, that is to ſay, they declin'd ſatisfying his Curioſity in letting him view the Works and Forts in the manner he deſir'd; and as it was the firſt Town compleatly fortified after the *French* manner, his *Czariſh* Majeſty was the more preſſing to make his Obſervations, which they not admitting, extremely diſguſted him; but he has had opportunity to remember it ſince, to the Coſt of the *Swedes*, from whom he took not that City only, but the whole Province in a few Years after, and remains poſſeſs'd of them to this Day; and 'tis obſerved that the Reſentment of the Uſage of his Ambaſſadors, for he does not take notice of his being in Perſon with them, is mentioned in his Declaration of War againſt *Sweden*, as one of the Cauſes of his breaking the Peace with them.

BUT he found himſelf treated after a quite different manner at the next Place of Note he came to, which was at *Koningsberg* the Capital of the Ducal *Pruſſia* as above: Hither the Duke of *Brandenburgh*, ſince King of *Pruſſia*, came with his whole Court to receive and entertain him; and here the *Czar* reſolv'd to ſhow the World the firſt Specimen of his Glory and Greatneſs. His Embaſſy had hitherto a Retinue of Three Hundred perſons, ſeveral little Troops of Guards arm'd, ſome with Bows, ſome with Battle Axes, and others with Lances; and abundance of the young Nobility, who afterwards were diſpers'd to other parts, were at this firſt Entry.

THE manner of this glorious Entry, as it was publiſh'd and ſpread in Print in all the Languages of *Europe*, take as follows.

"THE Letters are dated from *Koningsberg* in "*Pruſſia* May 31. *N. S.* That the Ambaſſadors

" from the *Czar* of *Muſcovy*, who are the Lords " *Francis Jacow Lewits Le Fort*, *Mexiewits Holo-* " *wini*, and *Precophei Bodanowitz Wornitzien*, being " arriv'd upon the *Thurſday* Morning before " at *Lauterburg*, within a Mile of the City, " with a train of Three Hundred Perſons; " the Elector of *Brandenburgh* immediately ſent " away M. *Dankelmen* to compliment the Am- " baſſadors in his Name, and to keep them com- " pany. After Dinner, Mr. *Beſſer*, the Maſter of " the Ceremonies, arriv'd at the ſame place alſo, " with a great company of Nobility, to conduct " them to the City, at what time their Excellen- " cies taking Coach with M. *Dunkelmen*, and M. " *Beſſer*, in one of the Elector's Coaches, about " four a Clock that Afternoon made their Publick " Entry into *Koningsberg* in the following manner, " Firſt came his Electoral Highneſſes Led Horſes, " to the number of Forty. Secondly, an Officer " attended by the Kettle-Drums of the Guards, " and Three Troops of the Guards of the Body " clad in Red; next the principal Nobility of " Ducal *Pruſſia* in Twenty Six Coaches with Six " Horſes, then two of the Elector's Coaches, and " One of the Margrave *Albert*'s; after them the " Court Pages Two and Two, with a Page of the " Ambaſſadors between 'em in Red Liveries Lac'd " with Gold Lace. Sixthly, the chief Miniſters " and Officers of the Elector's Houſhold in Thirty " Six Coaches. Seventhly, the firſt Kettle-Drum, " and the firſt Trumpet belonging to his Electo- " ral Highneſs, follow'd by the Ambaſſador's Foot " Guards clad in Green, with each a Silver Bat- " tle Axe upon his Shoulder; then Thirty of the " Ambaſſadors Horſe-guards in the ſame Livery, " but without Battle Axes. Ninthly, the Coach

" wherein

" wherein their Excellencies rode. Laſtly, the
" march was clos'd with twelve Coaches fill'd
" with *Muſcovite* Gentlemen and *Brandenburghers*.
" Their Excellencies being thus conducted over
" the *Karkerbrug* to a magnificent Lodging pre-
" pared for 'em in the long Street of *Kneiphoff*,
" the Burghers being drawn up in a double File,
" and lining the Streets all the way, and a trip-
" ple diſcharge of all the great Guns ſaluting
" them from their entrance into their Lodging,
" where the Garriſon of the City ſtood to re-
" ceive them: So ſoon as they alighted they were
" conducted to their Apartment, which was guard-
" ed by twenty Soldiers; and then the Lords of
" the Court, together with M. *Dankelman*, and
" the Maſter of the Ceremonies left 'em, and
" were waited on by the Ambaſſadors to the Stairs
" of the Houſe.

UPON the Fourth of this Inſtant, *N. S.* they
" had their Publick Audience of the Elector, to
" which they were conducted by M. *Dankelman*,
" and the Maſter of the Ceremonies above-nam'd,
" with a Train of Thirty Coaches; before the
" Ambaſſadors went Thirty Perſons carrying the
" *Czar*'s Preſent to the Elector; the Ambaſſa-
" dors, who were richly habited in Cloth of Gold
" and Silver embroider'd with precious Stones,
" being enter'd into the great Hall of the Caſtle,
" where the Elector was ſeated upon a Throne
" attended by the principal Lords of his Court,
" made their Reverences; and after they had
" every one in their order complimented the E-
" lector in ſhort but ſignificant Speeches, they
" deliver'd him the Preſent, and a Letter pur-
" porting, that the *Czar* had ſent the ſaid Em-
" baſſy to his Electoral Highneſs to aſſure him of

 " his

" his desire to improve the Affection and good
" Correspondence which had always been, as well
" between him, as his illustrious Ancestors. That
" the same Embassy being from thence to pro-
" ceed to the Court of *Vienna*, in order to farther
" Consultations and Propositions for the continu-
" ance of the War against the *Turks* and *Tartars*.
" His *Muscovite* Majesty therefore requested the
" Elector to assist 'em in their Journey, withal
" returning his Electoral Highness thanks for the
" Engineers and Bombardiers which he sent him the
" last Year, and which had been so useful to him
" in the Siege of *Asoph*: To all which the E-
" lector answer'd, that he was much oblig'd to
" the *Czar* for the assurance of his good intentions,
" and the splendid Embassy he had sent him.
" And then M. *Dankelman* return'd an Answer
" more at large, and very obligingly to the Com-
" pliments of the several Ambassadors, who were
" after that reconducted to their Lodgings with
" the same Ceremonies, and treated with a splen-
" did Dinner at the Elector's Charge. The same
" Evening they were also entertained with a
" Shew of Fireworks which lasted till Midnight.
" Their Present consisted of Sables, Ermins, and
" other rich Furrs, several flowered Silks and Tis-
" sues of Gold and Silver; and other precious
" Rarities, valu'd in all at Seventy Five Thou-
" sand Crowns.

DURING his *Czarish* Majesty's stay at this Court he receiv'd the News by an Express of the Election of the Elector of *Saxony*, now King *Augustus*, to the Crown of *Poland*; and as his Majesty had before discovered himself to be in the Interest of that Party, which oppos'd the Prince of *Conty*'s Election; so upon this News he immediately sent

a Miniſter to the new King, to make his Compliment of Congratulation, and to declare publickly, that he would ſupport his Pretenſions, and would maintain him on the Throne with his whole Power; and particularly, that he would cauſe an Army of 60000 Men to march immediately to the Frontiers of *Lithuania* to be under his Majeſty's Orders, for his Aſſiſtance in caſe of need.

All the while of the ſtay of the Embaſſy, the Elector of *Brandenbourgh* did every thing that was poſſible, as well to ſhew his own Magnificence, as to Honour the Embaſſy of ſo great a Monarch; and eſpecially conſidering that this Embaſſy, however glorious in it ſelf to the Court of *Pruſſia*, was yet the more ſo by the addition of this Article, that the *Czar*, the greateſt Monarch of the *Eaſt*, was there in Perſon, under the ſhelter of the Ambaſſadors his Servants.

His *Czariſh* Majeſty had here ſeveral Occaſions to Converſe intimately with the Elector, and that with the greateſt Freedom and Openneſs; communicating to him the Reaſon of his coming thus out of his own Dominions, and paſſing *Incognito*: I have been told that the Elector, a Wiſe and Polite Prince, exceedingly approv'd and applauded his Intentions, and ſaid ſome very fine things both of his *Czariſh* Majeſty in his Miniſter's ordinary Diſcourſe, as well as perſonally to him; and at the Concluſion, willingly entred into a Defenſive Treaty with his *Czariſh* Majeſty's Ambaſſadors. In a word, the Elector omitted nothing that could either teſtify his Affection to the *Czar* in the moſt obliging manner, or add any Aſſiſtance to him or his Retinue, cauſing them to be defray'd at his own Expence, not at *Koningſ-*

berg only, but all the while he was paſſing thro' his Dominions.

FROM hence his Majeſty went by Water thro' the *Pillau* and the *Freiſch Haft*, as it is call'd, to *Dantzick*; the Elector ordering ſome Yachts to attend his Majeſty in the Paſſage. This Water call'd the *Freiſch Haft*, is an Inland Lake or Water which reaches from the *Pillau* near *Koningsberg*, to a Branch of the great River *Viſtula*, which paſſes by *Dantzick*, and by which Veſſels paſs from *Koningsberg* to *Dantzick*, and is ſeparated from the Sea by a narrow Tract of Land not above three Leagues over, which however lies parallel with the ſaid *Haft*, and entirely parts it from the main Sea.

HIS *Czariſh* Majeſty took great Delight in ſailing upon this Water, and in obſerving the dextrous manner of the Seamens working the Yachts, in turning to Windward, and the like; and he ſpent ſome Days on purpoſe to divert himſelf in that Water with ſailing up and down, the Weather alſo being very pleaſant and agreeable at that time.

ABOUT the 20th he arriv'd at *Dantzick*, where the Burghers and Magiſtrates treated his Ambaſſadors, and that is to ſay his Majeſty himſelf, with all poſſible Diſtinction, and cauſed all the Forts, Lines, Magazines, and Haven or Port, and every part of the Fortifications of that great City to be ſhown him; which Fortifications far exceeded thoſe of *Riga*, and which was very much to his *Czariſh* Majeſty's Satisfaction. His Embaſſy made no Entry here, being not directed to ſay any thing to the Citizens as a Body, and as to their Sovereign the King of *Poland*, that Kingdom was at this time as it were in an *Interregnum*, the late King

John

John Sobieski being dead, and the new King *Auguſtus* being but newly choſen, and not yet Crown'd.

HOWEVER, the Magiſtrates of *Dantzick* receiv'd ſeveral Teſtimonies of his *Czariſh* Majeſty's Favour, and to let them know how well he was pleas'd with their Conduct, aſſur'd them of his Favour and Protection upon all Occaſions; And as his Embaſſy had been preſented with great quantities of freſh Proviſions, Wines, and Refreſhments, ſo much as was almoſt ſufficient for their whole Retinue; in return of this the *Czar* cauſed his Ambaſſadors to make the Magiſtrates a preſent of Sables, and other rich Goods to a very conſiderable Value.

FROM hence his *Czariſh* Majeſty went directly thro' the Ducal *Pomerania* to the City of *Berlin*, the Court of the Elector of *Brandenbourgh*, where he was Royally entertained and his whole Embaſſy and Retinue: They made no Publick Entry here, it being the Court of the ſame Prince who had receiv'd them with ſuch Splendor at *Koningſberg*: But the *Czar* had here the Occaſion of ſeeing the moſt ſplendid Court in *Europe*, except that of *France*, and to Converſe in the moſt Polite manner; and was ſo exceedingly pleas'd with the Gallantry and Magnificence of all he ſaw here, that he reſolved to ſend his Son the Hereditary Royal Prince to reſide there for ſome time to finiſh and poliſh his Manners for the great things which they then ſuppos'd him to be born to: But time furniſhed the *Czar* with Reaſons to take other Meaſures, with reſpect to that Prince, of which in its Order.

FROM *Berlin* the *Czar* bent his courſe towards the *Low Countries*, where his ſolemn Embaſſy was principally

principally design'd to appear; and it is certain the *Dutch*, that is to say the *States*, had made it much of their business to obtain this Honour; intimating to the *Czar* their desire to form such Treaties of Commerce and Assistance as might be for the mutual Profit of the Subjects of both Nations; and particularly their Resolution to furnish his *Czarish* Majesty with Workmen, Builders, Shipwrights, and Tradesmen of every kind, necessary for the Building of his Men of War; and as they had obtain'd an assurance that his *Czarish* Majesty intended to Honour them with his Presence, and with his Embassy, so they were not wanting in all the necessary Preparations, to give him a Reception suitable in some measure to the greatness of his Person and Character.

It was not till the Month of *August* that the Ambassadors could set their Foot in the Territories of the *States General*: For tho' my business is to write of the *Czar*, and of him personally, yet I must be allowed to speak here only in the Name of the Embassy and of the Ambassadors. As soon as the *States General* had notice of their arrival upon their Frontiers, they sent a solemn Deputation to attend them at *Nimeguen*, from their whole Body; for them, and in their Names, to bid them welcome into their Country, to defray all the Charges of the said Ambassadors and their whole Retinue, to receive them at the first entrance into their Bounds, and to compliment them accordingly.

Thus they were carried thro' all the Towns with the noise of Cannon, and of small Arms on the one hand, and with the Shouts and Acclamations of the People on the other; the States being willing to preserve the Memory of their being thus

thus honoured by ſo ſolemn an Embaſſy, the moſt Glorious that had ever been ſeen in theſe Parts of the World.

It would be to omit the moſt glorious Demonſtration of the *Ruſſian* Greatneſs, if I ſhould fail to give a full Account here as well of the ſaid Publick Entry, as of the great Ceremony of Audience given theſe Ambaſſadors afterwards at the *Hague*; and alſo of the noble Appearance and Deportment of the Ambaſſadors themſelves; never any Men from the Politeſt Nation under Heaven behav'd better, or made their Speeches with a better Grace, or better became the Character they bore.

It is certain the *States-General*, who, as I ſaid before, had earneſtly deſir'd this Occaſion of ſhowing their Reſpect to his *Czariſh* Majeſty, intended to receive his Ambaſſadors with great Marks of Diſtinction, and eſpecially knowing that the *Czar* was in Perſon with them: But they found themſelves a little ſurpriz'd when they came to ſee the Ambaſſadors themſelves; their Perſons, their Behaviour, and the perfect Knowledge they had of every thing that came before them to Diſcourſe of; the Judgment they made of the Intereſts of Nations, and of the Advantages of Commerce, the manner of extending it, and of what was fit to propoſe or not to propoſe in that part; and alſo the Judgment they were able to make of their being well or ill treated; ſo that upon ſeeing what ſort of Miniſters they had to do with, the States found it neceſſary to out-do, if poſſible, what they had at firſt intended in the Honours they deſign'd them.

We are to ſuppoſe them now paſs'd thro' the *Lower Saxony*, and approaching the Frontiers of

the

the States Country; the States Deputies gone to meet and compliment them in the Name of the Republick, and conducting them to *Sourdam*, near the Capital City of *Amſterdam*, and to defray their Charges upon the Way. The next thing is that of their Publick Entry, which was the 26th of *Auguſt*.

THE Magnificence of their Reception here conſiſted of ſeveral parts, that is to ſay, not only in their meer Entry into the City, which was indeed very fine, but in the Entertainment they had there till the time they went to their Publick Audience at the *Hague*; and alſo in the Reception they had at the ſeveral Cities which they paſs'd thro', as well before they came to *Amſterdam*, as when they went from thence to the *Hague*; in all which it is to be obſerved, that tho' the *Czar* was a conſtant Eye-witneſs to the Reception of his Ambaſſadors, and had a great deal of Reaſon to be very well ſatisfied with the Honours they receiv'd, which indeed was no more or leſs than Honours done to himſelf in the Perſons of his Servants; yet his *Czariſh* Majeſty keeping firm to his firſt Reſolutions of being conceal'd, and of not appearing in Publick, was never ſeen in any of the publick Cavalcades; but either went in the Retinue conceal'd in the ordinary Dreſs of a private Perſon, or had himſelf placed in ſome private Station to be a Spectator of what paſs'd, as we ſhall find he did at their Audience at the *Hague*; and if he was at any time diſcovered, as was on Two or Three Occaſions his caſe, while he was in *Holland*, nothing gave him more uneaſineſs, nor would he leave till he found himſelf ſo diſguis'd as to be able to go publickly about and not be known.

THIS,

THIS, and his deſire to view the Yards, the Docks, the building of Ships, and all the particular Operations of the Carpenters, Caulkers, Anchor-ſmiths, Black-ſmiths, Rope-makers, and ſo of all the reſt, I ſay this, made him for ſome time Dreſs himſelf in the ordinary Habit of a common Seaman with a *Monmouth* Cap, a ſhort Jacket and wide Breeches, ſo that it was impoſſible to diſcover him; and in this Diſguiſe I have been aſſured, tho' I cannot affirm it of my own knowledge, that he has ſuffered himſelf to be hired into their Carpenters Yards as a Workman, and has both performed a Day's Work, and received his Wages. But I ſay again, that I rather repeat this from other hands, than ſay I believe it, or recommend it to others to believe.

BUT let that be as it will, certain it is, that in this Diſguiſe he had a compleat liberty, without the Interruption of the Crowding, and Curioſity of the People to look at him; I ſay he had the liberty of ſeeing every thing that was done, and alſo, *which was the main thing to him*, how it was done.

BUT to return to the Ambaſſadors, the Deputies ſent to receive them on the Borders of the Country, having brought them to *Sourdam*, a Town about Miles from *Amſterdam*, they were lodg'd there till the Preparations could be made for their Reception in the City, which was done at the Charge of the Magiſtrates; the Proceſſion was in the following manner.

IN the Morning early Five Deputies from the States of *Holland*, and Three from the City of *Amſterdam*, attended the Ambaſſadors at *Sourdam*, to Compliment them on their Arrival, and to Invite

vite them into the City; and the Yacht's of the State were order'd to lye ready to attend them, and take them on Board, with all their Retinue; which was done accordingly, and they arriv'd at the Place appointed for their Landing about ten a-Clock.

A certain Number of the Magiſtrates were Deputed to attend them at their Landing, with about fifty Coaches of the Burgomaſters, and of the Principal Citizens, and were to Complement them on their Arrival. The Principal young Citizens form'd themſelves into a Troop, and being well Mounted, and with extreamly rich Furniture and Equipage, attended their Excellencies Entry, being to the Number of near three Hundred Horſe.

Besides theſe the principal Citizens, and all the Perſons of Diſtinction went to meet them in their Coaches to a very great Number.

As ſoon as the Ambaſſadors landed, and were ſeated in their Coaches, the Cannon from the Ramparts fir'd round the whole City, and under the Thunder of the ſaid Guns the Cavalcade began.

In the firſt Place march'd a Body of the City Officers to clear the Way, and prevent Diſorders from the infinite Throng of People in the Streets; then march'd 16 Companies of the Burghers under Arms, who when they came to the Place appointed for them, form'd two Lines to Line the Street, thro' which the Ambaſſador and their whole Retinue were to paſs, other Bodies of the Burghers under Arms, lin'd the reſt of the Way to the Place where the 16 Companies took their Poſt.

NEXT to theſe came the Troop of young Gentlemen on Horſeback, very richly Dreſs'd, and their Equipages *as before* very ſplendid; and before them went the States Trumpets, and City Muſick; then came a ſmall Troop of *Circaſſian Tartars* on Horſeback, being of the Ambaſſadors, Retinue, arm'd with Bows and Arrows; then ſix and thirty *Muſcovite* Gentlemen on Horſeback; then twenty Pages of the Ambaſſadors, clothed in Scarlet lac'd, or rather overlaid with Gold Lace; then came the eldeſt Burgomaſter's Coach of State, in which were the Ambaſſador *Le Fort*, and the *Muſcovite* Prince *Menzikoff*; then the Grand Penſionary of *Holland's* Coach, in which were the two other Ambaſſadors, and another *Muſcovite* Prince: On either ſide theſe Coaches, march'd the Ambaſſador's Guard, on Foot, carrying ſilver Battle-Axes, and by their Sides large Scymetars; they were Clothed after the *Sclavonian* manner, with ſhort Doublets, and large Breeches, and over them Scarlet Cloaks, or Robes trim'd with ſilver Buttons, and large Loops, and Scarlet lac'd with Silver very rich: After theſe, came the reſt of the Coaches mention'd above, in which were the reſt of the Ambaſſadors Retinue; among them the *Czar* himſelf, but Dreſs'd in an ordinary Habit, ſo as not be diſtinguiſh'd; neither was it poſſible to Diſcover him, tho' the People were mighty inquiſitive about it.

AFTER theſe Coaches came 120 Coaches of Citizens, Merchants and Gentlemen, who came to wait upon the Ambaſſadors; and among theſe were the Magiſtrates of the City; the whole Cloſing with another Body of Burghers in Arms. But the Magiſtrates did not End here, for

for after having thus Conducted the Ambaſſadors to their Appartments, they treated them in the moſt Magnificent manner immaginable, for five Days ſucceſſively, and thus prepar'd a moſt extraordinary Firework, raiſed upon Floats, built on purpoſe in the Water of the *Amſtel*. It would take up too much Room in this Work, to give the Deſcription of this Firework, which was fram'd in the moſt Exquiſite manner, that the beſt Engineers and Architects could Invent; nor was any Coſt ſpar'd in either, the Device or the Building. In a Word, it was the moſt Magnificent that ever was ſeen in theſe Parts of the World, and his *Czariſh* Majeſty was exceedingly pleas'd with it, as he had a great deal of Reaſon to be; for it was Executed with all immaginable in Order and Succeſs.

IT is true, this Sight was attended with an unhappy Accident among the People, for that the Raiſes of the Bridge over the River, being Crowded with People, gave way, and above 100 People fell into the River, where about thirteen or fourteen were Drown'd; and indeed it was a great Wonder the Night being dark and the Water deep and the Crowd ſo great, that there were not more loſt.

HIS *Czariſh* Majeſty was now in the Center of his Buſineſs, and had before him the main Thing he came to ſee; and therefore ſhunning all publick Appearances, other than thoſe which Neceſſity oblig'd him to, he took a ſmall Houſe, near the *Eaſt-India* Companies Yards or Docks, that is to ſay, among the Shipwrights and Builders, and where he could with eaſe get Admittance in Diguiſe, to ſee every thing which he

thought

thought fit to Enquire after, and to take his Obſervations at his own Leiſure.

It is true, he was oblig'd to go from thence for ſometime to the *Hague*, to ſee his Ambaſſadors admitted to a publick Audience of their High Mightineſſes the States General; but he ſoon return'd again and remain'd perfectly retir'd for ſome Months, where he ſpent his Time in the moſt uſeful Studies of Life (*viz.*) the gaining true Ideas of the moſt noble Things, and ſearching the height and depth of Mathematical Knowledge.

I ſhould have obſerv'd here that the *Czar* himſelf having receiv'd the Deputies on the Frontiers of *Guelderland*, and being deſirous to Travel, perfectly undiſcover'd, left his Ambaſſadors and their Train, which was very great, to come leiſurely forward with the ſaid Deputies; and himſelf with only four or five Gentlemen diſguis'd as ordinary Travellers, came to *Amſterdam*, four or five Days before them, where he Lodg'd at firſt in a common Inn, or Houſe of Entertainment, and walk'd freely about the City, view'd the Situation, the Buildings, the River, the Port, and that infinite Number of Ships, which always are to be ſeen there; particularly he pitch'd upon the Place for his Retreat, or private Reſidence, which as I have mention'd above was among the Ship-Yards, Docks and Building-Places, that he might particularly make his Obſervations of thoſe things; The enquiry after which was his Delight, and the eſpecial Buſineſs of his whole Embaſſy.

The Ceremony ended as above, his *Czariſſi* Majeſty retir'd to the Houſe which he had Hir'd, and went on with his Equipage and Obſervations; and as he ſpoke Dutch indifferently well before, ſo he took occaſion to Diſcourſe with all the Work-

men and Artiſts that he could find, who he diſcovered to have any tollerable Judgement in things of that Nature. Nor was his Majeſty ſo retir'd, but that he admitted ſome of the Merchants of *Amſterdam* to his Converſation, and eſpecially ſuch as had reſided in *Muſcovy*; that is to ſay at *Arch-Angel* and *Muſcow*, of which ſeveral were then living in *Amſterdam*, and with theſe he would be very free and Courteous, and ſometimes *even Merry*, only not allowing them to Treat him with too much Ceremony and Diſtinction.

By the Converſation of theſe Men he had ſeveral People brought to him, who were moſt Maſters of Science, and who entertain'd his Majeſty very much to his Satisfaction, with the ſeveral Experiments in Nature, in Phyloſophy, and in the Mathematicks, which they had made in the Conſequence of long Study; and it was to their Aſtoniſhment how ſoon, and how readily his *Czariſh* Majeſty took in the juſt Ideas, which their Diſcoveries, and Experiments preſented, and how knowingly he would Diſcourſe, even of thoſe things, which he had received no Notion of before.

The Deputies of the Admiralty alſo ſhew'd their reſpect to his Majeſty, in cauſing every thing that was curious, relating to Naval Affairs to be ſhewed him, and Artiſts of all kinds to be preſented to him.

In the mean time the publick Audience of his Ambaſſadors call'd him away to the *Hague*, where he had the ſatisfaction of ſeeing their High-Mightineſſes the States General do him the utmoſt Honour in the Perſons of his Ambaſſadors, and even to out do themſelves, no Audience having ever been known like it in that Country.

It would be tireſome to relate the Magnificence of their Reception all the way from *Amſterdam*

ſterdam to the *Hague*, whether they and all their Retinue went the latter End of *October*.

His *Czariſh* Majeſty alſo having Intimation of the great Preparations the *States-General* made for the Reception of his Embaſſy, and for Gracing their Audience, reſolv'd to make a ſuitable preparation for it on his Side; and therefore cauſed his Ambaſſador to make three of the moſt Magnificent Coaches that could be made for Money, and order'd them to buy Jewels likewiſe, and Cloths the Richeſt that could be had, to encreaſe their Retinue with about Forty more Servants, and to Cloth them and all the reſt in new Liveries quite different from thoſe they had before; in a Word, he directed that every thing ſhould appear in the greateſt ſplendor poſſible; ſo that 'tis ſaid the Expence coſt above 200000 Dollars extraordinary.

All things being ready, and the Audience appointed, they ſet out from *Amſterdam* the 24th of *September*, and arriv'd at the *Hague* the ſame Day.

Their publick Entry was infinitely Superior to that at *Amſterdam*, this being at the Appointment of the *States-General*, the other only a Reception of them by the Citizens and Magiſtrates of *Amſterdam*; and yet the particulars of this part were not ſo publickly ſet down as the other, what I have met with amounts to this.

That the Ambaſſadors were receiv'd at a diſtance from the *Hague*, where they had gone on purpoſe for the Occaſion, by five Deputies of the *States-General* as Introductors of Ambaſſadors: They were attended by the Reigment of Horſe-Guards, and two Battalions of the Guards of Foot, call'd the Blew Guards; with two Coaches of State, drawn by eight Horſes each, for the Am-

baſſadors, and forty other Coaches with ſix Horſes each, for their Retinue.

THE Ambaſſadors were preceeded by forty Gentlemen on Horſeback, habited as *Coſſacks*, arm'd with Bows and Arrows, and thirty others as *Tartars*, arm'd with Lances and Bows; all exceeding richly Cloth'd, but after the manner of their own Countries: They had forty Pages in different Livery, but all cover'd with Gold and Silver Lace as rich as poſſible. Their immediate Guard were as at *Amſterdam*, Habited after the *Muſcovite* manner, carrying ſilver Battle-Axes in their Hands, and Symetars with ſilver Hilts by their Sides.

THE Ambaſſadors were in two Coaches of State, and their own new magnificent Coaches follow'd, having Thirty two Footmen in rich Liveries walking on the Sides.

THE whole was follow'd with a numerous Train of Coaches belonging to the Nobility and Gentry, and to the foreign Miniſters, of which there are always a great many at the *Hague*, but more eſpecially at that Juncture, it being the time of that *Congreſs* for the Peace with *France*, call'd afterwards the Treaty at *Ryſwick*.

HIS *Czariſh* Majeſty was in the Train in Diſguiſe, wearing a plain blew Coat, a large white Perriwig, and a white Feather; and being perfectly well acquainted both with the Perſon and extraordinary Merits of the Sieur *Witſen* (who was that Year Burgomaſter of *Amſterdam*) he borrowed his Coach, and deſir'd him to Accompany him thither; which was perform'd with ſo much Dexterity and Secreſy, by the ſaid Sieur *de Witſen*, that his Majeſty was not diſcover'd by any body living.

It was in the Month of *September* of the ſaid Year, when there was the greateſt ſhow of foreign Ambaſſadors that ever was ſeen at the *Hague*, occaſion'd by the Negotiation, *as above*, at *Ryſwick*: Thither moſt Courts of *Europe*, had ſent their Plenipotentiaries, who all ſtriving to out vie one another in Magnificence. It was no eaſie Matter to add any thing to the Splendor of their Equipages; yet his *Czariſh* Majeſty being ſenſible that the Eyes of the World in a moſt peculiar manner would be fix'd upon his Embaſſy; and being invited by a moſt commendable emulation to maintain, as well on that as other Occaſions the glory and luſtre of his eminent Station in the World, as claiming the Title of an Emperor, and bearing the Imperial Arms; he was fully reſolv'd that this moſt ſolemn Embaſſy, honour'd by his Preſence ſhould bear the Marks of, and be fully anſwerable to his high Station and Grandeur.

In effect according to the Teſtimony of all that were Spectators of this ſolemn Audience, every thing was manag'd with ſo much order, majeſty and gravity, and with ſo much Magnificence, that nothing could add to the Luſtre of this Solemnity, which in all Reſpects was ſuitable to his Majeſty's Deſign.

It is confeſs'd by all Hands that never any Ambaſſador appear'd in a more ſplendid Attire then the General *le Fort* the firſt Ambaſſador did that Day; he was clad after the *Muſcovite* Faſhion, in a long Robe of Cloth of Gold, lin'd with the moſt precious Sables that ever were ſeen. This Robe as well as the Veſt which he wore under it, was cover'd before with Diamonds in the Shape of a Hern's feather, with ſuch Luſter as dazl'd the Eyes of the Beholders; he Harang'd their High and

Mightineſſes in the *Ruſſian* Tongue, with an Air altogether Majeſtick, and ſuitable to the Character he bore upon ſo ſolemn an Occaſion. The two other Ambaſſadors, who appeared likewiſe in very rich Apparel, made alſo their Compliments to their High and Mightineſſes with a Majeſtick Gravity; but that which added the greateſt Luſtre to the Audience, was, that all the Ambaſſadors of moſt Princes in *Europe*, honoured theſe Men with their Preſence; and his *Czariſh* Majeſty had the ſatisfaction to be an Eye-witneſs of all that paſſed from a Cloſet Window opening into the Audience Room, without being perceived by any Body; and returned the next Day privately to *Amſterdam*, extremely well pleaſed with his Journey; neither did their Excellencies make any long ſtay in the *Hague*, they having no other matters to propoſe to the States, but the confirming of former Treaties.

THE Ceremonies now ended, the *Czar* not only applyed himſelf to the Work he came about as before, but all the Perſons of Diſtinction which he brought with him, diſpers'd themſelves according to the different Commands he gave them; applying themſelves according as their different Inclinations led them, to the Knowledge of ſuch things as were needful, according to the Pattern of their great Maſter.

THIS leſſened the Retinue which at firſt appeared in the Embaſſy exceedingly; and yet the Ambaſſadors retain'd an Equipage ſuitable to the Character they bore, and ſuitable to the Glory of their Maſter.

IN the mean time the *Czar* receiv'd an invitation very agreeable to him, which was to have an Interview with the King of *Great Britain* at that time,

time, the Glory of that part of the World, and who had juſt finiſhed, with Honour to himſelf, and Satisfaction to all his Allies, a long and bloody War with the King of *France* by the Treaty at *Ryſwick*.

THE King came to *Utrecht*, where the *Czar*, accompanied only with Prince *Menzikoff* and General *Le Fort*, but all *Incognito*, went to ſee him; theſe two mighty Monarchs receiv'd a mutual Satisfaction in this interview, as both of them afterwards teſtified: They continued ſome Hours together, Monſieur *Le Fort* ſerving as an Interpreter; and here it was that his *Britiſh* Majeſty invited the *Czar* to come and ſee his Court at *London*; and that his *Czariſh* Majeſty accepted the King's invitation, of which by it ſelf.

HIS Majeſty now having his full leiſure for the perfecting what he came about, he hir'd Artiſts in *Holland* of ſeveral ſorts, and giving them very good Conditions, diſpatch'd them for *Muſcow*, ſome by Land, the Seaſon not admitting to go about by the North Cape to *Arch-Angel*, and ſome were maintain'd and employ'd in making Models and Draughts for Building, 'till the Seaſon for going by Sea came on: In this manner they were diſpers'd many ways, ſome went to Schools or Maſters to learn Navigation and the Elements of *Euclid*; others Bound themſelves for terms of Years to Artificers; in a word, none were Idle, the *Czar* reſolving to furniſh himſelf and all his Attendants with a Fund of Knowledge ſufficient to anſwer his End; and indeed conſidering his Majeſty's View, it was a very great Fund of Human Learning that ought to be laid up, to carry home and inſtruct a Nation.

IT was an immenſe Sum of Money that his *Czariſh* Majeſty laid out here in buying Tools and Inſtruments for the Works, and ſeveral Trades and Arts which he and his People were to put in Practiſe; there was not a Handicraft of any Note, that his *Czariſh* Majeſty did not acquaint himſelf more or leſs with, and with the manner of their Working, no not from the making of a Watch to the builder of a Ship; but it is to be noted, that the Marine Affairs were thoſe his chief Delight was in, and which ſuited beſt with his Genius; and while he was at *Amſterdam* he bought him a Yacht, with which he diverted himſelf continually upon the River and the *Zuyderzee*, till by Cuſtom he learnt to ſteer and work her as dexterouſly as the ableſt Seamen he could get.

HERE he alſo hir'd ſeveral Seamen and Officers, and made them Captains and Lieutenants of his Men of War, ſome of whom are in his Service to this Day.

ABOUT the .. of *Septemb.* 1698, he reſolv'd upon his Journey, or Voyage rather, to *England*, and accordingly he arriv'd here in *November* 1698, of which preſently.

BUT I ſhould have noted here, that while his Majeſty remain'd at *Amſterdam*, after he had been at the *Hague*, and was return'd as above, he receiv'd three Couriers from his Lords, to whom he had left the Adminiſtration of the Government at *Muſcow* in his abſence; bringing him the welcome News of a great Victory obtain'd by his Army under the Command of General *Schein* at *Aſoph* over the *Turks* and *Tartars*. The Particulars of this Action, as they were then related, were as follows, (*viz.*)

His Majesty first receiv'd an Express from *Muscovy*, with the agreeable News of this Battel; the other Accounts came some time after by different ways: The *Cham* of the *Crim Tartars* had, in the beginning of the Spring, caused great numbers of his Troops to pass in many small Bodies, and at different times, through *Caffa*, in order to join them with the *Tartars* of *Circassia*, and especially those inhabiting near the River *Cubanoc*, knowing that the *Muscovite* Army was divided into several Bodies, the better to cover the Workmen, who were employ'd in several places, in compleating the before-mentioned Fortifications, looking upon this as a fit opportunity to surprize them unawares; For this purpose he order'd the *Tartars* commanded by *Sultan Galga*, to advance with great and speedy Marches towards the *Muscovites*: But the *Muscovite* General *Schein* having received intelligence of their approach, had just so much leisure given him as to draw down his Troops together in an advantageous Place, where he resolv'd to engage the Enemy; these perceiving themselves superior in number to the *Muscovites*, and being encourag'd by the fancy'd fear of the *Muscovite* Army, which did not move from their Post, fell with great Fury upon them, and were received with great Bravery by the *Russians*, who were contented to defend themselves in their Post, till their General perceiving the first heat of the *Tarters* slacken, attacked them very briskly, put them first into Confusion, and soon after to the Rout, with a great Slaughter on the Enemy's side, whom they pursued to the River *Hagalinc*, were many of them were drown'd; this River runs through *Circassia*, about two Leagues distant from

from *Aſoph*; tho' our Maps put this River to the North on the other ſide of the River *Don*, above thirty Leagues from *Aſoph*.

THEIR Excellencies the *Muſcovite* Ambaſſadors made Publick Rejoicings upon this Occaſion, and invited the Magiſtrates of *Amſterdam* and other Perſons of Quality to a magnificent Entertainment, where they were diverted with Dancing and Muſick, Fireworks, and all ſorts of other Divertiſements: His *Czariſh* Majeſty was pleas'd to appear there in Perſon, and in ſo pleaſant a Humour, that all the Gueſs were extreamly ſatisfy'd with his Goodneſs.

TOWARD the end of the Winter this Victory was ſeconded by the News of another Advantage obtain'd near the River *Boriſthenes*; for the *Crim Tartars*, in Conjunction with thoſe of *Budziack* and *Oczakow*, having beſieged *Kaſikermeen*, had carried on their Trenches to the very Counterſcarp, and at the ſame time made themſelves Maſters of the adjacent ſmall Iſle of *Tomam*; but a Body of *Muſcovites* having joined the *Coſſacks* inhabiting thoſe Frontiers, came time enough to the Relief of the place, forcing the *Tartars* to abandon the Siege, and that with a conſiderable Loſs on their ſide; upon which his Majeſty gave orders, that the ſaid Iſland ſhould be ſtrengthened by ſome regular Fortifications.

ALL theſe Succeſſes added to his Majeſty's Glory; and the more, in that they were obtain'd in his Abſence, as it was a Teſtimony that the Government of his Affairs was left in good Hands, and that he had made a right Choice of his Men, with whom he had entruſted the Command of his Armies, as well as of thoſe to whom he had committed

mitted the Adminiſtration of his Civil Government.

THESE Advices were follow'd with other Letters, giving him an Account of the progreſs of his Engineers, and how well they had ſecur'd and fortify'd the Places he had won; as well *Aſoph* as *Tuba*, *Kaiſikermeen*, and other Places; and that the firſt of theſe *eſpecially*, was put into ſuch a Poſture that it might juſtly be eſteemed one of the ſtrongeſt Fortreſſes of the World, particularly that part which he had directed to be built in the Moraſs mention'd above.

THIS was the more agreeable to the *Czar*, as it was ſuitable to his wiſh, for that in a Word, *Aſoph* was the Center of all his vaſt Deſigns, and he had as we may ſay, laid no leſs than a Scheme for the Ruin of the whole *Ottoman* Empire in the Gradations he had Projected from that one Place, as will be ſeen hereafter.

WE are now to ſuppoſe his *Czariſh* Majeſty on his Voyage to *England*, his *Britanick* Majeſty ſent over ſeveral Yatches to bring him over with a Man of War, or two for his Convoy, and he arriv'd in the River of *Thames* the of *October*. 1697.

WHEN he came to *London*, the King omitted nothing to ſhow him that he had a very particular eſteem for him; indeed the Intent and Meaning of his thus hazarding his Perſon in foreign Parts for enabling himſelf to Government, and People was a thing ſo inimitably great, and ſo praiſe worthy in a Prince of his Rank, that it merited all the regard, and all the Aſſiſtance that could poſſibly be given him.

His *Britanick* Majeſty at firſt offer'd the *Czar* all the publick Honour due to his Character as a Royal or Imperial Soveraign and Crown'd Head; as particularly, his Majeſty offer'd him *Somerſet-Houſe* for his Reſidence, being a Pallace Royal, and that he ſhould be attended by the Officers of the Royal Houſhold, and that all the Expence of his Kitchin, and of his Retinue ſhould be defrayed; that he ſhould have a Detachment of the *Engliſh* Houſhold Troops for a Guard to his Perſon, and a certain Number of the King's Coaches to attend him.

But the *Czar* after returning a very obliging Anſwer, declin'd all thoſe Honours; let his Majeſty of *Great Britain* know the Reaſons of his Reſolution to be every where Incognito, and how neceſſary it was to his Deſign in coming abroad; that he came for Improvement, and had no time to ſpend in Ceremony, receiving and returning Viſits, and the like.

He therefore deſir'd his *Britanick Majeſty* that he would ſuffer him to be as much conceal'd as poſſible, and yet that he might have ſo much of his Royal favour, as ſhould admit him to ſee what was proper for his Improvement in Maritime Affairs, which was the principle thing that he deſir'd to Inſpect, and which he found here was manag'd even in a greater Perfection than in any other part of the World.

His *Britanick* Majeſty was ſo extreamly pleas'd with this, and with all the other Teſtimonies, which the *Czar* gave of his Perſonal Capacities, and his Genius to the things he came to enquire after; and particularly, the truly noble End and Deſign of his enquiring after them; that he immediately order'd that all poſſible Encouragement,

couragement, and Aſſiſtance ſhould be given his Majeſty; that he ſhould be ſhowed every thing that he had a deſire to ſee, and that all the Men of Art ſhould communicate every thing that his *Czariſh* Majeſty ſhould deſire to know: In a Word, his *Britanick* Majeſty let him know that nothing ſhould be wanting in *England* to give all poſſible Aſſiſtance to his *Czariſh* Majeſty in ſo glorious a Search after Knowledge, and Wiſdom, and that he would do every thing that was in his power to let him (the *Czar*) ſee what eſteem he (the King) had for him on that particular Account.

HIS *Czariſh* Majeſty after his letting the King know his Reſolution of remaining Private, took a Houſe, as proper, and as happily Situated for ſuch a purpoſe, as the whole City could hardly have afforded ſuch another, conſidering its being a well built commodious Houſe alſo; for as it had a good front Gate to bring a Coach to, in the *Great-Row*, of *Norfolk-ſtreet*, in the *Strand*; ſo it had a private pair of Stairs to the River, peculiar to the Houſe only; where Boats could come even at low Water to ſet him on ſhore, or take him in, as he thought fit, and ſo that it was ſcarce poſſible to the People to ſee him go or come.

WHILE he reſided here, he had frequent Interviews with the King, and made ſome Viſits to the Princeſs *Ann*, afterwards Queen; went to ſee *Windſor* Caſtle, *Hampton* Court, and other publick Places; was particularly ſhew'd the *Tower* of *London*, and all the Varieties there, where he was particularly taken with the Great Armory, and the admirable Order of the placeing the ſmall Arms, and Furniture for Horſe and Foot; and epſecially the keeping the Arms ſo clean

clean, well fix'd, and ready for Service; and, as we hear, has appointed one to be Built after the ſame manner at *Petersburgh*, and to be furniſh'd with ſmall Arms for an Hundred Thouſand Men.

AT the ſame time he was accommodated at *Deptford* with an Apartment which had a private Door into the King's Yard and Wet Dock, and a way alſo into the Merchant's Yards and Wet Docks, on the way from *Deptford* to *Redriff*; by which he had opportunity to ſee every part of the Builders Art exemplifyed; and which was moſt delightful to his Majeſty, the Maſter Builders having expreſs Orders to oblige his Majeſty as much as poſſible, laid before him their Moulds and Draughts, and the accurate Method by which they fitted every piece of Timber, and directed the building of the largeſt Ships of War.

HIS *Czariſh* Majeſty was ſo extremely pleas'd with that part, whether it was that their Method was not ſo good in *Holland*, or that they did not let him ſo far into the Secret of their Art, I know not; but he was pleas'd to declare, that our Building far exceeded all that he had ſeen before, and that he was reſolv'd to make the *Engliſh* Men of War be the Pattern by which all his own Ships ſhould be built, and to have his Builders inſtructed to work their Models the ſame way; and I am informed he made himſelf ſo much Maſter of the Method, that he has ſince drawn the firſt Draught of his largeſt Men of War with his own Hand.

AFTER this his Majeſty the King of *Great Britain* ordered Admiral *Mitchel* to go down to *Portſmouth*, where there then lay a Squadron of Men of War, and caus'd them to be form'd into

two

two Fleets, and to ſhow the *Czar* the manner of an Engagement at Sea, making them draw out and Engage, tho' without firing with Ball.

HERE his *Czariſh* Majeſty being on board the Admiral's Ship, was ſhewed the manner of two Fleet's preparing to Fight, their Unmooring, their Scouts giving Signal to the Fleet, the Admiral giving Signal to draw up in a Line, and when to engage; their ſtriving for the Weather-gage, bearing down upon the Enemy, ſtanding off and on to keep out of the Fight, keeping the Line, putting off of Fireſhips, and attacking with Fireſhips; firing Broadſides, clapping one another aboard, lying thwart Hawſe, coming up under the Stern, and pouring in Broadſides upon a Ship's Quarter or Bow, and in ſhort, all the ways of taking Advantage of an Enemy in Fight.

THIS was perform'd with ſo much Order, ſo Dexterouſly, and ſo without the leaſt Dammage, that his *Czariſh* Majeſty profeſs'd himſelf exceeding well pleas'd with it; and that much more than he was with ſomething of the ſame kind offered him in *Holland*, which being performed alſo by ſmaller Veſſels, could not ſo well explain the Particulars neceſſary to be known for the ordering a Sea-fight with Capital Ships.

THUS the *Czar* employ'd his time in *England*, viewing every thing that was Curious, and entering into due Enquiries after thoſe things, which he found moſt neceſſary for his Purpoſe; as particularly, beſides what I have mentioned above, he was very curious in his viewing the Mint, and Eſſaying the Metals, reducing them to the Standard Value, the Melting-houſe, the Flatting Mill, the Stamping, and the Dye, or Stamp which makes the Impreſſion. Likewiſe he went to the

Univerſity of *Oxford*, where he ſaw the publick Libraries, the manner of diſpoſing the Books and Manuſcripts; view'd the Rarities, and particularly the Printing-houſe, which he was ſo pleas'd with, that he cauſed all the Materials, and all the Utenſils for ſetting up the like, to be Bought, with Fonts of Letters of every ſize, and of every Character, reſolving to ſet up a Printing-houſe at *Muſcow* and at *Petersbourgh*, which I am aſſur'd he has ſince brought to paſs.

His ſtay in *England* was about three Months, during which time he improved himſelf ſo much in all the Parts of thoſe Sciences, which he apply-ed himſelf to look into, that a learned Perſon who convers'd with him freely, ſaid publickly, that an ordinary Proficient would not obtain ſo much in three Year.

At his going away his Majeſty preſented the *Czar* with a fine Yacht or Frigate built for his own particular uſe, for his paſſing and re-paſſing between *England* and *Holland*; being not only a beautiful and finely finiſhed Veſſel, but an excellent Sailer; carrying 24 Braſs Guns, and moſt richly painted and guilded; in which Veſſel his *Czariſh* Majeſty, after taking leave of the King and the Princeſs, and with great Profeſſions of mutual Kindneſs and Satisfaction in what had paſs'd, ſet Sail for *Holland*, and arriv'd ſafe at the *Brill*, tho' not without ſome hazard in the Voyage, having had very bad Weather in his Paſſage.

All the while his *Czariſh* Majeſty was in *England*, he employ'd ſome *Engliſh Ruſſia* Merchants to Hire for him, and Contract with as many of the beſt Maſter Builders, Caulkers, Carvers, and the like of other Trades, which were generally employ'd in finiſhing and fitting out Ships in or-

der

der to ſend them to *Muſcovy*, and his Majeſty left Commiſſioners with the ſame Merchants to Contract with others after he was gone, and to ſend them after him, which was done to his content; and 'tis by the help of theſe very Men chiefly, that the *Czar* has at this time ſo many Ships, as well Capital Men of War, from 50 to 96 Guns, as light Fregates, Brigantines, Tranſport-Ships, and the like; which they have built, and are ſtill ever building at *Croonſlot* and *Petersburgh*, where the *Czar*, who at that time had not a Ship, or a Port in the *Baltick*, has now ſuch a Fleet, and ſo well Mann'd, as no Prince ever had before him in ſo ſhort a while; and we have News from thence juſt at the writing of theſe Sheets, that his *Czariſh* Majeſty has built at the Port of *Petersburgh*, and other adjacent Place, no leſs then ſix Men of War, from 76 to 98 Guns, which are ſome of them Lanch'd, and the others almoſt ready to Lanch, and will be ready for the approaching Summers Expedition.

ALL this while his Ambaſſadors remained at the *Hague*, except that Monſieur *La Fort* had been allow'd to go over to *England* with the *Czar*, in a private Capacity, and return'd to *Holland*, again a little before him.

AND now having finiſh'd his enquires, and having viewed every thing that was curious, and Improving as well in *England*, as in *Holland*; ſettled Amity and a good Underſtanding between himſelf, and both thoſe Nations, and having farther Progreſs to make, eſpecially, reſolving to ſee the Imperial Court at *Vienna*, the Senate, and City of *Venice*, and the Antiquities of *Rome* and *Italy* he prepar'd to be gone.

I SHALL omit the particulars of his Paſſage from *Holland*, thro' *Germany* to *Vienna* firſt, becauſe it would ſpin out this Work too far in the Affairs of leaſt Conſequence, and perhaps ſtraiten us for Room in thoſe of more weight: And Secondly, becauſe we have not a full Account of all the parts of the Route he took come to Hand: It may ſuffice to ſay that his *Czariſh* Majeſty arriv'd at *Vienna*, about the 10th of *June* with his Ambaſſadors, and all their Train, as before; having been receiv'd, with particular Marks of Reſpect and Diſtinction, in all his Paſſage thro' the Empire: As to *France* his Majeſty diſtinguiſh'd himſelf ſo much in Favour of the Confederates, as not ſo much as to ſet his Foot in any part of *France*, nor to have the leaſt Intentions of ſeeing that Court, which values itſelf ſo much upon its being the Center, and the Scene of all Peoples curioſity.

HIS Imperial Majeſty came immediately into the ſame Sentiments, as to the *Czar*'s deſign of Travel as others had done, eſteeming it an Action truly glorious and worthy a Monarch of the higheſt Rank in the World, and reſolv'd therefore to ſhow to his *Czariſh* Majeſty all the Reſpect, and do him all the Honours the Imperial Court was capable of.

THE *Czar* and his Ambaſſadors continu'd in a particular Lodging appointed for them till the 26th, having firſt notify'd their arrival in form as Ambaſſadors; they had the Pallace of *Gundersdoff*, belonging to the Count *de Koningſec*, where they remain'd till the 26th, when they made their publick Entry with their uſual Magnificence.

THE Ambaſſadors went to a Place call'd Mount *Tabor*, whence the ſhow was appointed to ſet out, and Commiſſioners were ſent thither to receive

ceive them attended by a Party of Dragoons of the Guards.

THE March began with the Trumpets and Kettle-Drums, belonging to the States of the Province, follow'd by two Companies of Dragoons, and ſome Imperial Officers; after them the Ambaſſadors Trumpets in rich Liveries, as alſo the Pages and Footmen in the ſame; thence proceeded a great Number of Coaches and ſix Horſes, of the Lords of the Court, which were follow'd by two of the Emperors Coaches. The firſt for Princes that came along with the Ambaſſadors. The ſecond for the Ambaſſadors themſelves, and the Imperial Commiſſioners; ſurrounded with Hey-dukes bearing their Maces, and followed by Pages on Horſeback, and other domeſtick Servants, and three noble Coaches belonging to the Ambaſſadors. Which with a vaſt Train of Coaches belonging to the principal Perſons in the Imperial Court, followed by another Detatchment of Dragoons, clos'd the Cavalcade.

THE 29th of the ſame Month, the Ambaſſadors had a private Audience of the Emperor; and here, tho' incognito, his *Czariſh* Majeſty appear'd with his Ambaſſadors, *that is to ſay*, went as one of their Train, after the Audience of the Ambaſſadors, which was matter of Ceremony, the *Czar* in particular was admitted to an Enterview without them.

WHILE the Ambaſſadors had their Audience, the Emperor ſtood for ſome time cover'd; but afterward ſat down, and deſir'd the Ambaſſadors to ſit alſo, but they excuſed themſelves which they did more particularly, in regard to the Preſence of their own Soveraign, who being near them, muſt have been ſtanding, while they had ſat down,

which the Emperor presently understanding to be the Reason, rose up also himself and receiv'd them standing; Monsieur *Le Fort* made his Harange here in Latin, which the other two Ambassadors spoke in the *Russian* Tongue, and the Emperor answer'd in Latin, which by the way, his Imperial Majesty spoke very fluently.

When they were dismiss'd, the *Czar* and General *Le Fort* (no more being admitted) went to the Interview with his Imperial Majesty. They went in by a back Pair of Stairs from the Chamber of Audience, when the *Czar* advancing, his Imperial Majesty receiv'd him at the Door of his Anti-Chamber.

After the first Complements the Emperor put on his Hat; but seeing the *Czar* refus'd to be cover'd, because he was incognito, his Imperial Majesty uncover'd also; no Body was present at this Interview, but the Count *Deichtenstein* grand Chamberlain to the Emperor, and the Count *de Dittrickstein* his Grand 'Squire, with general *Le Fort*, who serv'd as the *Czars* Interpreter; and then it was that the *Czar* took his opportunity to impart to the Emperor the Letters he had receiv'd, which gave him an Account, how that eight Thousand of his Garrison of *Asoph* had taken thirty Thousand Horses from the *Tartars*, after they had defeated a Body of three Thousand Men that Guarded them.

The 6th of *July*, the Count of *Staremberg*, Camp-marshal General of the Emperor's Armies, and President of the Council of War, gave the *Czar* and his Ambassadors a magnificient Collation, accompani'd with a Consort of Musick, and after that a noble Ball; where were present he principal Lords, and Ladies of the Court; the

9th

9th being the Feſtival of St. *Peter*, the Name which was given to the *Czar* in Baptiſm, the ſame Prince gave a great Feaſt, and a Ball in *Guntersdorf* Houſe, the Emperor ſent him his Muſick, and order'd lovely Fire-Works to be made ready, which were play'd off in the Evening, to augment the Divertiſement of the Feaſt; the ſame Day his Imperial Majeſty ſent a Preſent of all manner of Mathematical Inſtruments to the *Czar*, who two Days after went to ſee the Armory, the Libraries, the Pictures, and all the other Rarieties of the Imperial Palace.

UPON the 21ſt was a great Feaſt in the Palace *de le Favorite*, which began with a Ball, and a Conſort of Muſick, afterwards a ſplendid Collation; then another Ball, which laſted all Night, till break of Day; every Masker was in the Habit of a different Nation; ſo that all the moſt noted Nations of the World were there repreſented, and every Prince or Lord had a Lady by his Side in anſwerable Habits of the ſame Nation; and the Habits made of rich Stuffs, ſparkling with precious Stones; ſo that in the memory of Man, a Sight ſo Magnificient had not been ſeen their.

THE Emperor, who repreſented an Hoſt, with two and thirty Pages, habited like Butlers, drank in a moſt lovely Glaſs, the Countryman of *oeſt Friſe*'s Health, who was repreſented by the chief of the *Muſcovite* Princes; ſaying at the ſame time, that he knew well his extraordinary Zeal for the *Czar* of *Muſcovy*; and on the other Side, the Countryman of *Oeſt Friſe* drank the Hoſt in Diſguiſe's Health; ſaying at the ſame time, that he was not ignorant of his inviolable Affection for the Emperor; after which his imperial Majeſty reply'd, that he gave the Glaſs to the Countryman of *Oeſt*

Freſe, deſiring him to preſerve it carefully in Memory of the Healths drank in ſuch good Company.

UPON the 29th the grand Embaſſy had their publick Audience, to which they were conducted in the following Manner. Firſt march'd a Company of Foot, follow'd by ſix Trumpeters belonging to the Embaſſy, clad in rich Liveries, after the *German* mode, thoſe were follow'd by fifteen of the Court Coaches, wherein rode the *Muſcovite* Lords, in their own Country Habit, and others after the *French* dreſs; after theſe came fifty Burghers, clad in black Velvet, bearing the Preſents deſign'd for his Imperial Majeſty, which conſiſted in a great Number of lovely Ermins and Furs, Sables, Cloath of Gold and Silver, and a Harneſs enrich'd with Pearl; after this rode a *Muſcovite* a Horſeback, carrying the Letters of Credence, follow'd by one of the Emperor's Coaches; wherein the Embaſſadors rode, together with his Imperial Majeſty's Commiſſioners. This Coach was ſurrounded and attended by Pages and other in Liveries belonging as well to the Ambaſſadors as to the Grandees of the Court, who with the Ambaſſadors Coaches clos'd the March; the Ambaſſadors entering into the Court of the Palace *de le Favorite* found the Guards in Arms, and were conducted to the Hall of Audience, with the accuſtom'd Ceremonies, after which they were magnificently Treated at the Emperors Charges, and ſo Conducted back to the Place where they lay.

THE *Czar* was juſt upon his departure for *Venice*, in his way to *Rome*, and had already ſent eight Perſons of his Train before, but at the very time he was preparing to depart; he was conſtrain'd to alter his Reſolution, and to take Poſt for *Muſcow*, with a Train of between thirty and forty

forty Horſe, upon Advice of a revolt of ſeveral Malecontents within his Dominions, and that if he did not ſpeedily return, by his Preſence to put a ſtop to the Current of the Commotion, he might unhappily find all the Paſſages ſtop'd.

We are now come to the End of this unexampled Journey, *viz.* the Travels of the *Czar*, and his Ambaſſadors, in a Circle of near 2000 Miles, not including his *Czariſh* Majeſty's Trip to *England*: It is now time to look back to *Muſcovy*: His *Czariſh* Majeſty had received ſeveral Expreſſes from his Generals at *Aſpoh*, of their ſucceſsful Encounters with the *Tartars*, and juſt before he left the *Hague*, where his Ambaſſadors had their Audience of leave, there arriv'd another Courier with an Account, that General *Gordon* had very happily ſuppreſs'd a kind of an Inſurrection of 10000 of the *Strelitzes*, and had kill'd 3500 of them upon the Spot, and taken almoſt all the reſt of them Priſoners; that he had Decimated the Priſoners, and hang'd every Tenth Man upon the Field of Battle, had retain'd in Priſon the reſt, with ſeveral of their Ringleaders, and ſome of the Nobility who had Fomented their inſolence, and in a Word, had effectually ſuppreſs'd the Rebellion.

In the Neck of this came another from *Aſoph*, with the News, that a Detachment of 8000 Men from the Gariſon of that City had defeated 6000 *Tartars*, who had been Poſted as a Guard to the *Tartar's* Horſes, who were put into the Marſhes on the Frontiers of *Circaſſia*, and had taken no leſs than 30000 Horſes of which mention is made, as above.

But all theſe good Tidings had their Allay, and the laſt News his *Czariſh* Majeſty receiv'd, was ſuch as intimated the Danger to be very

great, and that they fear'd a general Inſurrection, entreating him to haſten back, not only that by his Preſence he might encourage his faithful Subjects, but that he might arrive before the Conſpirators ſhould be able to get a Force together, and ſeize upon the Paſſes, and Entrances into his Country, and either make it impracticable for him to return, or perhaps make him run the Danger of falling into the Hands of his Enemies in the attempt.

It will eaſily be granted that his *Czariſh* Majeſty had Reaſon to uſe the utmoſt Expedition in his Return, and indeed upon that Expedition depended his ſucceſs; for the celerity or ſwiftneſs of his Return was ſuch, that the Conſpirators ſaw him in the Caſtle or Pallace of *Muſcow*, ſurrounded with his Army, and ready to fall upon them before they thought it had been poſſible that he could ſo much as have any Account of their proceedings.

This was ſuch a ſurprize to them as broke all their Meaſures; for the *Czar* fell to work with them, the very Moment he arrived, and particularly with thoſe who General *Gordon* had in Cuſtody; for firſt his Majeſty order'd that the principal Contrivers and Encouragers of the ſaid Rebellion ſhould be brought before him, and after he had himſelf re-examin'd them, they having before been condemn'd in a full Hearing before all the Lords; they were all Sentenc'd to Death, among whom were Prince *Colorin*, General *Romanodoſkowski*, with ſeveral Ladies of Quality, and Friars and Prieſts of the firſt Rank, ſome of them were beheaded, ſome broke upon the Wheel, others buried alive, and the aforeſaid *Strelitzes* or Soldiers, whe had actually march'd and fought againſt the *Czar's* Arms, and who had ever ſince the *Czar's*

firſt

firſt coming to the Crown upon all occaſions been in the Plots and Intreagues of the Princeſs *Sophia*, and the Party that adhered to her, and had in ſeveral Inſtances ſhew'd their will and readineſs to revolt upwards of 2000 of them were executed, ſome their Heads taken of in the publick Market-place, others hung up upon Gallowſes erected on purpoſe at the Gates of all the three Walls round the City, with the Crimes writ upon the Gallows: This Execution being perform'd in the depth of Winter, their Bodies were immediately bury'd; thoſe that were beheaded, were order'd to lie in the ſame poſture, as their Heads were cut off, in Ranks upon the ground, with their Heads lying by them; and thoſe which were hang'd round the Walls of the City were left hanging, the whole Winter in the ſame poſture to the view of the People, till the warm Weather began to come on in the Spring, and then they were taken down and buried in a Pit together, to prevent the infection of the Air.

THERE was likewiſe other Gibbets plac'd on all the publick Roads leading to *Muſcow*, at about two Miles diſtance, where others of theſe Rebels were hang'd, and a large Monument of Stone erected upon the ſeveral Roads, with the Deſcription of their Crimes deeply engraven, and order'd to be repair'd and kept up for ever, and the very Houſes wherein they had liv'd were order'd to be raz'd to the ground, and the Name of *Strelitzes* to be no more made uſe of in the Army of *Ruſſia* for ever, but being chang'd, from that time they were call'd *Soldatee* or *Soldiers*; ſuch of the *Strelitzes* that were judg'd moſt Innocent, or not ſo deeply involv'd in the guilt with the reſt, having their Lives given them, were ſome ſent

to

to *Siberia*, others baniſh'd to *Aſtracan*, *Aſoph*, and all the out Parts of the Kingdom, with their Wives and Families and others of their near Relations to ſuffer with them, as it is the way of moſt of the Eaſtern Countries.

THUS his Majeſty upon his return from his Travels by the example of ſo vigorous a Proceeding having ſurpreſs'd the Enemies to his Government, it was the more eaſie for him to go on with theſe things, which he had reſolv'd upon for the reforming his Country; he began firſt, with eſtabliſhing his Guards, which were thoſe Regiments that were fix'd in the Place of the aforeſaid *Strelitzes*; then put his whole Army upon a new Foot, form'd a new Diſcipline, which he had collected from what he had obſerv'd Abroad, and he order'd all his Army to be regularly Cloath'd, with ſome diſtinction in the Colour and Trimming of the Cloaths like the cuſtom of other Nations of *Europe*; this had not till now been done in *Muſcovy*, but every one wore his Claths according to his own Fancy; he order'd alſo an Account to be brought to him of ſuch Perſons of the Nobility and Gentry of conſiderable Eſtates, who were not in any Service or Employment; out of which he commanded a great part to go and ſerve as Voluntiers in the Army, and others he order'd to attend, and appointed them Duty in ſeveral Stations, ſome in Equipping his Navy, and others order'd to go and reſide at the frontier Garriſons, that if they did no good, they might be out of the way of doing any Miſchef.

WHEN he had thus diſpos'd things in *Moſcow*, with Relation to his Army, he went down himſelf to *Veronize* to view thoſe Ships and Gallies that were built there by the *Dutch* in his Abſence, and to haſten the Equipment of his Fleet that was preparing for the *Black Sea*, he made thoſe *Engliſh* that he had

had brought over with him chief Maſter-builders, and diſcharg'd all the *Dutch* Builders, except what were to finiſh the Ships which they had begun, and thoſe were left under the Command of the *Engliſh*, Ordering that there ſhould be none but *Engliſh* faſhion'd Ships to be built for the future; one of which being a Ship of 50 Guns, his Majeſty himſelf immediately, as ſoon as he came there ſet upon the Stocks, by a Draught which he had drawn with his own Hands; and ſo contriv'd her by an Invention of his own, that tho' the Keel ſhould be knock'd off, the Ship ſhould be Tight as he propos'd; which Ship when he had advanc'd a little way, he left to be carried on by two young *Ruſſian* Gentlemen, that had been Abroad with him, and learned to build Ships along with his Majeſty; only he left Orders for them to ask ſometimes Advice of the *Engliſh* Builders, when there was any occaſion for it; he left alſo Orders at *Veronize* with Vice Admiral *Cruſs*, and Real Admiral *Raes*, together with the Sea Captains, Officers and Seamen that he had taken into his Service in *Holland*, before he went over to *England*, and who were now arriv'd in *Veronize* to get thoſe Ships and Gallies that were built there, rigg'd and ready fitted, to Sail down to *Aſoph*, whither he intended to go with them in the Spring of the Year, together with his Favorite *le Fort*, who tho' he knew nothing of the Sea, was declar'd Admiral.

When his Majeſty had thus ſettled the Affairs of his Navy, as he had before done of his Army, he return'd back again to *Muſcow*, where beſides what he had done at his firſt coming over, he made a Choice of Lords to be of his Council, and begun to regulate Affairs in Government, both in the Church, and in the State.

AND now we are to Enter in the Courſe of his Majeſty's Hiſtory on a new Scene of Action, and of a differing kind from what he had ever known before: Hitherto all his Enterpriſes had been attended with an uninterrupted Courſe of Succeſs; his Wars with the *Turks* and *Tartars*, happening at a time when the *Turkiſh* Power ſeem'd to be in a *Criſis*, went all to his Content, and Victory attended his Arms upon all occaſions.

BUT now his Majeſty had another kind of Enemy to deal with, I mean the King of *Sweden*; whoſe Fame, tho' yet it had made no Noiſe in the World, yet he was attended with a well diſciplin'd Army, a Nation fierce and daring, whoſe Reputation in Arms, was equal, if not Superior to the moſt glorious Nations in the World.

WHEN his Majeſty, as I have obſerved, went from *Vienna* in haſte to *Muſcow*, he was not however ſo much alarm'd with the News of his Rebellious Subjects, but that he found room in his Thoughts as well as leiſure in his ſpeed, for a ſhort Interview with the King of *Poland*, thro' whoſe Dominions he was neceſſarily oblig'd to paſs.

A LITTLE time may contrive what a great many Years may be employ'd to Execute; here in a few Hours they concerted that dreadful War between them, and the King of *Sweden*, which proved at firſt ſo fatal to them both, and which in its whole Courſe was fatal to all the Northern Part of *Europe*, deſtructive to the whole Countries and in which firſt and laſt above 500000 People have loſt their Lives; nay, I have heard it affirm'd that *Sweden* alone has by this very War been drein'd of 300000 Men to the irreparable Deſolation of that Kingdom, and we ſhall find abundant of Reaſon to believe that *Poland* and

Muſco-

Muſcovy, and the *Provinces* adjoyning, put them all to gether have loſt a much greater Number.

IT was not however till the Year 1700, that the War between the *Czar* of *Muſcovy*, and the King of *Sweden* was openly declar'd after there had been a ſeeming renewing of the Peace between them the Year before.

THIS War they ſay was concerted between the King of *Poland*, and his *Czariſh* Majeſty at this Interview, and the Meaſures agreed on; alſo how the ſame ſhould be proſecuted, and ſome Meaſures too for the engaging the King of *Denmark* in the League; which propoſal afterwards prov'd Succeſsful, *that is to ſay*, Succeſsful to bring the King of *Denmark* in, but Unſucceſsful to all the three in the beginning of it, as will appear in the proſecution of the Story.

IT was now in the Year 1699, when the *Czar* had ſpent about eight Months at Home, and News was brought him to *Muſcow*, that his Plenipotenaries had concluded a Truce with the *Turks* at *Carlowitz*, where at the ſame time, the Peace between the *Turks* and the other Allies, (*viz.*) the Emperor, the King of *Poland* and the State of *Venice* had been concluded.

IT was ſuggeſted that the *Czar* deſir'd that tho' the other Allies made a Treaty for 25 Years with the *Turks*, that yet his *Czariſh* Majeſty's part ſhould be no more than a kind of Truce for two Years; and that he did this, that he might have time in thoſe two Years to compleat the Fortifications of *Aſoph*, *Kaiſikermeen*, and other Places; and to build a power-with ful Fleet of Men of War at *Veroneze*, with which at the end of the two Years, he doubted not to be able to diſpute the Lordſhip of the *Black Sea* with the Grand *Seignior*, and to bring him to

grant

grant a Paſſage for his Subjects through the *Boſſphorus* into the *Levant* Seas.

BUT this was a bluſter which his *Czariſh* Majeſty had no Hand in, and 'tis apparent it was the *Turks*, who declin'd a Truce with *Muſcovy* for any longer than two Years, purpoſing as it was apparent afterward that when they had got the *Hungarian*, *Venetian* and *Poliſh* War off of their Hands, they would fall upon the *Czar* with all their Forces for the Recovery of *Aſoph*, *&c.* But the *Czar*, who was ſenſible how heavy ſuch a War would be upon him, at leaſt till he had brought his Army into all the new Meaſures he had deſign'd, apply'd immediately to the *King* of *Great-Britain*, who was Mediator of that Treaty to give Inſtructions to his Plenipotentiaries at the Treaty, to inſiſt that the Peace with *Muſcovy*, might have the ſame Duration of 25 Years, as the Peace with the Emperor had, which his *Britanick* Majeſty did, and obtained it for him accordingly, which we ſhall ſee in a little time acknowledged under his *Czariſh* Majeſty's own Hand.

ACCORDINLY the Treaty was, I *ſay*, concluded at *Carlowitz*, and immediately the *Czar* began the War againſt the King of *Sweden*; for the ſame Day that the Peace with the *Turks* was proclaim'd at *Muſcovy*, the ſame Day the War was proclaim'd againſt *Sweden*.

I HAVE nothing to do to enter here into a Diſquiſition of the Juſtice of this War, or of the particular Cauſes moving the *Czar* to engage in it: That his *Czariſh* Majeſty was Agreſſor, that we do not diſpute, one of the Cauſes aſſign'd was the Affront offer'd his Ambaſſadors at *Riga*, which conſidering that his Majeſty himſelf was in Per-

ſon

ſon in the Train, was ſpeaking the Language of Princes a very great Indignity to his *Czariſh* Majeſty, and ſufficient to demand Satisfaction upon.

IN Conſequence however of having declar'd War, it behov'd his Majeſty to make ſuitable Preparations, for that he knew that he had a vigilant and gallant King to deal with, tho' but a young Man, and that he was the Head of a brave People, had a good Army of old, and diſciplind Soldiers on Foot, led by ſome of the ableſt Generals in *Europe*.

HOWEVER, as the King of *Sweden* was young, and far off, and that the Alliance was ſtrong, even three-fold, his *Czariſh* Majeſty had room to expect he might have made a conſiderable Progreſs before any Number could be brought againſt him, that would be to any purpoſe.

THIS was began with the beginning of the Year 1700, and his *Czariſh* Majeſty drew together ſuch a Body of Men, that had they been well manag'd, would have been ſufficient to havewith ſtood a much greater Force than thoſe they were to deal with; but the deſperate Bravery of the *Swedes*, and the exact Diſcipline of their Troops ſtruck ſuch a Terror in the *Muſcovites*, that in a Word, there was no Oppoſing them, nor any bringing the Troops to keep their Array, when puſh'd with the violence of an Army of Men, that knew how to die, and how to Conquer, but had not yet been taught to fly.

THE *Czar*'s Troops were wonderfully improv'd, and infinitely better than they us'd to be, but were not yet come to a perfection ſuitable to the Work they had now before them; or to be a Match for the *Swedes*; but as they had been put into a Method of improving, yet farther we ſhall find

find them in time be taught by the *Swedes* the way of fighting, till they came to be a Match for any Body, and at laſt learn'd to beat their Maſters.

THUS the *Romans* by often beating the barbarous Nations, ſuch as the *Gauls*, the *Goths*, the *Vandals*, and the *Huns*, taught them the *Roman* diſcipline, and manner of Fighting; till thoſe Nations return'd Inſtructed how to Fight, and beat their Teachers, not out of their Empire only, but even out of the World.

IN order to Introduce the Hiſtory of this terrible War in ſuch a manner, as the Reader may be fully inform'd of every Action, and of the nature and reaſon of things, as he goes along with the Facts; it will be neceſſary to look a little into the State of Affairs in thoſe Northern Parts of the World in General, at that time, and how it came to paſs that thoſe three Powers, the *Danes*, the *Poles*, and the *Muſcovites* broke at once with *Sweden*; and how their Intereſt and Forces came ſo to be disjointed and ſeparated, that the *Swedes* had opportunity to attack them ſingly, and deprive them of the Capacity of Succouring or Aſſiſting one another, and this I ſhall do as concifely as I can.

AT firſt his *Czariſh* Majeſty did not appear in this Quarrel; but the King of *Poland*, and the King of *Denmark* both at once, whether declaring War, or not declaring War, is not the Queſtion, having an Alliance for that Purpoſe, fell both of them upon the King of *Sweden*: The King of *Poland* march'd in Perſon at the Head of a powerful and experienc'd Army of *Saxons*, out of *Poland* directly for *Courland*; from whence he continu'd his March, and the 28th of *July*, 1700 paſs'd the

Dwina

Dwina, enter'd into *Livonia*, the Dominions of the King of *Sweden*, and having beaten Count *Welling* the *Swediſh* General, and the few Forces he had with him, advanc'd towards *Riga*, and inveſted the Town, took the *Dunamunder Schans*, began to Bombard the Town, but was prevail'd with to ſpare it, in reſpect to the Effects of the foreign Merchants, as was given out, who were his Allies, and ſo Cantoning his Forces held the Town, as it were Blocked up, reſolving to attack it in Form the beginning of the next Year.

AT the ſame time the King of *Denmark* having attack'd the Duke of *Holſteins* Fort at *Huſum*, and Bombarded *Toningen*, made no difficulty to ſpeak openly of a Rupture with *Sweden*, and to acknowledge that he was engag'd in Alliance with the King of *Poland*: The *Czar* all this while lay ſtill, and made a ſeeming offer of continuing Peace with the *Swede*; but civily demanded the Town and Port of *Narva* for the Convenience of having a Trade for his Subjects into the *Baltick*, which at that time was the great thing that the *Muſcovites* deſir'd.

WHEN the King of *Denmark* had openly declar'd himſelf, and the King of *Poland* had actually attack'd *Riga*, then the *Czar* as had been concerted between them at the enterview I mention'd, reſolv'd to declare himſelf alſo, and accordingly as I have obſerv'd before, the War againſt *Sweden*, was Proclaim'd at *Muſcovy* the ſame day that the Peace with the *Turks* was alſo Proclaimed.

BEFORE I go on here, I muſt pay a Debt which is the reward of Vertue, and which ſo much Merit demands from every faithful Hiſtiorian, I mean a Debt to the Memory of that truly great and wiſe Man General *Le Fort*; a Man to whom

the *Czar* owes much of the true Notions of Vertue, and Honour, which he took in at his firſt Entrance upon his Government, who always gave him juſt and ſolid Ideas of things, and who prompted him to all the great Actions of his Life, and who died a little before theſe new Meaſures were taken.

THIS great Man was really treated by the *Czar* according to his Merit, for he valu'd him above any of the greateſt Men in his whole Empire, and depended entirely upon his Council in the moſt difficult Caſes that came before him; he was the principal Agent in all the Meaſures the *Czar* took in his Travels, was his firſt Ambaſſador *as has been ſaid* in the great Embaſſy, was his Plenipotentiary upon all Occaſions of Treaty, and in a Word, he was ſo at the time of his Death, all which ſhewed that the *Czar* knew how to put a juſt value upon the Merit of thoſe who he employ'd, and that he was a true Judge of Merit in general: *I ſay*, he was at the time of his Death chief General of his Armies, Admiral of all his Fleets, and his chief Miniſter: He had ſerved the *Muſcovites* along time, by which he had advanc'd himſelf to that degree of Honour, wherein he gliter'd at his Death; the *Czar* had a particular Love and Eſteem for him, and was pleas'd to give the World a demonſtration of it by the Funeral which he beſtow'd upon him; for *Muſcovy* had never ſeen ſo much Pomp before upon any occaſion; all the military Ceremonies of the interment were the ſame as in theſe more civiliz'd Parts of *Europe*; the Drums and Colours were cover'd with black, the Officers of three Regiments that preceeded the Hearſe, had black Scarfs, and the Pikes garniſh'd at the top with Knots of black Ribband; the Enſigns of Honour belonging to the deceas'd, were laid upon black Cuſhions embroider'd

broider'd with Gold; five Miniſters preceeded the Corps, three of which were of the reform'd Religion, and two of the *Ausburg* Confeſſion. and one *Stomnies* preach'd the funeral Sermon, taking for his Text the Words of the 8th Chapter *Eccleſiaſtes*, ver. 8 The *Czar* himſelf led the Regiments in deep Mourning.

THE place of this Gentleman was fill'd up, I cannot ſay it was ſupply'd by Major General *Carlowitz*, and afterwards that of General of the Army was made up, with the Duke *de Croy*, an Officer of great Experience, and who had ſerved the Emperor many Campaigns againſt the *Turks*, but he could never come to be ſo well eſteem'd or belov'd by the *Muſcovites* themſelves, and conſequently not be ſo well followed.

THE War being thus reſolv'd on, the *Czar* caus'd his Cavalry to draw together about *Novogorod*, and particularly the Horſe who had done ſuch great Service at *Aſpoh* were order'd by eaſy Marches, for it is a prodigious long way, to advance to *Muſcow*, and thence to the Frontiers; his Infantry at the ſame time were drawn together from all Parts, and were computed to make very near 100000 Men, the Horſe were reported to be 25000; but theſe were not all the Troops prepared for that Expedition, for his Majeſty had a conſiderable Body of Men, which were come to *Novogorod*, but were not at the Battle at *Narva*, being thoſe who the *Czar* went in Perſon to bring forward, which was the happy Reaſon that he was not in the Battle himſelf; which if he had, he would have run a very great Riſque of being taken Priſoner by the *Swedes*.

ABOUT the cloſe of the Month of *Auguſt*, his *Czariſh* Majeſty reſolv'd upon the War with *Sweden*,

and in *September*, his Troops inveſted *Narva*, his Declaration of War having been in the mean time publiſhed to all the World to the Purpoſe following.

THAT altho' the *Swede* had aſſur'd the *Czar* that he would maintain Peace with him, and bind it by a ſtrict Amity, and Correſpondence; and for that Reaſon had ſent a ſolemn Embaſſy to renew his Treaties, nevertheleſs his *Czariſh* Majeſty complain'd and averred, that the King of *Sweden* had underhand made uſe of ſeveral Intrigues to croſs his Deſigns, and among others had propos'd to the King of *Poland* a League to act in Conjunction with him againſt the *Czar*; and thoſe Intreagues were the Cauſe in part of the difficulties which happened at *Conſtantinople* in the Concluſion of the Peace between the *Czar*, and the Port, which his *Czariſh* Majeſty cannot forbare to make known to all the World, and particularly to all Chriſtian Princes, in hopes they will acknowledge that he has been oblig'd to make uſe of thoſe lawful Means, which he has in his Power for the Preſervation of his Dominions; and that if he has declar'd War againſt *Swedeland*, 'tis only to prevent her doing him any injury by ſuch unjuſt Proceedings: The ſecond Motive is, for that the *Czar* and his Predeceſſors have always held a ſtrict Alliance with the Kings of *Denmark*, by Virtue of which, they were oblig'd to the mutual Aſſiſtance of each other, and reciprocally to revenge the Wrongs done to either; that the King of *Sweden* had Landed in Perſon in *Zeeland* with a ſtrong Army, in the abſence of the King of *Denmark*, and put his capital City, and his whole Kingdom in danger; that he had not only conſtrain'd the ſaid Prince to make a diſadvantageous Treaty with the Duke of *Holſtein*, but had alſo excluded the King of *Poland*, his *Czariſh* Majeſty's Friend

Friend and Confederate, that he might have an Opportunity to oppreſs and utterly Ruin him, that for theſe Reaſons his *Czariſh* Majeſty found himſelf oblig'd to revenge the Wrongs done his Friends and Allies, and to break all the dangerous Practice againſt them.

AFTER this he ſent to his Reſident in *Sweden* to make known his Reſolutions to that Court, and having his Levies ready, which are reported to conſiſt of five and twenty Thouſand Horſe, and ſeventy Thouſand Foot, together with a Train of four Hundred and ſixty Cannon and Mortars; he took Poſt for *Pleſko*, to take a review of his Forces; the command of which he had conferr'd upon *Aframaon Goſowitz* as General, who has under him *Theodore Alexovitz Golovin*, as General of the Horſe, with General *Adan Wyde*, and ſeveral *German* Officers. Of theſe 'twas ſaid that the *Czar* intended to ſend between twenty and thirty Thouſand Men to Re-inforce the King of *Poland*'s Army, and that he intended to divide the reſt into two Bodies, one of which was to beſiege *Narva*, and the other to Poſt themſelves at ſome diſtance from thence, to hinder Relief from coming to the Town.

THE City of *Nerva* or *Narva*, ſtands upon the hither Side of the *Gulph* of *Finland*, toward the Province of *Ingria*, upon a River of the ſame Name, which formerly ſeparated *Livonia* from *Muſcovy*: On the other Side of the River ſtands the Fortreſs of *Ivanagrod*, formerly built upon a ſteep Rock that appears in the River, like a Peninſula; and which was thought impregnable till the Year 1617, that it was taken by *Guſtavus Adolphus*, King of *Sweden*; at the Foot of this Rock lies a Town call'd *Ruſſian*, or *Muſcovite Narva*, the City in diſpute: This

City is Inhabited by natural *Muſcovites*, but Subjects to the Crown of *Sweden*; the River of *Narva*, which riſes out of the Lake of *Peipus*, and diſcharges itſelf there into the *Gulph* of *Finland*, is very rapid, and there is a Precipiece in it about half a League above the City, where the Waters fall with an extraordinary violence and noiſe, and by accident produces a wonderful effect, for the Sun ſhining all the Morning upon the falling Water, cauſes the appearance of a Rainbow, as lovely as that which is ſeen in the Clouds; by reaſon of this Fall, the Merchants are forc'd to unload in that Place all their Goods which are ſent from *Pleskow* and *Dorpat* to *Narva*, to be there Shipped off upon the *Gulph* of *Finland*: The City of *Narva* was built in 1213, by *Waldemare* II, King of *Denmark*, *John Baſilides* Grand Duke of *Muſcovy* took it in the Year 1558, from the *Tuetonick* Knights; but the Citizens of *Revel*, who then in vain implor'd the Succour of the grand Maſter *Bernard Keltier*, and Chriſtian King of *Denmark*, threw themſelves at length into the Arms of *Eric* the IV King of *Sweden*, who receiv'd them into his Protection upon certain Conditions, and coming to their Aſſiſtance, ſecured them from the deſtiny of other Cities, his Succeſſor *John* III, retook *Narva* from the *Muſcovites* in 1581, ſince which time the *Swedes* have continu'd in poſſeſſion of it, notwithſtanding all the Attempts of the *Muſcovites* to regain it.

THUS the *Swedes* had at once three powerful Enemies upon their hands; Namely, the *Danes*, the *Poles*, and the *Muſcovites*; the King of *Poland* would have ſent 8000 Men, 4000 Foot, and 4000 Horſe to aſſiſt the King of *Denmark*, but the Elector of *Brandenburgh* would not let them paſs thro' his Country, being reſolv'd to obſerve an exact

exact Neutrallity between all Parties, and they were afterwards beaten by the *Lunenburhger*, in paſſing thro' the lower *Saxony*. The *Czar* on his Side prepar'd to ſend 30000 Men into *Lithuania*, to the aſſiſtance of the King of *Poland*, which however his *Czariſh* Majeſty could not yet do, things for a time, running very much againſt him, as we ſhall hear.

IT is not our buſineſs in writing of the *Czar* of *Muſcovy*, to examine what happen'd in every part of this War, any farther than to bring things to the preſent Caſe in hand, and to introduce ſuch incidents as relate to the *Czar* himſelf.

THE King of *Sweden* young in his Throne, and not yet above 18 Year old in Perſon, yet being encouraged by the united Squadrons of *Great Britain* and *Holland*, which appear'd, as (a kind of) Umpire in the *Baltick*; I ſay encourag'd by them, he embark'd an Army, and from *Schonen* joyning the Fleet of the Allies, with his own, comes directly to the ſound, lands his Army in the Iſle of *Zeeland*, and lies there ready to act, either one way or other, as the Treaty of *Travendal*, which was then carrying on by Mediators ſhould direct.

THE King of *Denmark* ſurpriz'd, and overpower'd, haſtens up the Peace, and ſo the King of *Sweden*, reimbark'd his Troops, and went back to *Sweden*, very little blood being ſhed in that Part of the War; this was the well known Treaty of *Travendal*, ſign'd, and concluded the 18th of *Auguſt*.

WHILE theſe things were tranſacting, the King of *Poland* made his Fruitleſs attempt upon *Riga*, of which mention has been made already, I call it but an attempt, for altho' he inveſted the Place the 8th

of *Auguſt*, he ſpent two Months before it, without any conſiderable Progreſs and then left his Army; turning the Seige into a kind of Blockade, and ſo as if he had waited on purpoſe for the King of *Sweden* to come and beat him, did nothing till the next Spring.

In *September*, as I have obſerv'd, the Troops of *Muſcovy* began to move; it was a long ſtep they had to take; but the *Czar* being at the Head of them, they made long Marches, and the 2d of *November* they joyn'd the Troops before *Narva*. Hither the Duke *de Croy* came, with about fifty Gentlemen, all Officers of Experience, and who came from *Hungary*, where they had ſerv'd the Emperor againſt the *Turks*; as ſoon as he arriv'd, the *Czar* who had invited him to his Service, gave him the command of the Siege; himſelf commanding the Army; the other Officers which he brought with him, were appointed Commands in different Places, according to their particular Experience in Service.

These Gentlemen joyn'd to the foreign Officers, which his *Czariſh* Majeſty had entertain'd before, brought the *Muſcovite* Troops into the beſt Method of proſecuting a Siege; caus'd them to Entrench their Camp, as well with Circumvalations, as Contravallations, and had the Army been allow'd a Campaign or two for the Practice of thoſe new Methods, the *Swedes* would not have had ſo cheap a Bargain of them; but as the Men might be ſaid to be put out of their old way of Fighting, and not well acquainted, or fully Exerciſed in the New, between both, they were more eaſily put into Confuſion.

This

THIS will appear by the General Duke *de Croy's* Letter to the King of *Poland*, in which he applauds the readineſs of the *Muſcovite* Soldiers in their new Exerciſes, how regularly they began to Fire, how well they plyed their Artillery, and how ſoon they hoped to make good Soldiers of them, which conforms with what I have obſerv'd, as above: The Letter is as follows.

"LIEUTENANT General *Hallard* arriv'd "the 2d of this Month before *Narva*, where "he found the Governor of *Novogrod* with 8000 "Men entrench'd in a ſquare Camp, 2500 Paces "from the Town; the firſt of theſe two, has "view'd the Place and the Fortifications, and "has obſerv'd ſeveral Parts very imperfect, and "among the reſt, two Curtins which are in a ve-"ry bad Condition, which makes us preſume, that "this important Place cannot hold out long.

"THE 4th of this Month, the *Czar* caus'd a "Bridge of Boats to be laid over the River *Nar-"va*, and paſt it himſelf at the Head of 22 Ba-"talions, with a half Pike in his hand, and "march'd ſomewhat farther; his Men much re-"ſemble ours, and are very well Arm'd and Diſ-"ciplin'd, they have alſo 32 braſs Field Pieces; 'tis "a Pleaſure to ſee the *Muſcovites* fire them, and "with what Diligence and Addreſs they ply "their Artillery; his *Czariſh* Majeſty cauſes his "Men to keep good Orders, and an exact Diſ-"cipline, which is the Reaſon that the Products "of the Earth are carefully preſerv'd; they are "hard at Work in raiſing the Circumvallations; "the beſieg'd play very thick with their great "Guns; nevertheleſs we have had but one Sol-"dier kill'd, and two wounded; the heavy Ar-

"tillery

" tillery will arrive in the Camp within few Days.
" General *Weyde* is upon his March with a great
" Body of an Army, and Marſhal General *Gollowin*
" who has above 50000 Men with him in *Meſſap-*
" *pa* is to follow him with the ſame Number; and
" the Prince *Loym* with 11000, ſo that in a little
" time the Army will be about 200000 Men, with
" a noble Train of Attillery; as for the Lines of
" Communication his *Czariſh* Majeſty has drawn
" them himſelf, after he had view'd the
" Place.

" A *Swediſh* Officer who Deſerted out of *Nar-*
" *va*, ſurrendred himſelf, ſome few Days ago to
" his *Czariſh* Majeſty, who examin'd him, and we
" underſtood that Colonel *Horn* Commands in
" *Narva*, that the Garriſon conſiſts of 900 Foot,
" and 150 Horſe, 400 Peaſants, and 400 Burghers,
" that Lieutenant Colonel *Stahl* commanded
" the Artillery, and that it was in a good Condi-
" tion, there are ſome Braſs Pieces; but all the
" reſt are Iron.

IT is too well known to conceal it, that the King of *Sweden* rais'd this Siege with the fatal overthrow of the *Muſocvite* Army; but the Circumſtances of that Action are ſo full of the Flattery of the Writers, in their Encomiums upon the King of *Sweden*, that they totally forget the Decency which the Merit of the Prince, he had at that time the better of demanded; and who commanded it from them in ſome ſmall time after; in the mean time we ſhall not fail to do the *Swedes* juſtice on all occaſions, as well as on this of the Battle of *Narva*.

HISTORY brings the King of *Sweden* from *Carelſcoon* to *Peruau* in *Livona*, with an Army of about

about 20000 *Swedes*, all choice Troops, about the beginning of *Auguſt*.

On the 16th of *Novem.* the *Swediſh* Army began their March towards *Narva*: The *Czar*, who foreſaw that the King of *Sweden*, a daring and enterpriſing young Prince, would play the deſperate Game, ſent ſome ſtrong Detachments to ſecure the Paſſes at *Sillajoggi*, and on the ſide of *Dorpat*; not doubting but that thoſe Troops, which were at leaſt 20000 Men, would give the *Swedes* ſome little ſtop at Places ſo eaſy to be defended, and at leaſt Cauſe them to take a greater Compaſs about; in the mean time his Majeſty went himſelf for *Novogorod*, to bring up a Body of 40000 Men, who were by this time gotten thither, and to haſten their March.

But the King of *Sweden*, by a feint of paſſing by thoſe Detachments, having gotten between them and their main Army, and thereby cut off their Retreat, cauſed a ſtrong Body to Face about and attack them, which Surprize aſſiſted to put them into diſorder, ſo that they made but a faint Reſiſtance, and were ſoon Defeated. This opened the way to the attack of the grand Army, which the *Czar* being abſent, and thoſe Troops defeated, were extreamly diſcourag'd.

However the Duke *de Croy*, an old Soldier, and not at a loſs what to do, had the Men he Commanded been equal to the Work, poſted his Troops to all the Advantage the Ground would admit, and did all that the beſt General in the World could have done to animate them to a vigorous Defence; he poſted the Infantry in the Entrenchment, where they fir'd as in a cover'd Way, and a ſecond Line to ſupport them, and the Cavalry behind them to ſupport the Foot, with

with proper Intervals for them to Advance; but the *Muſcovite* Foot wanted the Preſence of their Maſter to animate them, which had been better than the 40000 Men he was gone to fetch; and tho' they ſtood their Ground bravely for ſeveral Hours, and made a terrible fire upon the *Swedes*, from behind their Entrenchment, by which a great many of the braveſt of their Men were kill'd; yet the *Swedes* animated by the Preſence of their King, and General *Rebinder* at the Head of eight Batallions, pouring freſh upon that part of the *Muſcovite* Line, which had been twice before attack'd, there was no reſiſting the deſparate Fury of the *Swediſh* Foot, led on by a general of as much Fame as any in their Army, who fought at the Head of them, like a Lyon, and was kill'd in the very Action, altho' after the Troops were entred: In ſhort, the Line was forc'd in that Place, and the Foot enter'd, and the Pioneers immediately going to Work with the Shovel and Pick-ax, wide ſpaces were made in the Breaſt-work for the Horſe to follow, who preſently Charging in upon the Rear of the *Muſcovite* Foot, which were in the other part of the Line, put all into Confuſion, the ſecond Line advancing were then Charg'd by the Victorious *Swedes*, and driven back upon the Cavalry, who by that Means were put into Diſſorder, and had no room to come up to the Charge; and thus the Day was loſt: The reſt of the Infantry, being ſtraightn'd within the Compaſs of their Camp, had no room to make an orderly Retreat, but were oblig'd to thro' down their Arms, and take Quarter. The Horſe not able to reſiſt the Torrent after their Infantry were thus Defeated, made off and Retreated in as good order as they could to *Novogrod*, in the way whether they were

were met, and their Spirits a little encouraged by the Troops which were Advancing to their Aſſiſtance, and by the *Czar* their Soveraign.

It was obſerv'd, that the *Czar* ſhew'd not the leaſt Diſorder, either in his Countenance, or in his Conduct, when he had the News of the Defeat of his Army, or any Reſentment at his flying Troops; but immediately apylyed himſelf to gather the ſcatter'd Troops together, encourag'd the Men, ſpoke kindly to the Officers, and prepar'd to put a ſtop to the purſuit of the Conquerers, if their Succeſs ſhould prompt them to follow his Men, and to put all things in a poſture of Defence, in Caſe the King of *Sweden* ſhould undertake any new Enterpriſe, or attempt to puſh farther into the Country.

But the *Swedes* had not their Victory ſo cheap neither, as to be in Condition for any farther attempt at that time of the Year. They had by their own Confeſſion loſt above 3000 Men, beſides the wounded, among which were a great many brave Officers, as General *Rublinghen*, *Rebinder*, and ſeveral others; add to this, the King of *Sweden* had the Winter Seaſon before him, which was already far Advanc'd; and as the Snows and Froſts were not yet come in, the ways were unpaſſable, and no Magazines erected for providing the Army with Forage or Proviſions; ſo that he contented himſelf with having relieved the Town, and beaten the Army, as he might very well.

The *Czar* advancing to *Peſkow* within twelve Leagues of *Narva*, made a ſtand there, to give his Men opportunity to return to their Colours, which many did, who it was, thought had been loſt, and here his *Czariſh* Majeſty form'd a new Army,

in

in order to diſpute the Ground with the *Swedes*, if they had offer'd to Advance.

But the King of *Sweden*, as I obſerv'd, having reliev'd *Narva*, and gain'd a compleat Victory, put his Troops into Quarters of Refreſhment for the Seaſon, and contented himſelf with boaſting of what great things he would do in the *Czar*'s Dominions the next Year, and to give thoſe *Gaſconades* an Appearance of reality; he ſent expreſs Orders to *Sweden* to ſend over into *Livonia*, with the firſt of the Spring, that is, as ſoon as the Seas were open again, his whole remaining Army, in the room of which they were order'd to make new Levies for the common Guard of their Country; theſe Forces were ſaid to conſiſt of about 12000 Foot, and 6000 Horſe, and Dragoons; but Heaven and his own Fate found the King of *Sweden* other Work than to enter *Muſcovy*, or to Proſecute his Revenge at that time.

It cannot be denyed, that had, the King of *Sweden*, when thoſe Forces did arrive puſh'd the Advantages, which his late Victory had put into his Hand, and perſued his Revenge ſingly againſt *Muſcovy*, the *Czar*'s Troops, tho' Numerous, being nothing like to what we find them to be ſince, or as we may ſay to what the King of *Sweden* has taught them to be ſince, he might with a victorious Army of 40000 Men, have bid fair for the Ruin of the *Czar*, and of all his great Deſigns; but juſt Heaven, who knew what a furious inexorable Enemy, the *Swede* at that time was, tyed up his Hands, till the *Czar* learnt how to Conquer his Conqueror, and to beat him into a better Knowledge of himſelf; making him pay for a like deſperate Attempt upon the *Muſcovites*, with the loſs of the Honour of all his former Victories,

and

and of two ſuch Armies as he never ſaw himſelf Maſter of afterwards, of all which in his order.

SUCCESS had now made the King of *Sweden* famous, I will not ſay it had made him inſolent, becauſe a Hiſtorian ſhould write in Temper, even of thoſe Actions, which were not perform'd in Temper, and treat all Sides with an impartial Reſpect.

THE King of *Sweden* had alſo another Call, from the purſuit of his Victory at *Narva*, and this was the attempt of the *Saxons* upon the other ſide of *Livonia*, where the King of *Poland* had, *as I ſaid*, inveſted *Riga*, taken the *Dunamunder Schans*, and had Quartered his Troops in ſuch a manner, as to hold the ſaid City of *Riga* in a manner block'd up.

THE *Saxons* were eſteem'd by the *Swedes* a more Soldierly Enemy, than the *Muſcovites*, and at that time, perhaps they were ſo, but thus it is when Heaven appoints to raiſe a young King to a pitch of Glory beyond himſelf; the *Saxons* at *Riga* really behav'd worſe a great deal than the *Muſcovites* at *Narva*, and were ſo ſhamefully beaten in every Action, and even without Action, that there could nothing be ſaid for them.

THE *Muſcovite* Army poſted in their Entrenchments, and encumber'd with the Lines, and Circumvallations of a Camp, did their Duty till being forc'd in one part, they were driven upon one another and Defeated, meerly for want of Field room, for their Cavalry to act in; for it cannot be doubted, that had the *Muſcovite* Calvalry, which were at leaſt 25000 Horſe and Dragoons, had room to act, and to have fallen in, and ſurrounded the *Swedes*, as by their Number they were able to have done, the *Swedes* would have paid much

much dearer for their Victory, than they did, if perhaps they had not been ſoundly beaten.

But the *Saxons* play'd the *Poltrons* in ſuch an egregious manner, as made even their own King aſham'd of them; and as encourag'd the *Swedes* to puſh into the Heart of *Poland*, at that time wretchedly divided into factions and Parties, proſecuting mortal Feuds againſt one another, with ſuch an implacable Violence, that they choſe to Sacrifice their Country to the common Enemy, and bring a foreign War into their own Bowels, rather than not purſue their private Feuds and Family Quarrels, to the Deſtruction of one another, and at laſt to the Ruin of their King and their Country; which they brought into an entire Subjection to the tyrannical Conqueror, the King of *Sweden*.

I am oblig'd to give an Account here of the Progreſs of the War in *Poland*, becauſe the King of *Sweden*, having by the impetuoſity of his Victory brought the King of *Poland* to the utmoſt Diſtreſs, Reaſon and Policy of State, as well as the natural Generoſity of Friendſhip, brought his *Czariſh* Majeſty into the War, and made *Poland* the Field, or Seat of the affair, as well between the *Czar*, of *Muſcovy*, and the King of *Sweden*, as between the King of *Poland*, and the King of *Sweden*; and the King of *Sweden*, not thinking fit to ſeek his Enemy, the *Czar* at his capital City of *Muſcow*, as he had given out he would; his *Czariſh* Majeſty was oblig'd to ſeek him the King of *Sweden* out, even where he was to be found; as we ſhall ſee he did effectually in the Proſecution of this War. This Defeat of the *Saxons* was about the beginning of *July* 1701, by which means the King of *Sweden* got poſſeſſion of the Dutchy

of

of *Courland*, where in the Caſtle of *Mittau*, he ſeized the whole Magazine of Arms and Ammunition belonging to, and laid up for the King of *Poland's* Army, valued at 300000 Crowns, and afterwards retook the Fort of *Dunamunder*, where he found the Train of Artillery of the ſame Army, conſiſting of 90 Pieces of Braſs Cannon for Battery, and 20 braſs Mortars, which was a moſt agreeable Booty to a Prince juſt entring upon a War againſt two ſuch Potent Nations, as the *Muſcovites* and the *Poles*.

BUT leaving the King of *Sweden*, guided by his ill Fate to purſue and embarraſs himſelf in the Affairs of *Poland*, where firſt he will cloth himſelf with Glory and load himſelf with Lawrels, which muſt be all taken from him in one Day, by the more glorious Conqueror, the *Czar*; I ſay, leaving him there to purſue his Fate, and omitting the only offer that he will ever have of ruining his firſt Enemy the *Czar* of *Muſcovy*, and puſhing his Victory in its proper time, which if he had done, the *Czar* had perhaps never been able to ſtand before him: I muſt now go back to his *Czariſh* Majeſty's conduct after this capital Blow given to his Forces before *Narva*.

I HAVE mention'd how his *Czariſh* Majeſty as if unconcern'd at the ſurprizing News, apply'd himſelf to comfort and encourage his Officers and Soldiers, his Cavalry had not really ſuffer'd much, his Infantry indeed was ruin'd and gone; but every Body knows foot Soldiers are pretty cheap in *Muſcovy*, where the *Czar* being abſolute Monarch, commands as many of his People to the Wars as he pleaſes.

HOWEVR, this was not his Majeſty's caſe now, for inſtead of commanding out ſuch and ſuch Numbers of Men, for the Summer Service, and letting them go Home again when the Campaign was over, perhaps, calling another Hundred Thouſand out the next Year, who never ſaw the Field or an Enemy before, His *Czariſh* Majeſty now took a new Courſe; he caus'd the Drums to beat for Voluntiers over all his vaſt Empire, telling the People their Advantages, how they ſhould be new Cloathed, that they ſhould be duly Paid as Gentlemen Soldiers; and that in their due Order, and as they merited by their Behaviour, they ſhould be, Prefer'd and Rewarded; ſo that every Foot Soldier was capable of being not a Captain only, but a General, if he behaved well in his Poſt.

THIS which was a new Thing in *Muſcovy*, went a great way, and caus'd a vaſt Number of Men to come in and Liſt, who were immediately encouraged with half a Ruble advance Money, and Weekly Pay, beſides ſufficient to ſubſiſt them, and make them live Eaſy and Pleaſant; beſides this, his Majeſty caus'd all the Boyars or Nobility to ſend a certain Number of Men, in proportion to the Number of Servants which they kept, and to the Revenue of their Eſtates.

BY this means, his *Czariſh* Majeſty had his Army preſently full, ſo that before the next Campaign, he had near 120000 New liſted Men ready raiſed, whom he caus'd to be form'd into Regiments after the manner of *Europe*; ſome of four Battalions, ſome of two Battalions, and ſome of but one Battalion, as he found Cauſe.

As for the *Strelitzes*, the *Czar* had now ſuppreſt the very Name, and as much as poſſible deſir'd to raſe out the very Memory of them from the Earth; in their Room his Majeſty form'd ſeveral new Reigments of ſelect choice Men; moſt of them old Soldiers, and a great many of them *Germans*, or Foreigners of other Nations, tho' none of them were admitted but ſuch as had ſerv'd Abroad in ſome of the Wars, either on the *Danube* or the *Rhine*.

As the *Czar* had leiſure thus to raiſe this Army; ſo the King of *Sweden* being fully engag'd in purſuing the King of *Poland*, as a particular Enemy, gave his *Czariſh* Majeſty full Leiſure to make all his new Army, what they never could be ſaid to be before; that is, not only Men, but Soldiers, for they had leiſure to be fully acquainted with their Arms, and to underſtand how to do their Exerciſe after the *German* method by beat of Drum: He poſted them alſo in great Bodies upon the Frontiers of *Livonia*, where, tho' the *Swedes* behav'd with their wanted Bravery and oftentimes were too hard for them; yet in their turn they beat the *Swedes* too, and oftentimes cut whole Parties of them in Pieces; by which they began to be enured to the War, acquainted themſelves with the New manner of Fighting; learn'd to look a bold Enemy in the Face, and to find that the *Swedes* were not invulnerable or invincible: In a Word, they learn't by frequent fighting the *Swedes*, not to be ſo much afraid of them, as uſual, and thus if they did not always beat the *Swedes*; yet they continually harraſs'd them, and waſted their Numbers, which the *Swedes* not being eaſily Recruited with Numbers as the *Muſcovites* were, and the King of *Sweden* puſhing his Reſolution of de-

poſing King *Auguſtus* with ſuch vigour, that he as it were neglected his own Subjects of *Livonia*: The *Czar* improving in the mean time every opportunity, and keeping his Troops full, ſending conſtant Supplies of freſh Men to make up the Loſs of thoſe that were kill'd, or diſabled; his Reigments in *Livonia* became in two or three Year equal with the *Swedes* in goodneſs of the Men, and infinitely Superiour to them in Number, till the *Swedes* came to be beaten oftentimes, Hand to Hand with equal Numbers, were puſh'd from Poſt to Poſt, and at laſt puſh'd out of the whole Province, as we ſhall ſee its in Courſe.

At the ſame time the Troubles of *Lithuania* open'd a Door for the two Enemies, the *Muſcovites* and the *Swedes* to enter on that Side. The two great Families of *Saphiea* and *Oginſki*, had brought their Breach, which was at firſt but a private Quarrel, to be an open War: *Oginſki* was ſupported by the King of *Poland*, and *Saphiea* call'd in the King of *Sweden* to his Succour, and he (the King of *Sweden*) eſpous'd the *Saphiea's*, and made them Superiour to *Oginſki* and his Party; ſo *Oginſki* finding the King of *Poland* not able to ſupport him, having his handful of the *Swedes*, he call'd in the *Muſcovites* to his aid; his *Czariſh* Majeſty taking him into his Protection, did not aſſiſt him with a handful of Men, as it were on purpoſe to prolong the War, but at two or three times ſent him at leaſt 30000 Men; ſo that tho' the *Swedes* had many times the better of him too, yet he always maintain'd himſelf in the Field, till all went to wreck, and King *Auguſtus* himſelf was forc'd to abandon them all, and quit the Crown, of which in its Place.

THESE Tranſactions kept the World in ſuſpence three or four Years, during which time, the *Muſcovite* Troops gain'd every Day new Experience, and new Reputation in the World, being by the *Czar's* particular Direction all fill'd, not only with *German* Officers, but having among them abundance of *German*, *Poliſh*, and other foreign Soldiers, moſt of them Men of Service, and who had been fully acquainted with the War before they were entertain'd; and as his *Czariſh* Majeſty gave very good Encouragement to all Strangers, who Liſted in his Troops, he had a great many Deſerters, even from the *Swediſh* Troops themſelves.

BUT this was not all, for as he ſoon after this, Conquer'd whole Provinces from the King of *Sweden*, and had occaſion to act with his Armies in ſeveral parts of the Empire, as in *Pomerein* in the Dutchy of *Mecklemburgh* in *Holſtein*, and in *Denmark*; ſo he fail'd not of entertaining all the able Experienc'd Soldiers he could get in all thoſe Countries; by which means many of his Regiments, and particularly his Guards were made up of the choiceſt Men all that part of the World could affrod: As for the Provinces conquer'd from *Sweden*, the *Czar* has rais'd all the Men that it was poſſible to get in *Livonia*, and in *Finland*, of whom he has in his Army at this time ſeveral whole Regiments; particularly of *Finlanders*, who being ſome of the beſt, the boldeſt, and moſt hardy Men of all the King of *Sweden's* Dominions, are now the *Czar's* proper Subjects, and the laſt levey the *Czar's* Generals made there, was of 3500 Men, which I am told are form'd into one Regiment, and call'd the Royal *Finlanders*; but 'tis added that the *Czar* chuſes to employ that Regiment in the

remoter part of his Country againſt the *Turks*, leaſt when they come to act againſt their old Maſter the King of *Sweden*, they ſhould play Booty, and go over to his Side.

I NEED give no farther Account, either why, or how the *Muſcovite* Troops came to be what we ſee they are; Namely, equal to other Nations in the Field; but I may take the liberty to add, that if the *Muſcovite* Troops come to be as good as the *Swedes*, or other Neighbouring Nations; it muſt be allowed, that their Numbers are ſo far Superior to them, that there will be no room for the Future for that Contempt, with which thoſe Nations have formerly look'd on the *Ruſſian* Empire.

IT is a ſpeculation worthy the beſt and greateſt Polititians of *Europe*, how much the maſculine Genius of one Prince, may alter the Circumſtances not of his own Subjects only, but of all the Nations in the World that are any way influenc'd by them; for as they are of Weight in the Ballance of the Nations, ſo the Intereſt of the Neighbouring Nations, are more or leſs concern'd to Support, or Suppreſs them.

THE Empire of the *Czar* of *Muſcovy*, extended as it is from the North to the South, for the length of 2500 Miles, that is to ſay, from the North Sea, bounding the Coaſt of the *Ruſſian Laponia*, in the Latitude of 72 or from the extream Part of *Nova Zembla*, in the Latitude of 81, to the Coaſts of *Carakathay*, and the Deſarts of the *Calumuck Tarters*, even to the *Caſpian* Sea is by the Scituation ſo plac'd, as to be effectually cover'd from all manner of Enemies, either on the Eaſt, the North, or the South, and has nothing to regard, but the Weſtſtern ſide of its Dominion.

I CAN liken the ſituation of the *Czar* of *Muſcovy's* Dominion to nothing ſo well, as to a well choſen ſtrong Encampment, plac'd in a piece of Ground every way inacceſſible, but in the Front, and the Front ſo Fortify'd, as not to be eaſily attack'd, *for Example*, the North Ocean is on its Right, the River *Wolga*, and the Deſarts of *Tartary* on its Left: The unpaſſable Waſt from the River *Oby* to *China* in its whole Reer, and nothing lying open, but its Front.

THIS Front is guarded on its *Right Wing*, by the *Bothnick Gulph*, and the *Gulph* of *Finland*, with inacceſſible Shores, and a multitude of well fortify'd Ports from *Abbo* round the latter *Gulph*, by *Wyburg*, *Cronſloot*, *Petersbourgh*, *Narva*, and *Revel*, to *Riga*, and the Shores of *Courland*, with the Dutchy of *Courland* in Poſſeſſion, as an Out-work, or advanc'd Baſtion in a Town, to keep off an Enemy from the Body of the Place.

ALL the Left Wing of this prodigious extended Line, is cover'd with the *Caſpian* Sea, the Deſarts of *Circaſſia*, the *Palus-Meotis*, and the rapid *Boriſthenes*, till we come to the *Ruſſian Ukrania*, which lyes again like a ſtrong Out-work, guarded with a Hundred Thouſand faithful *Coſſacks*, the terror of the *Tartars*, and a ſufficient Defence againſt their Incurſions, which they formerly made that way into the Heart of *Muſcovy*.

ALL the middle of this immenſe Front is bordered by *Poland*, a Nation ſo conſtantly embroil'd with itſelf, as to be formidable to no Body; and yet a Nation, that as it is not conſiderable enough to be a terror to *Muſcovy*, or offer the *Czar* any uneaſineſs on their own Account, ſo they are yet too conſiderable to be forc'd, to ſuffer an Invaſion of *Muſcovy*, thro' their Country; ſo that

upon the whole, there ſeems to be no Nation capable of penetrating into *Muſcovy*, but the *Swedes*; and how the Caſe ſtands on that Side, will be ſeen in the whole Courſe of this Hiſtory.

On the other Hand, the powerful *Czar* of *Muſcovy*, if once his Army is prepar'd as I have obſerv'd, to come Hand to Hand with any of the Nations that lye thus on its Front, is able to Sally out by all theſe ways, and will be much Superior to them, on Account of the numberleſs Multitude of his People, of whom he is able to raiſe as many Thouſands, as ſome of his Neighbours can Hundreds, and that with leſs Expence than any of them.

But I return to the Field of Action, as the *Muſcovites* were call'd into *Lithuania* to aſſiſt the Sieur *Oginſki* againſt the *Saphieas*, and the *Swedes*; ſo by this time the King of *Poland* having loſt the Battle of *Cracow*, and the King of *Sweden* declaring his Reſolution to Dethrone him, and as it appear'd, being Powerful enough to bring it to paſs, calls aloud to his *Czariſh* Majeſty to come to his Aſſiſtance alſo.

The *Czar* too well underſtood his Buſineſs, not to make his juſt Advantage of the obſtinate warmth of his Enemy the King of *Sweden*, in purſuit of the King of *Poland*; and therefore while that Monarch, who was now with his whole Army, as is ſaid, gotten the height of *Cracow*, and where his Victory over the King of *Poland*, had fill'd his Head with new Projects, for reduction of the whole Country, and depoſing the King; his *Czariſh* Majeſty, firſt ſending 20000 to the aid of *Oginſki* in *Lithunia*, thereby to keep the *Swediſh* Troops on that Side employ'd; and after having caus'd another Army to advance towards Great *Poland*,

land, to be ready to Succour King *Auguſtus*, taking the advantage of the Abſence of the King of *Sweden*, and his following his imaginary good Fortune, he caus'd an Army of 60000 Foot, all Regular, and Regimented Troops, form'd after the new Model, as above, and Commanded by experienc'd Generals, as well as other Officers, moſt Foreigners, and 20000 Horſe to enter *Livonia*, and another Army of 30000 foot, and 10000 Horſe at the ſame time to enter *Ingria*, or *Ingermandland*, a Province beyond *Livonia* Eaſtward, and joyning to *Finland*; and the only way by which any Troops from that Side of *Sweden*, call'd *Finland*, could come by Land to the Succour of the *Livonians*.

HERE his *Czariſh* Majeſty made himſelf full Amends, and had his compleat Revenge of the *Swedes*, for the Loſs ſuſtain'd at the Battle of *Narva*; for Prince *Czeremet*, who Commanded this Army, enter'd *Livonia* unreſiſted, and having Ravag'd all the eaſter Part, call'd *Eſthonia*, as far as *Dorpat*, met with very little, if any oppoſition; at length the *Swediſh* General *Slippingback*, having gotten together an Army of about Ten Thouſand Men, all *Swedes* and old Soldiers, and preſuming upon the good Fortune of *Narva*, and the uſual contempt they had for the *Muſcovite* Troops, oppos'd himſelf to the Prince; but he paid for his Ignorance and Raſhneſs, by the entire Defeat of his whole Army, who were over-thrown, and almoſt all cut in pieces by the *Muſcovites*.

IT is true, the *Swedes* fought like Lyons, or like Furies rather, and that in the Fight they puſh'd whole Brigades of the *Muſcovite* Infantry, put them into Confuſion, and in that Confuſion, they

ſlaughter'd

ſlaughter'd many of them; and this is doing the *Swediſh* valour Juſtice, for indeed they were overcome by meer Numbers.

But juſt the ſame they would have ſaid of the King of *Sweden* at the Battle of *Narva*, if he had been repulſed, that having an Army of 100000 Men to deal with, his Men were overlay'd by the innumerable Multitudes of their Enemies; that they Fought like Lyons, but what could Men do, who had an Army of ſix to one to deal with? That Valour gave way at laſt to Number, *and the like*, and had the *Muſcovite* Army had Field room in that Action at *Narva*, and not been Coup'd up in a Camp, where the foremoſt Troops being put into diſorder, the reſt were driven one upon another, and made the Inſtruments of their own Ruins; I ſay, had not this been the Caſe, 'tis very like the *Swedes* had talk'd of the Action at *Narva*, as they do now of that near *Dorpat*.

But 'tis an anſwerable return, which is made to this; what an Unſoldierly raſhneſs was it for General *Slippenback*, to ſuffer himſelf to be attack'd, or pretend to Fight with 10000 Men, againſt 60000? for ſo many the *Swedes* ſay the *Muſcovites* were; nay, and if it be true, that as they ſay, General *Slippenback* was not above 6000 the preſumption was the greater for Raſhneſs, and Temerity in Actions of War, are not to be call'd Valour and Bravery, but Madneſs and Folly.

But to come to the Fact, it was from the Beginning of *May*, 1702, that the *Ruſſians* were known to be drawing together; above 70000 Men, lay about *Pleſkow* and the Frontiers of the *Czar's* Dominions, and were encreaſing every Day: Now had the King of *Sweden*, thought his Province of *Livonia* worth ſecuring, or had he

he not flattered himſelf, that the *Ruſſians* would not dare to appear in the Field, but that they would be frighted with the Names of the *Swedes*; that the Scripture Propheſie was to be fulfilled in *Livonia*, in favour of his Men, *That One ſhould Chaſe a Thouſand, and Two put ten Thouſand to flight*: I ſay, had he not filled his Head with the moſt deſpicable Opinion of the *Ruſſians*, he would never have left ſuch a Province as *Livonia* to be devoured, and ſuch gallant Troops as the *Swedes* really were, to be cut in pieces in ſmall Bodies for want of Succour; while he was purſuing his Revenge, and taking upon him the giving a King too, and pulling down a King from the Throne of his Neighbour, the Kingdom of *Poland*.

BUT thus it was, the *Ruſſian* Army entred *Livonia* Commanded by the Prince of *Czeremetoff*, about the beginning of *July*. They were not ignorant that the *Swediſh* General *Slippenback*, lay encamp'd between *Dorpat*, and *Revel*, tho' the Prince had not any Account of his Numbers, and if he had, it could not be depended upon, becauſe he might be ſuppos'd to receive Additions every Day from *Revel*, and *Riga*, which were in his Reer, and from the *Swediſh* General *Myerfield* in *Lithuania*: For this Reaſon the Prince did not undertake any Siege, reſolving to make War in the open Field, and firſt ſeek out and fight his Enemy, that he might not have the ſame Game to Play, as had been fatally play'd at *Narva*.

TO this purpoſe the Prince march'd on, and the 16th of *July*, having an Account that the *Swedes* march'd towards him, he advanc'd directly forward; The *Swediſh* General hearing what diſparity of Numbers he had to engage with, halted at a Village call'd *Stagnitz* on the River

Em-

Emback, as if he had resolv'd to expect the *Russians* there; and so far was he from being sensible of the odds there was between them, that he did not so much as offer to Entrench; but with an Arrogance inimitable, kept his situation, till the *Russians* came in view, being in full March to attack him, and in admirable Order of Battle: A little surpris'd with the Sight, he then, when it was too late, put his Men in March, and repass'd the River upon two Bridges, breaking the Bridges behind him; but this only serv'd to bring him to a Necessity of Fighting afterwards, in a Situation not more Advantagious thanthe first; for the *Russians* passing also the River at some distance, and being drawn up again as before, mov'd directly towards them. Then it was the *Swedish* General boldly Fac'd about, and resolv'd to Fight. The consequence of which was, his being over-thrown, and entirely defeated, and all his Infantry cut in pieces, as I have said; tho' not till after an obstinate and bloody Fight, which lasted almost a whole Day.

Now that I may not be Partial in the Relation of this Action, I shall give their own Account, which they sent to all the Courts of *Europe*, and which excepting the smallness of their own Number kill'd, we are content to refer to, which is as follows,

Upon *July 6*, we say the *Swedes* receiv'd Intelligence, that the *Muscovites* were enter'd into *Livonia* with a numerous Army, and were advanc'd as far as *Crosfort*; the next Day our avant Couriers being repuls'd to our Guards, General *Slippenback* detach'd 300 Horse to observe the Enemy: This Party upon the 18th in the Morning, met with a Body of a 1000 *Muscovites*, which they attack'd, and

and drove to the Body of their Army, but the *Swediſh* Cavalry being ſurpris'd at the ſight of ſuch a numerous Hoſt, durſt not make any long ſtay, but retreated in great Confuſion; ſo that being purſu'd by the Enemy, we loſt Major *Roſe*, and ſome other Officers, who were ſlain; the Major General being inform'd of what had happen'd, rod himſelf to view the Enemy's Army, and preſently perceiving they had a deſign to ſurround his ſmall Body; he judg'd it convenient by the Advice of a Council of War, to croſs the River of *Emback*, to prevent their Deſign; which was done in view of the Enemy, and in very good order over two Bridges that were broken, ſo ſoon as our Men were over; but the River being then very low, and the Enemy making uſe of ſeveral Pontons to waft over their Artillery, 'twas impoſſible to prevent their paſſing with the reſt of their Army; ſo that General *Slippenback* finding that a great Number of the Enemy were already got on our Side, could not avoid coming to a Battle; all the Advantage at the beginning was on our Side; we beat the Enemy every where, we purſu'd them above a *German* Mile; we took from them ſix pieces of Cannon, part of their Baggage, and ſome Colours, and at length we preſs'd ſo hard upon 'em, that they threw themſelves into the River; but the reſt of their Army aſham'd to ſee their Fellows fly, and mad to be beaten by ſuch a ſmall Number of Men, Fac'd about of a ſudden, and put the *Finland* Cavalry into ſuch diſorder, that they fell foul upon the Infantry, and betook themſelves to flight, without any poſſibility of being rally'd, ſo that our Artillery, as well as that which we had taken, fell into

into the Enemies Power, and our Infantry after a ſtout reſiſtance was almoſt cut in pieces: This Action began about ſix in the Morning, and laſted for ten Hours together; our General would fain have rally'd them again, and poſted us at *Helmer*, but finding it impoſſible to ſtop the Horſe that were fled and diſpers'd, and being no longer able to ſtand his Ground with the remains of his Infantry, he was conſtrain'd to retreat to *Pernau*.

UPON this Occaſion, the *Swedes* loſt 7 Captains, 30 Lieutenants, 11 Enſigns, and 25 Subalterns; 37 Drums, and 1916 common Soldiers; we know indeed that the Loſs of the *Muſcovites* was much greater, but it was hardly preceptible, by reaſon of their Multitude: After this Expedition the *Muſcovites* were about to have march'd back, but they were hardly arriv'd at the *Lake* of *Peipus*, when they receiv'd Orders to return, and put all *Livonia* to Fire and Sword, which they have done in a moſt cruel manner, till within ſome Leagues of *Riga*.

THIS is their own Account in which the impartial Reader will certainly conclude, that had the *Muſcovites* Number been ſo great, and theirs ſo ſmall, as they would repreſent them, it could ſcarce be poſſible that they could defend themſelves ten Hours, and be Defeated at laſt too; having no Shelter, no Retreat, no Entrenchments or Defences at all, but their Arms.

BUT the Sum of the Caſe was, and that appears by the Accounts publiſh'd at that time, that the *Swedes* were no leſs than ten Thouſand Men, others ſay fourteen Thouſand, and the publick Papers printed at that Time, as alſo by Letters from *Dantzick*, and from *Riga* at the ſame time, both

both to *London*, and to *Holland*, give this Account in few Words, *viz.* "That Prince *Czeremet* the "*Muſcovite* General at the Head of a numerous "Army, had entirely defeated General *Slippen-*"*back*, with an Army of 10000 *Swedes*, not far "from *Dorpat*, and that the *Swediſh* General with "a few Horſe, who deſperately broke thro' the "*Ruſſian* Army had eſcaped; all the reſt of the "Army having been cut in pieces after a gallant "Reſiſtance, and a Fight, which laſted from eight "a-Clock in the Morning, to ſeven a-Clock at "Night.

THE laſt of theſe Accounts was certainly well grounded, with this Exception only, that the *Swedes* were not all cut in pieces, about 1200 being taken Priſoners, with all their Baggage, Cannon, Tents and Ammunition.

BUT the particular Reaſon why I publiſh here their own Account of this Fight, is to repeat what I have ſo often mention'd, (*viz.*) of the difference between the *Ruſſian* Soldiers now, and what they were formerly; for now the *Swedes* found, that after they had broke them ſeveral times by the Fury of their Charge, and put them into Confuſion, yet that they rallyed again by the skill and dexterity of their Officers, and by the aptneſs, and experience of their Soldiers, and that they return'd again to the Charge, after they had been puſh'd into Diſorder; which was what the *Swedes* did not expect to find among them, and this was the ruin of the *Swediſh* Army.

AFTER this Action, the State of the War took a new Turn; the *Swedes* were defeated upon all Occaſions, and that not only in *Livonia*, but in *Lithuani* alſo; *Oginſki* and his Friends, ſupported by the Troops the *Czar* had ſent him, routed the *Swedes* twice

twice in a Weeks time, killing 400, and taking 800 Priſoners in one Action, and killing 1000, and taking 700 in the ſecond Action.

After Prince *Czeremet* had thus clear'd the Field of his Enemy, he laid waſt the whole Province, *as above*; the Reaſon was, that he found them univerſally averſe to Submit, even when ſubdued; and that upon an order from the King of *Sweden* to the Country, to take Arms, they did ſo, and fell upon his Men wherever they found them.

This was what his *Czariſh* Majeſty does not delight in, nor does he ſuffer his Troops to Practice it in the other Countries of his Conqueſts; but he had been treated with ſuch perſonal Indignity by the King of *Sweden* on all Occaſions, that he found himſelf oblig'd to ſhew his Reſentment; and on the other Hand he was repreſented by the *Swedes* themſelves, as an Enemy ſo contemptible, that no Rules of Honour, or Juſtice were to be obſerved with him; and it behov'd his *Czariſh* Majeſty on both theſe Accounts, to let the Subjects of *Sweden* know, that he was in a Condition to make himſelf be better us'd, and that they might have Reaſon to fear him, inſtead of inſulting him.

There was alſo another Reaſon for this Severity, *viz.* that the great Towns of *Livonia* under whoſe Protection, the *Swediſh* Forces ſheltered, might not be able to ſubſiſt them; and alſo that his Enemies might not fill their Magazines in *Courland*, and in *Lithuania* out of the fruitful Provinces of *Livonia*, and *Eaſtonia*.

After this Execution, the Prince ſat down before *Dorpat* with his whole Army, keeping at the ſame time great Detachments of Horſe to ſcour the Country to the Gates of *Pernau*, and even to *Riga*; to prevent the *Swedes* gathering any Number of

Troops

Troops into a Body together, to attempt to Relieve the Place.

WHILE theſe things went on thus proſperouſly in *Livonia*, the *Ruſſian* Army in *Ingria* were no leſs Succeſsful, the Fortreſs of *Skanſterny* after a vigorous Attack was ſurrender'd to the *Muſcovites*, and the *Muſcovite* General —— *Slippenbach* with a ſtrong Body of an Army being ſent to the Edge of *Finland*, landed not far from *Wyburgh* with 24000 Men, in 400 Tranſport Veſſels, and in a plain Field gave Battle to the *Swediſh* Forces under General *Crooniort*, and entirely defeated them, the *Swediſh* General, and a few of his Men making their Retreat, and eſcap'd to *Wyburg*.

THUS the whole Province of *Ingermania* or *Ingria* fell into his *Czariſh* Majeſty's hand, and his Troops made daily Excurſions upon the Enemy in *Finland* itſelf, (*viz.*) firſt Thus

THE particulars of this Action are thus diverſly related, firſt thus.

IN the mean time the *Muſcovites* get Ground in theſe Parts having lately obtain'd very conſiderable Advantages over a volant Camp of the *Swedes* commanded by General *Crooniort* in thoſe Quarters, the *Muſcovites*, with a Body of 25000 Men, being conducted through by, and impracticable ways, fell upon the *Swedes* when leaſt expected, and after a bloody Fight, which laſted from ſix in the Morning till two in the Afternoon, being much Superior in Number, put the *Swedes* to the Rout; however 'tis ſaid that the *Swediſh* General after a vigorous Reſiſtance, made good his Retreat to *Wyburg*: There is ſince publiſh'd a more exact Relation of this Encounter between the *Swedes* and *Muſcovites*, which gives the following Account,

(*viz.*) that General *Crooniort* having Advice, that the *Muſcovites* had fram'd a Deſign utterly to deſtroy his ſmall Army, and for that end had embark'd a great Number of Troops, in 8 Frigats, 400 ſmall Tranſport Veſſels, and two great Floating Machines, whereon Batteries were plac'd, deſigning to Cannonade the Enemy with their Fleet, while the reſt of their Army fell upon them by Land; the Major General thereupon ſent out Parties to obſerve the Motions of the *Muſcovites*; one whereof return'd towards Morning, and brought Advice that they had diſcover'd ſome of their Troops within an hours March of the *Swedes* Out-guards, who immediately prepar'd to receive them; the *Ruſſians* contrary to their Expectations finding the *Swedes* in a readineſs, drew back in order to be joyn'd with more Troops, not far behind; which they had no ſooner done, but they return'd and Charg'd the *Swedes* with great vigour; who, tho' but a handful as it were, defended themſelves very well, till General *Crooniort* came up to them with a Reinforcement of Horſe and Foot; but the Paſs of *Suſterback*, where the *Swedes* were poſted, being too narrow for the Horſe to do any Service, the Foot were oblig'd to give way to the Superiour Numbers of their Enemies, who preſs'd them cloſe at the Heels, and did not fail to make the beſt of their Advantage; but the *Swediſh* Horſe coming up again, put a ſtop to their Progreſs; the *Swediſh* General began then to diſcover from the great clouds of Duſt that aroſe in ſeveral Places, that the reſt of the *Muſcovite's* Army was coming up with their Cannon, and not doubting but they were infinitely ſtronger then himſelf: His Army not exceeding 4000 Men, the General thought it adviſeable to order the Foot to draw off with the Cannon

non and Carriages to *Wyburg*, on which the Enemy ſeem'd to have an Eye; and the rather becauſe the General diſcover'd part of their Troops marching along the Sea ſide, to get behind him; the Foot retir'd in excellent order, while the General taking the Advantage of the Ground with the Cavalry alone, kept the Enemy in play (with a Bravery not to be paralell'd) four Hours together, when the *Muſcovites* retir'd, but threaten'd to return in a ſhort time: By a Liſt of the Priſoners taken and carryed away by the *Muſcovites* upon this incurſion, there are three Colonels, two Majors, eighteen Captains, Twenty-five Lieutenants, three Cornets, ſeventeen Enſigns; a Thouſand Soldiers, and a great Number of other Perſons of both Sexes.

HERE his *Czariſh* Majeſty contriv'd the Scheme, and actually laid the Foundation of a new Fortreſs at the Entrance of the *Nye* or *Neva*, the Inlet, which opens the Communication between the Lake *Ladoga*, and the *Baltick*; which Fortreſs he called *Croonſlot* and farther up his Majeſty has begun to build a Town, which he has call'd after his own Name *Petersburgh*, or according to ſome St. *Petersburgh*.

THIS was at firſt but a ſmall Place, but ſince is become a Royal City, and at preſent contains, beſides publick Edifices, Churches, and a Magnificient Pallace, not yet quite finiſh'd above Thirty Thouſand Houſes.

HIS *Czariſh* Majeſty having now, as has been alledg'd, Diſpeopled the populous Provinces of *Livonia* and *Ingria*, made the poor People ſome amends by a Proclamation, or Placart, inviting all the Families, not of thoſe Countries, but of

all other Countries to come and Settle in his Dominions, and was to the purpoſe following, *(viz.)*

To Invite all Sorts of Artificers, Workmen, and People uſing Manufactures, and other Perſons profeſſing Trades and Sciences, to come and Settle in his Dominions; promiſing them, that ſo ſoon as they arriv'd upon the Frontiers, they ſhall be conducted where they pleaſe to Settle; that they ſhall have the free Exerciſe of their Religion, and the convenience of Churches; that they ſhall have the Liberty to employ themſelves in whatſoever they ſhall think moſt for their Advantage, without being Subject to any Duties, Offices or Impoſts: That as for thoſe who ſhall find themſelves capable to undertake any Trade, and ſhall not have where withal to follow it, his Majeſty promiſes to ſupply them with Money out of his Treaſury, without any Intereſt; and Laſtly, as are at any time unwilling to ſtay in his Dominions, ſhall have Licenſes to depart, and at their firſt Requeſt ſhall be conducted at the *Czar's* expences to the Frontiers, or to any Sea-Port.

His Majeſties Armies rang'd now freely over both theſe Provinces, only with this Exception, that the great Towns in *Livonia, &c.* were ſtill in the Hands of the *Swedes*; but having ſecur'd all behind him, by the taking of the Places abovemention'd, as alſo of *Notteburg* and of *Nyenſchans*. His Majeſty now reſolv'd to begin with the other in the next Place, and ſo finiſh the Reduction of *Livonia*.

In *December*, 1702, the City of *Narva* had like to have been ſurpriz'd; but tho' the *Ruſſians* miſs'd their aim as to the Place, yet they did a great deal of miſchief to the Suburbs, and defeated a ſtrong

ſtrong Party of *Swedes*, which defended them: The Story is told thus,

UPON the laſt Day of the laſt Year, according to our Account, the *Muſcovites* made an Incurſion in the Night time, by the Favour of the Ice, and after they had ſurpriz'd the advanc'd Guards, advanc'd under the very Cannon of the City, and committed great Diſorders in the Neighbouring Villages, which they laid in Aſhes, making a great Slaughter of the Inhabitants, as alſo of ſome Soldiers that were Quarter'd among them; they have alſo reduc'd into heaps of Rubbiſh ſeveral Houſes in the Suburbs; two Sawing Mills, ſeveral Country Habitations, notwithſtanding that the great Guns from the City and the Caſtle of *Ivanagrod*, continually fir'd upon them: That they might get more eaſily into Peoples Houſes, they run about the Streets knocking at the Doors, and crying out in the Language of the Country, *uſa, uſa, vendein tules*, fly, fly, the *Ruſſians* are a coming; then upon the People opening their Doors to know what was the matter, believing them to be their Friends, the *Muſcovites* ruſh'd into their Houſes and put all to the Sword, not ſparing either Age or Sex, that could not eſcape to the City, the Cavalry of the Garriſon ſally'd out upon them, but were beaten back to their very Counterſcarp; this bloody Execution continu'd ſix Hours.

THUS the *Swedes* went to wreck every where, and the victorious *Ruſſians* carried all before them; the *Czar* himſelf pleas'd with Succeſs, and reſolv'd to puſh his good Fortune, came down in Perſon to the Army, which he had order'd to beſiege the City of *Dorpat*; the Place made a good Defence,

but they found that the Caſe was altered, the *Muſcovite* Engineers proceeded as regularly in their Approaches as any other of the Nations of *Europe*, and attacked, and aſſualted as boldly, and as punctually as poſſible: The Outworks were carried by degrees, being well defended, and well attack'd; In a Word, after about 27 Days open Trenches, the Garriſon finding they could not hold out, and that no relief was to be expected, beat a Parly, and had very honourable Conditions; they ſurrender'd the 26th of *July*, and were conducted to *Riga*: His *Czariſh* Majeſty appear'd on Horſeback with his Sword in his hand, at the Head of his Guard du Corps when the Garriſon march'd out, and the Governour ſaluting his Majeſty, he was pleas'd to return it with great Civility, and at the Governours requeſt afterwards granted him leave to go to *Narva*, tho' the City was then Block'd up by his Forces under General *Schein*.

THE Affairs of *Poland* were now come to a ſtrange *Criſis*, and ſuch as particularly oblig'd his *Czariſh* Majeſty to concern himſelf more than ordinarily with them; for the King of *Sweden* had ſo far puſh'd his Conqueſt as to bring the *Poles* to an Election of a new King, and carried on his particular Reſentments againſt King *Auguſtus*, to that extremity of Rage, as nothing could abate it; no Treaties, no Propoſals, no Mediation of foreign Powers could interpoſe, ſo as to bring him to any Terms.

NOW was the time for a generous Prince to engage heartily for his Friend; I call *Auguſtus* ſuch, becauſe his *Czariſh* Majeſty openly profeſſes in his Letter to the States or Republick of *Poland*, that he had always entertain'd a perſonal Friendſhip,

ſhip for the King of *Sweden*, and now *I ſay* was the time to ſhow it.

As for the King of *Poland* himſelf, to give due honour to his Merit, he never gave out; he fought his Ground by Inches, he ſtruggl'd with an Invincible Spirit againſt all the Difficulties that ſurrounded him: He had a terrible Prince in the Bowels of his Country to deal with, a factious divided and unſteady People to govern, who were neither reaſonable in their Demands of him, or ſatisfy'd when they were granted; who were never with him till they were brib'd to it with Money, nor faithful to him when they had it; who when they oppos'd him, ruin'd their Country, and when they joyn'd, ruin'd him; who had Treachery enough to do him Miſchief, and not Courage enough to do him Good; out of Action, always Inſolent, in Action always Cowardly; who when they ſhould run, would always be for fighting, and when they ſhould fight would always run away: Never Man of Honour riſqu'd his Life, ſpent the Blood of a faithful Nation (his *Saxons)* and ſuch a maſs of Treaſure as he brought among them, for a ſuch a falſe perverſe unperforming Generation: Take the State of King *Auguſtus*'s Caſe, and the Character of his *Poliſh* Friends in the Words of a known Writer of that Day, *Thus.*

HOWEVER nothing diſcourag'd the King, and the King of *Sweden* ſetting up a new King, not only whetted his Courage, but animated thoſe few *Poles*, that ſtood by him, and encreas'd their Number, ſo that after the Election King *Auguſtus* grew ſtronger than he was before, nor would the King of *Sweden* have ever been able to have reduc'd him, had not the unlucky Defeat of a new rais'd Body of *Saxons* open'd a Door to the

Swedes to enter *Saxony*; This brought the King entirely down, and forc'd him to ſign the *Charte Blanc* to the King of *Sweden*, and yeild to whatever he demanded of him: Some particulars of which were ſo hard, and ſo grating to a Man of Spirit, as King *Auguſtus* is known to be, that the King of *Sweden* loſt more honour in Impoſing them upon him, than the King of *Poland* did in ſubmitting to them; the former putting them upon him, as matter of Triumph over his Misfortunes, and the other ſubmitting to them purely to prevent the intire Deſolation of his Country, and the ruin of his People; ſuch were the delivering up General *Patkul*, the writing a Letter to *Staniſlaus*, giving him the Title of King, and the reſtoring the Trophies of his Valour, the Standards and Colours taken at the great Battle of *Caliſch*, where he had defeated the whole united Army of the *Swedes* and *Poles*, and gain'd a compleat Victory over them, killing above 12000 on the ſpot, and taking all their Cannon and Baggage, with a great many Colours and Standards, all which the King of *Sweden* oblig'd him to reſtore.

But leaving the King of *Sweden* to make War as never Prince before him did, Namely to gain Victories abroad, and looſe his Country at Home; to Conquer for other People, and be Conquered for his own; invade *Saxony*, which he knew he muſt quit, and looſe *Livonia Eaſt-bonia*, *Ingria*, and part of *Finland*, which he never ſhall recover; if this be a perſuit of glory, be that fame peculiar to himſelf, for he ſeem'd to be the only Prince in the World that ever ſought his Glory, at the Expence of the Loſs of his Dominions, and to cut in Peices the worthleſs *Poles*, ſat ſtill and let his

own

own Subjects be cut in peices, and his Dominions ravag'd and made a deſolation; his Subjects flying, or being carried away, to People the Dominions of the Conquerer.

But thus it was with the King of *Sweden*, for at the ſame time that he was thus puſhing the King of *Poland*, and ſpending the Strength and Arms of *Sweden*, to ſupport a new Boy-King in *Poland*; he abandon'd his faithful Subjects in *Livonia*, and quietly let his *Czariſh* Majeſty go on with an unterrupted Courſe of Conqueſt, not ſending the leaſt Relief to his beſieged Cities, or to his faithful Garriſons, till they all fell into his Enemies Hands; for the *Czar* left him not a Foot of Land on the South Shores of the *Baltick*, and took from him Countries and Provinces, equal in Wealth and Commerce, to his whole Kingdom of *Swedland*.

It was now that mindful of the Diſtreſs that the King of *Poland* was in, and that the Republick was like to be brought to, his *Czariſh* Majeſty, at the ſame time that with an uninterrupted Courſe of Victory he rais'd his Glory in the Conqueſt of the *Swediſh* Dominions, concern'd himſelf in a more particular manner for the Intereſt of King *Auguſtus*; and beſides the numerous Armies, which upon ſeveral Occaſions, he ſent to his Relief, and tho' his Troops were ſeldom well Treated in *Poland*, which made them leſs Serviceable than they would otherwiſe have been, yet he continu' dto Succour them by all poſſible Methods.

To this End his Majeſty wrote that famous Letter to the Republick; the Meaſures of which had they thought fit to have perſued, they had never fallen

fallen a Prey as they did to the cruel Enemy, who Triumph'd over them.

THIS Letter becauſe the Contents of it were dictated immediately from his *Czariſh* Majeſty's own Mouth, and becauſe it ſhows how perfectly he was acquainted with the true Intereſt of *Poland*, and with the Methods how their Liberty and Glory was to be retriev'd, I ſhall give at large as it was rendred in *Engliſh* at the time it was ſent, *as follows.*

The Letter of the Czar *of* Muſcovy, *to the Republick of* Poland; *Printed in* Latin *and* French, *by Order of his Miniſters, and Communicated to moſt of the Potentates in Chriſtendom, is as followeth,*

'PETER ALEXEWITZ, by the Grace of GOD moſt Serene, and moſt Powerful great Lord, *Czar* and great Duke of the whole Great, Leſſer, and *White Ruſſia*, Soveraign of *Muſcovy*, *&c.*

'TO the moſt Illuſtrious, moſt Eminent and moſt Reverend Lords, *Michael Stephen Radziowski*, Archbiſhop of *Geuſne*, Cardinal and Primate of *Poland*; and to the moſt Illuſtrious generous and magnificient Lords, the Senators of the Kingdom, and other Orders of the moſt Serene Republick of *Poland*, and great Dutchy *Lithuania*, Salutation and Proſperity.

'MOST Illuſtrious, moſt Eminent, and moſt Reverend Lord Archbiſhop and Cardinal, and Reverend Primate of the Kingdom of *Poland*, and Great Dutchy of *Lithuania*, moſt Illuſtious generous and magnificient Lords, the Senators, and other Orders of moſt Serene Republick of

'*Poland*,

‘ *Poland* and great Dutchy of *Lithuania* our
‘ Friends, and moſt dear Neighbours, notwith-
‘ ſtanding we have been inform'd a long time
‘ ſince, and the like Reports were ſpread through
‘ moſt part of *Europe*, that ſome of your Republick
‘ led by the Motives of a certain inveterate Ha-
‘ tred, and full of wicked Intention, made uſe
‘ of all poſſible Means to drive from his Throne
‘ his ſacred poliſh Majeſty, our Brother, and
‘ moſt dear Neighbour, who is in moſt ſtrict Al-
‘ liance with us, that they may afterwards more
‘ Effectually carry on the ill Deſigns they have
‘ contriv'd, and more ſafely obtain their Aim;
‘ yet we had ſo good an Opinion of your Equity
‘ and Juſtice, that not only we were unwilling to
‘ give Credit to thoſe Reports which came from all
‘ Parts; but alſo forbore to conſider the ſame, with
‘ the ſerious Attention that they deſerved from
‘ our Thoughts, that if that Fury and abominable
‘ Paſſion had crept amongſt ſome of the Orders of
‘ your Republick, yet the number of ſuch who think
‘ on what they owe to God, and their Country,
‘ and to Honour and Virtue, would much exceed the
‘ Number of thoſe, who not duly weighing the
‘ fatal Conſequences of thoſe Deſigns, have ſuf-
‘ fered themſelves to be blinded by a depraved
‘ Paſſion and their private Intereſts; we thought
‘ alſo that thoſe great Agitations being Supported
‘ by no Chriſtian Powers, would be eaſily ap-
‘ peas'd amongſt your ſelves; but we have after-
‘ terwards obſerv'd, and are convinc'd by un-
‘ queſtionable Proofs, that that Evil was more and
‘ more increaſing and taking deeper Roots, we
‘ thought it was our Duty more than any
‘ body elſe to intervene, and expreſs publickly
‘ how much we were concern'd upon hearing of ſo

‘ per-

‘ pernicious a Deſign, which does no ways become
‘ a Chriſtian Nation: In fine after having matu-
‘ rely conſider'd that Point, we have reſolv'd to
‘ do by our Interpoſition what we believe every
‘ honeſt Man is bound to do, eſpecially conſider-
‘ ing the great Office we exerciſe upon Earth, and
‘ the general Obligation laid upon all Chriſtian
‘ Princes, by God and human Society, to expel
‘ Violence and reſtrain Injuſtice, and ſuch wicked
‘ Advices, as tend to the ſubverſions of Laws,
‘ and to other ties of human Society, and diſturb
‘ the publick Peace of Chriſtendom; ſo that Ju-
‘ ſtice may be every where adminiſtred, and In-
‘ nocence protected, that the common Cauſe of
‘ Princes, and the Rights of Kings may be chiefly
‘ preſerved entire; that inſtead of that honou-
‘ rable Liberty allowed by the divine and human
‘ Laws, which are deſervedly made the Joy of free
‘ Nations: People may not be carried away to
‘ the Exceſſes of ſlighting Princes, and tramp-
‘ pling under Foot crown'd Heads, whoſe Ma-
‘ jeſty is deriv'd immediately from God, that
‘ the ſame may not be expoſed to the Fury of
‘ ſuch as love Novelties. Laſtly, that the fun-
‘ damental Laws eſtabliſh'd by Nature its ſelf
‘ for the Preſervation of human Society be not
‘ deſtroyed, and that Men created in the Image
‘ of God, may not degenerate into Brutes, and
‘ live without any Law; beſides all theſe Rea-
‘ ſons we are particularly oblig'd to concern
‘ our ſelves in this Affair, by Virtue of the
‘ Peace concluded in the Year 1686, with the
‘ Kingdom of *Poland*; wherein 'tis ſaid in ex-
‘ preſs terms, that the brotherly Love, and in-
‘ vincible Peace be maintain'd between us and
‘ the moſt Serene King of *Poland*; that they

‘ mind

'mind the good Advantage of each other; that 'as Brothers they may aſſiſt each other, and 'that their Majeſties are as others, bound to 'ſhow each other all the Duties of Humanity, 'Friendſhip, and Brotherly Affection, and e-'very thing elſe that may tend to their re-'ſpective Advantage; and take all poſſible Care 'to avoid all things which may breed Enmity, 'or occaſion Violence, and more eſpecially ſuch 'as might create War, and occaſion the effuſion 'of human Blood, and the ravage of their re-'ſpective Countries, as it becomes Chriſtian 'Princes; and ſhall take care that no new Wars 'and Diviſions may break out upon any Ac-'count whatever; all theſe things having been in 'a ſolemn manner Sworn to upon the Book of the 'Goſpel, the Succeſſors in both Kingdoms are in-'diſputably bound thereto: Grounded upon theſe 'Foundations we have contracted a perſonal 'Friendſhip with the moſt ſerene King of *Poland*, 'now reigning, and Concluded with him an Alli-'ance more ſtrict and particular than the former; 'whereby above all other things we have pro-'mis'd each other, that as long as Providence 'would preſerve us our Kingdoms, which may 'God render happy, we ſhould always, and re-'giouſly maintain a ſincere Friendſhip, and per-'form to each other all the Duties of a good 'Neighbourhood; that we ſhould never infringe 'the ſame, but rather ſhould mutually defend 'one another againſt all our Enemies whatſo-'ever; moreover, we are oblig'd to concern our 'ſelves in this Affair, becauſe of the great Care 'we are ſtrictly to provide for the Peace and 'Soveraignty of our Territories ſituated on the 'Frontiers of *Poland*; for while we ſee a fire

'kindled

'kindled in our Neighbourhood, and threatning
'to put all in Flames, we ought to think our
'ſelves concerned in that eminent Danger, and
'fear that thoſe Flames may ſpread themſelves
'into our Dominions, and deprive them of the
'Conveniences a peaceful Neighbourhood does uſ-
'ual procure: In ſhort, we know what ſort of
'Monſter ſome of you Nouriſh in your Boſom
'againſt us, making no ſcruple to entertain ſuch
'pernicious Deſigns, and being not aſhamed to
'ſay publickly that after having put in executi-
'on what they have contriv'd againſt the ſacred
'Perſon of his Majeſty, they will join our Ene-
'my, which is however directly contrary to
'the perpetrated Peace aforeſaid, which was ob-
'tain'd with the effuſion of much human Blood;
'for amongſt the ſeveral Conditions to ſettle the
'ſtability of the Peace between the two Nati-
'ons, with the moſt ſerene King and Republick
'of *Poland*; it is expreſly ſtipulated, that his
'Majeſty, and his Succeſſors who ſhall be
'Elected after him; the great Dukes of *Lithua-*
'*nia* and the whole Republick of the Crown of
'*Poland*, and great Dutchy of *Lithuania*, the
'Eccleſiaſtical and ſecular Orders of each Nati-
'on promiſe to favour no ways our declared or
'ſecret Enemies, neither by themſelves, nor by
'others to have any Correſpondence with them,
'and never to ſuffer them to commit the leaſt
'Hoſtility: To the End then, that this fire which
'lies concealed under theſe treacheous Aſhes may
'be extinguiſhed in a due time, before it breaks
'out into a Flame, and that abominable Deſign
'abhorred of God and Man, perfidiouſly to break
'an Oath, and violate what has been ſolemnly
'Sworn to, may be ſtifled in its beginning; we have

'con-

'concern'd our ſelves in this Affair, being ſatisfied that we have ſufficiently ſhown to all the 'World that it is our Duty and Right to interpoſe 'our ſelves therein, and have thought fit in the firſt 'Place to appeal our ſelves to your moſt ſerene 'Republick, and induce you by this friendly 'Exhortation to weigh every thing in this extremity, and to admoniſh without interruption, 'ſuch who entertain thoſe pernicious Deſigns, '(deteſted by all good Men) to reflect upon themſelves, and conſider what they undertake, and 'that they not only expoſe their Honour and Reputation, but likewiſe the Security of their 'Country to an evident Danger.

'THE Reaſons upon which they fancy they may 'ground the dethroning of a King elected according to Law, a re-acknowledg'd by his greateſt Enemies to appear ſo unjuſt and frivilous to 'unintereſted Perſons, that the Authors of 'thoſe Councils cannot avoid the Name and Character of Enemies and perfidious Men, which 'have been beſtowed upon them by their own 'Brothers, nor hinder all Chriſtian Princes, and 'eſpecially ſuch, who are oblig'd by Treaties or 'Reaſons of State to Defend, and Protect the 'ſacred Majeſty of Kings from oppoſing with 'all their might the Election of another Perſon, 'to the prejudice of the publick Good of Chriſtendom, and puting a ſtop to thoſe impious Deſigns: They cannot be ignorant that his ſacred 'Majeſty as Elector of *Saxony* has ſtill Forces enough to repell thoſe Hoſtilities, and maintain the good Cauſe and Right, he has once 'acquired; and rather the more, becauſe the beſt 'Part of the moſt ſerene Republick, in conſideration of their Duty, and their Oath, have de-

'clared

'clar'd their Readineſs to ſpill their Blood for 'their King, and Sacrifice their Lives and Re-'putation for his Defence, to the immortal Glory 'of them, and their Poſterity; and what can be 'the End of all this, but to make their own Coun-'try a Theatre of War, and open a large Field 'for the Plunder and Devaſtation of their Neigh-'bouring Nations? As to the Authors of this De-'ſign, and ſuch who favour them, they will re-'ceive the puniſhment they juſtly deſerve; they 'will bring a blot upon themſelves and their Po-'ſterity, which ſhall never be wip'd of, and ſinking 'at laſt under, the weight of Divine Juſtice, 'which never leaves thoſe attempts unpuniſhed, 'they will deplore their own Misfortunes, but 'too late.

'As to thoſe among you who have Cauſe to 'complain, for we know very well, that the 'whole moſt Serene Republick is not hurried a-'way by that impiety, but is for the major Part 'inclined for the King, we may ſay that 'tis cer-'tain that God himſelf, and the beſt and moſt 'prudent Princes cannot equally pleaſe all the 'World, and that the Chagrin and Diſatisfaction 'of ſome proceed from particular Affections, 'which uſually ſway the Words and the Writings, 'and from Paſſion and private Intereſt of Parties; 'but although they had juſt Cauſe of Complaint, 'which does not hitherto appear, they ought for 'all that to conſider, that thoſe political Diſtem-'pers do not occaſion ſo much Danger to the Re-'publick, as commonly do the means which, ſome 'are endeavouring to make uſe of as a remedy in 'the preſent Caſe, and to neglect the Friendly and 'Amicable ways preſcrib'd by the fundamental 'Laws of *Poland*, even to the offended Party,

'and

and have immediately recourſe to Violence and Extremities, is a Practice contrary to the divine and human Laws.

'If the Authors of theſe Novelties ſhould by the permiſſion of God, for ſome ſecret Reaſons of which there are ſome Inſtances obtain their Aim, what would they Gain thereby? except to ſuffer ſomewhat ſooner or later the Puniſhment due to their wickedneſs, and their Poſterity ſhall never waſh off the Infamy they have brought upon themſelves, and their Nation; the Aſſiſtance of a foreign Prince encourages them in this Deſign, but the Event will enable them to make a true Judgement of their Actions, and time will ſhow their vanity in building ſuch great things on a ſandy Foundation, and that they have rely'd on a broken Reed; they have taken for the Defender of the Cauſe; and have eſpous'd a Prince, who for recompenſing himſelf for the trouble he muſt be at, and reimburſe himſelf of the Expences and Charges, will ſeize upon after having ruined their whole Country; we think it needleſs to enlarge any further upon a Subject of ſo dangerous a Conſequence, and flatter our ſelves that ſuch who deſire the Preſervation of their Republick, amongſt whom there is a great Number of Senators and good Patriots will exert their utmoſt Prudence to make their Brethren ſenſible of their Miſtake, and bring back into the right way ſuch who have been ſeduc'd; as to the reſt, we declare to the moſt Serene Republick, that we are reſolved to Interpoſe our good Offices, and in Order that ſuch who remembring what they owe to God, their King and Country, have promis'd to lay down their Lives for his Ma-

'jeſty, and likewiſe ſuch who have the impu-
'dence to oppoſe their Prince, and ſtir Heaven
'and Earth to obtain their Aim, may equally
'know our Intentions towards them; we do
'offer with a ſincere Heart our good Offices to
'pacify the Diviſions and Quarrels which have
'been excited between his Sacred *Poliſh* Ma-
'jeſty, and ſome Members of the moſt Serene
'Republick, out of our Affection for our Bro-
'ther, Friend and good Neighbour; and are ful-
'ly perſwaded that God's bleſſing, and the Aſſi-
'ſtance of our Friends, and Confederates con-
'cerned therein, we ſhall reſtore Peace, Union
'and Proſperity to the ſatisfaction of both Parties,
'and the common Advantage of the Kingdom of
'*Poland*, and Great Dutchy of *Lithuania*; doubt-
'ing not in the leaſt, but that this offer of our
'good Offices proceeding from the ſincerity of
'our Heart will appear free from all Suſpicions
'to the reſpective Parties; for as his Sacred Ma-
'jeſty is fully aſſured of our conſtant Friendſhip,
'and Brotherly Affection, ſo the moſt Serene
'Republick may firmly rely upon our plain and
'ſincere Intentions, whereby we are induced to
'Protect their Liberty in Conſideration of the
'perpetual Peace herein alledged; therefore we
'friendly invite by this Letter to a ſpeedy
'and Categorical anſwer, that we may know
'whether our Offers are accepted with the ſame
'Diſpoſitions for the Peace and Tranquility of
'*Poland* and *Luthania*, as we do profeſs before
'God we have at this time.

'HOWEVER we ſhall continue the neceſſary
'Preparations, that in Caſe the diſaffected Party
'perſiſt in their wicked Deſigns, we may be able
'to exert the power God has given us to Support

'and

and Maintain his Sacred Majeſty on a Throne he is lawfully poſſeſs'd of: As to thoſe who ſhall ſide with the King, or ſhall in a due time return to their Duty, we ſhall grant them our ſpecial Favour, and ſhow them as much Affection, as if they had done ſomething for our ſelves, and promoted our own Advantage; promiſing to aſſiſt them with all our Power for pacifying theſe troubles; but for ſuch who oppoſe the moſt Serene King of *Poland* their Soveraign, and will not deſiſt from their pernicious Deſign, we declare them our Enemies, with all their Adherents, and ſhall puniſh them as ſuch every where, and ſhall not forbear our Hoſtilities againſt them, till thoſe Diſturbers of the publick Peace, and Enemies of their Country, as they have been juſtly call'd by their own Countrymen in the Acts, and publick Decrees, made during this Inteſtine War, have been ſeverely puniſhed, made an example to others, and are plucked out like a Weed of the Kingdom of *Poland*, and Great Dutchy of *Lithuania*, whereof the Peace and Tranquility is as dear to us, as that of our own Dominions; And in fine, till our Neighbourhood is cleared of thoſe wicked Men, and that this Letter may be of greater force, and that not only the Serene Republick, but alſo all the World may know that this is our Deſign, and Reſolution; we ſhall communicate this Declaration to all the Princes who favour our Cauſe, that the Juſtice of what we are going to undertake may appear every were; but for our Neighbours, who have the ſame good Reaſons as we, to look upon this Affair as concerning them in a particular manner, we invite them to join, and enter into Alliance with us;

'and being reſolv'd to neglect nothing for the 'Defence of the ſacred Perſon of his Majeſty, 'we ſhall take care of his Cauſe, Scepter and 'Crown, as of our own: We wiſh with all our 'Hearts the Graces and Bleſſing of the Almighty 'to ſuch who ſincerely deſire the Advantage and 'Preſervation of the moſt Serene Republick, and 'that they may ſucceed in the Deſign they ſhall 'go upon for the glory of God, the preſervation 'of their King, and the Honour and Advantage 'of their Country, and we wiſh them a good 'Health. Done at *Muſcow*, of your Eminency, 'your Excellencies and great Generoſities, the 'good and affectionate Friend.

Peter.

In Conſequence of this Letter, and at the Requeſt of the King of *Poland*, his *Czariſh* Majeſty ordered a Body of 45000 Men, Choice Troops and very well appointed to march to the Frontiers of *Poland*, on the Side of *Sendomir*, and there to receive Orders from the King of *Poland*; which they did very opportunely for the Service of that Prince, who was cloſely purſued by the *Swediſh* General *Rhenſchild* with an Army much Superior to his own, and was oblig'd to paſs the *Viſtule* at *Petrowinnear ſendomir*, and break down the Bridge behind him to prevent his being fallen upon.

But now being Supported by a ſtrong Confederate ready at his call, and the apprenſions of his being join'd by the *Ruſſian* Army, having ſtop'd General *Rhenſchild* in his purſuit, the King of *Poland* had time given him to Summon his Friends about him, and which was more the *Palatinates* on that Side, which were before in the *Swediſh* Intereſt ſeeing

ing a powerful Army at hand to protect them, and that they might march ſecurely, began now to draw together, and flocking in to the Support of their King; his *Poliſh* Majeſty had preſently a powerful Army of his own, and the *Swediſh* General was glad to retreat in his turn to *Cracow*.

THUS his *Czariſh* Majeſty gave a Turn to the Affairs of *Poland*, and King *Auguſtus* from this time appear'd every Day more formidable than other: Here at *Sendomir* he Summon'd a great Council from all the *Palatinates* which continu'd faithful to him, and they all under the Encouragement of the Strength and Figure he appear'd in, took now a new Oath to him in Oppoſition to the Confederate Rebels, who by the Politicks and Influence of the *Swedes* pretended to declare an *Interregnum*, and chooſe a new King.

IN this Aſſembly they declar'd their abhorence of that perfidious Conventicle, which call'd themſelves a Diet met at *Warſaw*, and took a new Oath, obliging themſelves to oppoſe it with all their Might: In the next Place they declared, That any Prince who ſhall take upon him the Title of King of *Poland* or ſhall ſtand Candidate in the pretended Election, ſhall be deem'd the Enemy and Tyrant of the Country; the Primate and the Biſhop of *Pozen* being look'd upon as the chief Authors Promoters of theſe troubles, not minding and the King's favours towards them, were declared Enemies of their Country, Infamous and Rebels. And Application is ordred to be made to the Pope, That thoſe Prelates be proceeded againſt by Excommunication, and other Cenſures of the Church, as being the occaſion of the Effuſion of ſo much Chriſtian Blood, and that in the mean time, their Revenues ſhall be ſeiz'd and confiſticated; the

Marſhal of the Crown, and others who have entered into the Confederacy at *Warſaw*, are declar'd Rebels, and condemn'd as ſuch, unleſs within four Weeks they quit the Party of the Rebels, and return to the Obedience of their Soveraign, which favour was granted them upon the King's earneſt deſire, that ſuch who ſhall return to their Duty, ſhall have their Pardon without any Reſtriction, and ſhall be paid off their Arrears, if they are in Service; that the Governours and Commanders of the Fortreſſes of the Kingdom ſhall no longer reſpect the Orders of the Marſhal of the Crown; but ſhall receive Directions from the Marſhal of the Royal Confederacy for King *Auguſtus*. Eightly and Laſtly, That the Alliances made, or to be made with the Neighbouring Princes to invade by way of Diverſion the Territories of *Sweden*, ſhall be conſidered, provided there be not the leaſt diſmembering the Dominions of the Republick: Theſe Articles, being ſubſcrib'd and confirm'd by Oath, the Royal Confederacy repair'd to Church, where *Te Deum* was Sung, to return Thanks for the Unanmity of their Reſolutions: The King has on the other hand ſwore again to keep the *Pacta Conventa*, that he ſhall not exact from the Republick the Sums of Money he has borrowed; That his *Saxons* Troops ſhall be under the Command and Direction of the General of the Army of the Crown; That the Subſidies that ſhall be granted, ſhall be applied to the Payment of the ſaid Army. And Laſtly, that any Conqueſts that ſhall be made on the Enemies of his Majeſty, and the Nation ſhall be annexed to the Republick.

IN a few Days after this 12000 *Ruſſian* Foot, and 4000 *Coſſacks* join'd his Army, which was alſo reinforc'd in and about 10 Days by 3000 *Saxons*, Strengthen'd by theſe Aſſiſtances and the *Palatinates*, as above, coming in with a great many of their Troops, he found himſelf of a ſudden from 1500 Horſe, which was all he had at his coming to *Sendomir*, encreaſed to 12000 Horſe, and 18000 Foot.

FINDING himſelf in this Poſture, the King an active vigilant Prince, having by good Intelligence learnt that the Cardinal Primate, the great Domeſtick Enemy of his Crown; the pretended new King's Lady and Family, with abundance of his moſt Capital Enemies continu'd in the City of *Warſaw*, a Place of no great Strength, attended but with a very indifferent Number of Troops, he reſolv'd to beat up their Quarters; in purſuance of this Reſolution he remov'd with all his Calvalry, with the utmoſt Silence in the Night, and without letting one Man in his whole Army know any thing of his Deſign; he march'd directly for *Warſaw*, he executed this Project with a Celerity ſcarce Practicable, ordering his Infantry to follow with all poſſible ſpeed, and puting his Cannon into Boats on the *Viſtula*: In this Poſture before his Enemies had the leaſt Notice of his being Decamp'd from *Sendomir*, he appeared at the Gates of *Warſaw*, in the Morning, before it was quite break of Day, and inveſted the Place: The Confuſion it occaſion'd to thoſe within, may a little be gueſs'd at, and the Succeſs of it is a little deſcrib'd in the following Account, which tho' not ſo very much relating to the Affairs of *Ruſſia*, yet as the *Ruſſian* Troops were concern'd in it, I could not omit the Relation.

THE unexpected approach of that Prince, oblig'd the Cardinal Primate, the pretended new Queen, with the *Palatines* of *Siridia*, *Lenite* and *Podlochia*, and ſeveral other Grandees to quit *Warſaw*, with the utmoſt precipitation; and they had the good Luck to eſcape: His *Poliſh* Majeſty having not fully inteſted the City till the next Day; but General Horn, who took upon him the Command of the Life-Guards of the new King, with ſome *Swedes*, *Valachians* and *Coſſacks* ſeem'd reſolv'd to defend the Place to the laſt Extremity: This oblig'd King *Auguſtus* to raiſe ſome Batteries; but as ſoon as they were ready, General Horn quitted the Town, and retired into the Caſtle. The Forces of King *Auguſtus* took poſſeſſion thereof the 3d in the Morning, but they were forbidden to Plunder, the Magiſtrates having promiſed to pay 50000 Rix Dollars; the ſame Day General *Brandt*, who had paſs'd the *Viſtule* with 6000 *Coſſacks* and 1000 *Saxon* Horſe, made preparations to attack the Caſtle, and a Battery of 4 Pieces of Cannon was erected the 4th in the Morning to Batter the ſame: This oblig'd General *Horn* to ſurrender with all the Officers Soldiers, and other Adherents of the *Swedes*, therein Priſoners of War, the King having refus'd to grant them any other Terms. The State Priſoners were the Biſhop of *Poſnania*, who proclaim'd the new King; the *Sieurs*, *Waſlager*, and *Palemberg* Plenipotentiaries of the King of *Sweden*; Lieutenant General *Horn*, the *Caſtillan Kimpſki*, 1 tenant Colonel, 2 Majors, 10 Captains, 15 Lieutenants, 14 Enſigns, 1 Adjutant, 72 Sergeants, 260 Soldiers; beſides 325 *Swedes* taken ſome Days before, by General *Brandt* at *Latowitz*; where he cut in pieces 320 *Swedes*, the firſt Equipage of Prince *Alexander*, his Horſes, Mules, *&c.* were taken

taken in the Caſtle; the Sieur *Walſchläger* being born a Subject of the Republick, King *Auguſtus* has not ſhowed the ſame regard towards him, as towards the Sieur *Palemberg*, and has ſent him Priſoner into *Saxony* with the Biſhop of *Poſnania*, and the two Sons of the *Caſtellan* of *Cracow*: General *Horn* obtain'd leave to go to the *Swediſh* Camp upon his Parole of Honour, to ſurrender himſelf Priſoner in *Saxony*, within two Months time, unleſs his Liberty was obtain'd before.

In a very few Days after this Action, the King of *Poland* paſs'd the *Viſtula* again at *Warſaw*, and advancing towards *Sileſa*, encamp'd at a Place call'd *Whipſogrod*, where he receiv'd a Body of 16000 *Saxons*, all fine Troops, and their Cavalry exceeding well Mounted, and to join whom it was, that he March'd that way, for he immediately returned.

All this while the King of *Sweden*, whoſe Fate it often was to be wining a great way off, and loſeing nearer home, was advanc'd as far as the fartheſt part of *Poland*, and was attacking *Lemberg*, which he took, and his Men exerciſed ſuch there unheard of Cruelties upon the *Jews*, and other Inhabitants to Extort from them the Diſcovery of their Treaſure, that made all the Chriſtian World aſtoniſh'd, and made the Name of a *Swede* odious to the whole *Poliſh* Nation.

While theſe things were doing his *Czariſh* Majeſty went on in a rapid Courſe of interrupted Victory in *Livonia*, and having taken the whole Province of *Ingria*, as above, taken *Nyenſchans*, and *Dorpat* by Compoſition, raz'd *Schanſterney*, built *Petersburgh*, *Croonſlot*, and all the Forts on the Entry of that Royal Port, His Majeſty now reſolv'd on the attack of *Narva*, and the Fort on

the

the other Side of the River call'd *Ivanagrod*: He had held the Place block'd up for ſome time, but now he reſolv'd to puſh the Siege with the utmoſt Vigour.

And here the Governour found the difference between the *Muſcovite* attacks now, and in the former Siege: The Trenches were open'd the 27th of *Auguſt*, and the Place batter'd with 40 Pieces of heavy Cannon, and 12 Mortars. The Batteries were ſo well ſerv'd, and the Defences of the Beſieg'd ſo effectually beaten down, that after 13 Days open Trenches, the *Ruſſians* gave a general Aſſault, and manag'd it ſo well, mounting the Breach with ſuch Bravery, that tho' the Garriſon which conſiſted of 1600 Men, beſides Burghers, defended themſelves with the utmoſt Bravery, the *Ruſſians* entered the Place, Sword in hand, and put the Garriſon, and arm'd Burghers to the Sword; the *Swedes* not calling for Quarter, but defending themſelves, as it may be ſaid to the laſt Man.

I Need ſay no more to convince the Reader how the *Ruſſians* were now improv'd in the Affairs of War, than to ſhow how they behav'd on every occaſion, and particular in the attacking of this Town, which is now Storm'd in 13 Days, open Trenches, whereas General *Horn* formerly Defended it ſix Weeks againſt 100000 Men, till the King of *Sweden* came and reliev'd it.

Thus the *Czar's* Diſgrace, as it was call'd before *Narva* was compleatly wip'd out: People began to enquire by what Magick his Majeſty had infus'd Courage and Conduct into the *Ruſſians*, who before were the Contempt of all the Soldiery of *Europe*.

The Caſtle of *Ivanagrod*, oppoſite to *Narva*, held out for ſome Days, but ſeeing the *Ruſſians*

go

go ſeriouſly to Work with them, and fearing to ſhare the ſame Fate with the City, the Governour beat a Parly, after ſuſtaining a prodigious Battery for ſix Days: In ſhort he Surrendered the Fortreſs upon honourable Conditions.

As to the City of *Narva*, being taken by Storm, it was given up to Plunder as a reward of the Labours of the Soldiery, only that they were forbid to kill any of the Inhabitants, except ſuch as were arm'd, and made Reſiſtance: In the Head of this Execution the *Czar* gave ſuch Orders, and took care to have them ſo well executed, that the Ware-Houſes of the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* Merchants, and alſo their Dwelling-Houſes and Families were not touch'd; no, tho' upon the Aſſurances given them of Safety, they ſuffer'd their Houſes to be a Retreat for many of the Citizens, and for an immenſe Treaſure, which they brought to them for Preſerving it from the Soldiers.

Having thus made an Entrance upon the Sea-Coaſt, his *Czariſh* Majeſty divided his Army into three Bodies, and ſent one Part to block up *Revel*, and the other *Riga*, ordering the other Part to cover their Camp, and Guard the Paſſes into the Country, being reſolved to reduce thoſe two important Places, before any Relief could come to them.

However for ſome time his Majeſty deferred his Reſolution to Beſiege them in Form being called off to yeild a yet more powerful Aſſiſtance to his diſtreſs'd Allie the King of *Poland*; in order to which, he order'd an Army of 60000 Men to draw together in *Lithuania*, with which his *Czariſh* Majeſty reſolv'd to Advance in Perſon, and give the King of *Sweden* Battle; as the only way to make a ſhort End of the Deſola-

tions

tions of *Poland*, and drive his Enemies out of the County.

BUT as he was now for the firſt time entering *Poland*, at the Head of an Army to make War as I may call it in his own Name, tho' for the Intereſt of the King of *Auguſtus*; he publiſhed a Manifeſto to the *Poliſh* Nation, and to the *Lithuanians*, ſignifying to them his Reaſons for entering their Country with an Army, a Piece which will for ever record the Juſtice of the attempt, and convince Poſterity alſo of the Neceſſity of it at that time: The *Manefeſto* therefore, is worth their peruſing, who think it worth while to acquaint themſelves with the Hiſtory of thoſe Times; the whole at large is as follows, *(viz.)*

'WE by the Grace of God, the moſt Illuſtri-
'ous, and moſt Potent *Czar*, and great Duke,
'*Peter Alexewitz*, abſolute Soveraign of the Great-
'er, Leſſer, and *White Ruſſia*, and Hereditary
'Succeſſor, Lord of ſeveral Principalities and
'Countries, in the Eaſt, and Weſt, Northern Parts
'of the World.

'SIGNIFY hereby to the Illuſtrious and Magni-
'ficent Senators, Dignitaries, both Spiritual and
'Temporal, and the reſt of the great Officers,
'and Nobility of the moſt Serene Republick of
'*Poland*, and the great Dutchy of *Lithuania*, that
'we purſuant to the perpetual Peace, concluded
'formerly between both Nations, and the ſubſe-
'quent Alliances made with his Majeſty *Auguſtus*
'II, and the whole Republick of *Poland*, for a
'mutual Proſecution of the War againſt our com-
'mon Enemy, have employ'd our utmoſt endea-
'vours to oblige that Enemy, who has invaded
'the Republick of *Poland* to retire out of it; and

'to

' to prevent the Effects of ſuch impious Factions,
' as either for Intereſt, or fear of the Enemies
' Power and Threats, have endeavoured theſe
' two Years paſt to Dethrone their lawful King;
' we have formerly declared our Abhorrence of
' ſuch perfidious Proceedings, in a Letter ſent to the
' whole Republick, wherein we acquainted them
' at the ſame time that we were bound by the
' ſtrongeſt Ties of Brotherly Love and Alliances;
' and by our own Inclinations to defend the com-
' mon Rights of Princes to prevent ſuch a horri-
' ble Deſign, which deſerves the ſevereſt Expreſ-
' ſions of God's Vengeance and Wrath; and that
' we ſhould be oblig'd to look upon ſuch Rebels
' to their King and the Republick, as our Ene-
' mies, and purſue them with Fire and Sword;
' theſe our Exhortations and Warnings had ſuch
' good Effect at firſt, that the Fire which had be-
' gun to ſpread itſelf, ſeem'd extinguiſh'd, but
' as appears ſoon after, it was only hid under de-
' ceitful Aſhes till the *Swedes* did blow it up a-
' gain into a ſudden Flame, and the *Waywod* of
' *Poſen*, *Leſcinſky* was unlawfully elected by a
' ſmall Number of inconſiderable Perſons to be
' King, contrary to the Sentiments of many of
' the Confederates that appear'd at the Electi-
' on, and in oppoſition to the Liberties, and
' Rights, not only of *Poland*, but the whole uni-
' verſe; and this deteſtable Act was not only
' proteſted againſt by the Archbiſhop and Cardi-
' nal Primate *Radziowſki*, and other Senators of
' the firſt Rank, though they had at that time
' quarrel with their lawful Prince; but the Mar-
' ſhal of the Confederated Nobility could never
' be perſwaded to give his conſent to this illegal
' Choice; but the *Swedeſt* notwithſtanding, perſiſt-
' ing,

'ing obſtinately in his Deſign, and exerci-
'ſing an abſolute Power on the Republick, has
'compelled ſome of the Nobility to conclude a
'Treaty with the *Swediſh* Envoys, in the Name
'of the elected, who very ſubmiſſively hearken
'to the Dictates of the *Swedes*: Part of the afore-
'ſaid Confederates were indeed taken Priſoners
'by their lawful King, and the reſt were diſ-
'pers'd; but not only the diſtance of our main
'Army, and the Animoſities between the Forces
'of the Republick, but alſo the ſmall Number
'of *Saxons*, ſoon after oblig'd the foremention'd
'King *Auguſtus* to march to *Saxony*, with part of
'his *Saxon* Troops, in order to prevent the in-
'tended Invaſion of the *Swedes* in that Electorate;
'He deſign'd to return ſoon to *Poland*, but his
'return has hitherto been obſtructed by the
'*Swedes*, who have ſhut up all the Paſſages, this
'emboldened the Enemy to publiſh in the Name
'of the Cardinal Primate, Circular Letters con-
'firming the foremention'd unlawful Election,
'and having call'd together the petty Dyetts the
'26 of *June*, a general one was Summon'd to meet
'the 11th of the next enſuing Month; we can-
'not believe that theſe Univerſalia were iſſued
'by the Cardinal Primate, who being not only
'the Head of the Clergy, but alſo the firſt Mem-
'ber of the Republick, was chiefly concern'd to
'endeavour a Reconciliation between the Sub-
'jects of *Poland*, and their lawful Prince; ſo
'that we have Reaſon to think that this unlaw-
'ful Aſſembly of the Deputies of *Poland*, was
'purely contriv'd by the ſubtile Enemy, as may
'partly appear by the falſe Rumours ſpread by
'him, (*viz.*) that the King of *Pruſſia* diſponding

of

'of a Reconciliation between King *Auguſtus*, and
'the *Swedes*, had embrac'd the Party of the King
'of *Sweden*, and the elected Perſon; the falſhood
'of this imputation is manifeſt by the Letter
'ſent to the King of *Pruſſia* by the Cardinal upon
'this Account, and although the King of *Pruſſia* be-
'ing a neutural Prince in this War, has not been
'adverſe to the Party of the *Swedes*; yet we are
'aſſur'd that he will not Recognize the elected
'Perſon, in regard it would injure all crown'd
'Heads, who in this World have none above them,
'beſides the Omnipotent Judge, who according
'to his holy Will and Pleaſure depoſes Kings,
'and places others in their room; ſo that we
'cannot imagine this deteſtable Practice, which
'is ſo abhorr'd in the ſight of God can be
'approved by Men; even, if not only a ſmall
'Number, but alſo all the Subjects ſhould with-
'out ſufficient Cauſe preſume to dethrone their
'Prince in compliance with his Enemies deſires;
'for which Reaſon we are confident, that the
'ſaid *Univerſalia* were publiſh'd by the Enemy,
'who therein make mention of the deſolations
'of the Country of *Poland*, and the depredations
'committed upon the holy Churches and Lands;
'but the Perſons guilty thereof was not Named,
'yet it was propos'd therein, to call a general
'Diet to prevent ſuch Grievances for the future,
'and that the beſt expedient for that End would
'be to confirm the illegal Choice of the *Waywod* of
'*Poſen*, and to depend upon the Promiſes of the
'King of *Sweden*, as though he were come into
'*Poland* to preſerve the violated Laws of the Re-
'publick; we do verily believe that only ſuch
'as are blinded by Bribes, will give any Credit to
'this cunning, dangerous and pernicious Deceit,

'the

'the plundering the Towns and Caſtles in *Poland*
'and *Lithuania* of their Wealth, Ornaments, Am-
'munition and Artillery; the Churches and Mo-
'naſtries of the Relicts of Saints, their Orna-
'ments and their very Bells; and the Oppreſſi-
'ons of the Waywodſhips and other Lands by in-
'tollerable Taxes exacted there, ſhow what a
'Friend to *Poland* the *Swede* is, notwithſtanding
'all his pretences that he is to come into *Poland*,
'not to ſeek his own Intereſt, but to Protect the
'Republick, and by the aſſuming the Soveraign-
'ty of *Courland*, and giving his General *Lewen-*
'*haupt* the Title of Vice Governour of that
'Country, it may be apprehended he will do
'the like by ſome forfeited Towns in *Pruſſia*:
'Theſe things conſider'd again, we do declare
'that we will defend our Brother and Allie King
'*Auguſtus* to the utmoſt of our Power, by vertue
'of our ſolemn Alliances with that Prince, and
'the Republick, and are for that End reſolv'd up-
'on the Petition deliver'd to us in the Name of
'the Republick to advance in Perſon with an
'Army into *Poland*, without any regard to our
'own Intereſt; and therefore we notify to all the
'States of the Republick to forbear coming to
'any Congreſs, or coming themſelves to ſuch as
'are Aſſembled at *Warſaw*, in favour of the
'Elected, on pain of being puniſh'd in their Per-
'ſons and Poſſeſſions, with Fire and Sword; and
'to prevent any Plea of Ignorance, we require
'all Sons of their Native Country, after they
'ſhall have detected the Artifices of the Enemy,
'to lay aſide their private Animoſities, and to joyn
'unanimouſly for their common good; and in or-
'der thereunto to endeavour the expulſion of the
'Enemy who has diſturb'd your Peace; we Pro-

'miſe

'miſe, on our Parole, that we will aſſiſt you here-
'in as a faithful Allie, having no Pretenſions up-
'on you. And we teſtify, before God, that we
'are advanc'd with our Forces into the Lands of
'the Republick, meerly upon preſſing Invitations
'and Intreaties, and for the ſake of your Intereſt
'only. And that we demand for the Subſiſtance
'of our Army, ſuch Quantities of Bread as had
'ſtipulated in our Alliance with the Republick,
'and that we will enjoin our Forces, on Pain of
'Death, to commit no Diſorders in your Coun-
'try. We heartily wiſh that you will be unani-
'mous, and open your Eyes to your Welfare,
'as the only Means to recover your Liberty.
'We remain a Faithful Allie, and Affectionate
'Friend.

THE King of *Sweden*, at this Time, was in no Condition to meet ſuch a Power, his Troops being diſperſed, and the King of *Poland* was himſelf in *Saxony*, diſpoſing Things as his Circumſtances would permit, to prevent the King of *Sweden*'s falling into that Country. But his Army having been defeated at the Battle of *Frauenſtadt*, it was not poſſible for him to raiſe another time enough for the Work.

HOWEVER, the King hearing that his *Czariſh* Majeſty was arrived in *Lithuania*, went Incognito from *Saxony*, and by his exceeding ſwift Riding, having prevented any Deſign to intercept him, arriv'd at *Tycockzin*, where the *Ruſſian* Army lay, and there it was, that his *Czariſh* Majeſty let him ſee what an Army he had brought to ſerve him. The Seaſon of the Year not preſenting any Opportunity of immediate Action, and ſome new Diſorders having happen'd at *Moſcow*, the *Czar*

took a Reſolution to go away Poſt thither, which he did, leaving Prince *Alexander Menzickoff* to Command the *Ruſſian* Army, with poſitive Directions to obey the Orders of King *Auguſtus* in all Things, as effectually as if it had been his own.

His *Czariſh* Majeſty, by his ſudden coming to *Moſcow*, ſurpriz'd his Enemies, as he had done more than once before, and having made ſome Examples of Juſtice, and put to Death the principal Authors of the Treaſon, he ſoon return'd to the Frontiers.

But I ſhould have taken Notice that his *Czariſh* Majeſty, before he came into *Lithuania* with this Army, had been preſent at the taking the Town of *Mittau*, the Capital of *Courland*. The *Swedes* pretended that his Troops had receiv'd a Defeat at their firſt Enterance into *Courland*, a Body of 7000 *Swedes* under General *Lewenhaupt* having attack'd them with great Vigour, and yet, even in this Action, the *Ruſſians* behav'd ſo well, that in the Accounts which the *Swedes* themſelves publiſh'd of the Action, they have this Expreſſion; the *Muſcovite* Foot were cut down in Rank and File, as they ſtood, for tho' they ſaw the Horſe broken, yet not a Man of them would ſtir from their Poſt, tho' ſurrounded by the Enemy.

But this Victory, as the *Swedes* would call it, was far from an Overthrow, and far from relieving their Cauſe; for about three Days after the Battle, the *Czar* advanc'd with his whole Army, and ſurpriz'd, as I obſerved above, and took *Mittau*, with 900 *Swedes* in it Priſoners of War, with a great Magazine of Military Stores and Proviſion laid up there by the *Swedes*, which, as was well

well obſerv'd by the Writers of thoſe Times, was but a very indifferent Token of their having been beaten in a Set Battle, and 7000 of them killed upon the Spot.

Nor was this all, but immediately after this Battle, I might have ſaid this Victory, for ſuch, indeed it was to the *Ruſſians*. General *Lewenhaupt* retired out of the Country, and the *Muſcovite* General, Prince *Czeremettoff*, cauſed the City of *Riga* to be beſieged in Form, which for want of Relief, was alſo taken about 2 Months after, the Garriſon having been reduced to the laſt Extremity.

It is hard to come at the Journals of theſe Sieges, no particular Account of them having been publiſh'd in the World, but this may Sum up that Part; that while the King of *Sweden* went on puſhing King *Auguſtus* with an implacable Rage out of his Kingdom, his *Czariſh* Majeſty over-run all the *Swediſh* Dominions, on the South Side of the Gulph of *Finland*, and even the Dutchy *Courland* it ſelf; this would have been called a Diverſion in King *Auguſtus*'s Favour, in any Place in the World but here; perhaps to any Prince in the World, but to the King of *Sweden* it would have been ſo: For, who could have ſuppos'd, that any Prince like this, would have puſh'd on a remote Conqueſt, in which his own proper Dominions were ſo little concerned, and for the meer Satisfaction, or if you will, for the Glory of pulling down a King, who he had already ſufficiently reduced; and at the ſame Time, ſuffer his own Hereditary Dominions to be torn from him; his miſerable Subjects ruined and ravaged without Succour; his ſtrong and moſt Important Towns taken from him, without relieving them;

and his Brave Troops be beaten for want of Reinforcement.

He that can do thus, may indeed ſay, that no Expedition of his Enemies, by way of Diverſion, can be a Relief to thoſe he puſhes with Revenge. 'Tis evident here, that the King of *Sweden* could not be ſaid to fight for Peace, but for Revenge and Glory. For, it is evident, he might have glorried in making Peace, both with *Poland*, and the *Czar* of *Muſcovy* alſo, upon very Honourable Conditions. But nothing would ſerve him but reducing and dethroning the One; after which, he grew ſo opinionate, that he fancy'd he could do the like by the *Czar* of *Muſcovy*; Nay, and his Miniſters gave it openly out, that he had reſolved to do it: And had Heaven ſuffer'd him to have carry'd on his Victory that Length, 'tis not doubted but he would have depoſed all the Kings of the Earth, if it had been in his Power.

But we muſt not anticipate our Relation of Things, we ſhall in the Courſe of this Hiſtory, bring his *Czariſh* Majeſty and the King of *Sweden* nearer together in the War, than we have done yet, in order to this, we ſhall begin with what his Troops did in *Poland*, before the *Czar* came to act in Perſon.

The *Czar*, as I have ſaid, had left the War in *Livonia* to the Prince *Czeremetoff*, who managed it with ſuch Succeſs, that he beat the *Swedes* upon all Occaſions, and at laſt compleated the Conqueſt of *Livonia*, by taking the Towns of *Riga*, *Pernau*, *Revel*, and *Neyen*, with all the other Towns and Forts of any Strength; Poſted a ſtrong Body of Troops in *Courland*, to Cover *Livonia* from the Return of the *Swedes*, and then followed his Maſter, the *Czar* into *Lithuania*.

His

His *Czariſh* Majeſty's Troops in *Livonia* had block'd up *Riga*, the *Dunamund* Schans was almoſt ruined by a Diſaſter of Fire; which taking hold of the Powder in the Magazein, blew it all up with a terrible Noiſe, 300 of the *Swediſh* Garriſon periſhing in the Blaſt. This Accident caus'd the *Ruſſian* General *Baver*, who Commanded at *Mittau*, to advance towards *Riga* with 3000 Men, to ſee if he could make any Advantage of that Accident, but the Fate of that Place was not yet come.

We are to underſtand now, that a great Council of State had been aſſembled by King *Auguſtus* at *Grodno*, in *Lithuania*, where the King met them, and where they declar'd King *Staniſlaus* a Traytor and Uſurper, and agreed to aſſiſt King *Auguſtus* with the whole Army of the Crown, which was to be made up to 36000 Men, and to furniſh Money for their Payment.

This nettled *Staniſlaus*, and he flies to the King of *Sweden* for Help, who drawing his Forces together, pretended to march to attack King *Auguſtus* and his Army, at *Tycockzin*: But when he found that the *Ruſſian* Forces had join'd with him, he thought better of it, and marched back, not thinking it fit to venture his Army. The Particulars of this fruitleſs Attempt, was thus related from the very Place, by a Perſon who was an Eye Witneſs of it all.

Grodno, *Decemb.* 31, 1705.

'The King of *Sweden* having decamp'd from '*Elonic*, paſſed the *Viſtula* with all his Forces the '28th Inſtant, on the Bridge of Boats; and from 'thence continued his March with all Expedition 'to attack the *Muſcovites* at *Grodno* and *Tycockzin*, 'the latter had ſecured the Bridges on the River

‘ *Bug*. But the *Swedes* being favour'd by the great
‘ Froſt, they paſs'd that River with all their Ar-
‘ tilery over the Ice. The *Muſcovites* upon Ad-
‘ vice of his Approach, left 3000 Men in that
‘ Place, under the Command of Lieutenant
‘ General *Ronne*, with Orders to defend it to the
‘ laſt Extremity, and march'd with the reſt of
‘ their Forces, quartered in thoſe Parts, to join
‘ the King of *Poland* at *Grodno*. That Prince
‘ receiv'd Advice the 31ſt, that the *Swedes* having
‘ not thought fit to attack *Tycockzin*, were in a full
‘ March towards *Grodno*, and were already ad-
‘ vanc'd within 10 Leagues of his Camp; whereon
‘ he held the 22d. a Council of War, with all the
‘ *Poliſh*, *Saxon*, and *Muſcovite* Generals; wherein
‘ it was reſolv'd, that the Army ſhould continue
‘ near *Grodno*, and expect the *Swedes* in Order of
‘ Battle; and that to render the Approaches to
‘ their Camp the more difficult, a conſiderable
‘ Body of Troops were poſted in a Wood, to ſecure a
‘ Defile through which the *Swedes* would be oblig'd
‘ to paſs: They ſettled likewiſe in that Council
‘ the Rank of the General Officers; the Right of
‘ the Army was given to Velt Mareſchal *Ogliby*;
‘ and the Left to General *Allard*; and the Body
‘ of the Battle was commanded by the *Muſcovite*
‘ Prince *Menzickoff*; all under the Orders and
‘ Direction of the King of *Poland*. This was the
‘ Poſture of Affairs in *Lithuania* the 23d paſt,
‘ when the laſt Letters came away. But a Gen-
‘ tleman of the King of *Polands*, who is juſt now
‘ arriv'd from thence, and who left the Court of
‘ that Prince the 31ſt, reports, that the King of
‘ *Sweden* being advanc'd in Sight of the *Muſ-*
‘ *covite* Army, and finding the ſame advantagi-
‘ ouſly poſted; he did not think fit to attack the

King

'King of *Poland*: And continu'd his March to-
'wards *Wilna*; his *Poliſh* Majeſty held thereupon
'another Council of War, and according to the
'Reſolutions taken therein. He march'd imme-
'diately after, with a Detatchment of 3000 Horſe
'directly towards *Warſaw*, and was arriv'd at
'*Fokzen*, in his way thither, when this Gentle-
'man was diſpatched away; he adds, that Prince
'*Menzickoff* is ſent for *Moſcow*, by expreſs Or-
'ders of his Maſter, and has left the Command
'of the *Muſcovite* Army to Velt Marſhal *Ogliby*;
'the King of *Poland* endeavoured to fall upon
'the Rear of the *Swediſh* Army, and a 1000 Dra-
'goons commanded by Major General *Henke* fell
'upon their Baggage, and took 40 Waggons;
'the Sieur *Smigielſki* with his *Poles*, had alſo a
'Skirmiſh with them, and took 3 Lieutenants,
'with 50 Soldiers, beſides the Secretary of *Stani-*
'*ſlaus*.

I have mention'd that his *Czariſh* Majeſty having an Occaſion to make a Tour to *Moſcow*, left his Troops in *Lithuania* with poſitive Orders to obey the King of *Poland*, and the above Relation will ſhow a little how they behaved: But this is not all, for I muſt now add that the King of *Poland* led them the Path to Glory; taking a ſtrong Body of them with him, to the great Battle of *Kaliſh* in *Poſnania*, which follow'd ſoon after the laſt recited Action.

It muſt be obſerv'd here that the King of *Sweden*, finding he could not weary out, or diſcourage his Indefatigable Enemy the King of *Poland*; but if he was beaten in one Place he revived in another, and that the Confederated *Palatinates* in the South of *Poland*, who form'd the Aſſembly of *Sendomir*, continu'd to Supply him

with Money, and Troops, and particularly the famous *Smegielſki*, and above all the *Czar* of *Muſcovy* in Perſon, whoſe Army having entered *Lithuania*, had appear'd too ſtrong to be attack'd, as above, and had another Army ready to aſſiſt his *Poliſh* Majeſty, lying on the Frontiers of *Sendomir*, 12000 of which had actually joyn'd him, and that beſides this, he receiv'd daily great Succours out of *Saxony*: I ſay, the King of *Sweden* finding this, reſolv'd upon the only effectual way he had left to reduce the King of *Poland*; and this was to enter the Electorate of *Saxony* with his whole Army: The King of *Poland* had been aware of this ſome time, and had both written to the States of *Saxony* to put themſelves into a poſture of Defence, and had gone thither himſelf to ſee it effectually done, but the *Swediſh* General *Rhenſchild* having routed the *Saxon* Army at *Fruaenſtat*, and the Country, by that means being quite naked of Defence, the *Swedes* enter'd at once, without reſiſtance.

THIS immediately brought the King of *Poland* to Terms; his *Poliſh* Majeſty like a true Father of his Country, could not ſtop his Ears to the Cries of his People, as the King of *Sweden* had done to thoſe of his miſerable Subjects in *Livonia*, *Ingria* and *Finland*; if I may ſuppoſe he heard thoſe Cries, for ſome People ſuggeſted that Count *Piper*, General *Steenboch*, and thoſe Men who managed Affairs for the Prince, conceal'd from him the Miſeries of his People: If it be true, that they did ſo, no doubt but the Ruin of his Country, and the Blood of its Inhabitants lye at their Door, ſeeing by a juſt and honourable Peace it might have been all prevented.

But to return to the Hiſtory of Fact, the King of *Sweden* having enter'd the *Electorate* of *Saxony* contrary to the Repreſentations made by the Miniſters, of the Queen of *Great Britain*, the States General of the united Provinces, and ſeveral other Potentates, who all preſs'd him not to make ſuch a Breach upon the Peace of the Empire, and would no doubt in time have join'd to have driven him out again, the King of *Poland* was at the Entreaty of his States of *Saxony*, brought to name Plenipotentiaries for a Treaty, and this Treaty was actually carrying on; but while theſe Agents were hammering at a Peace, the Armies in *Poland* having made no Ceſſation of Arms, acted on every Side as uſual, and the *Swedes*, that the King of *Poland* might not have an opportunity to follow them into *Saxony*, had poſt'd Major General *Mardevelt* with an Army of about 25000 Men, *Lithuanians*, *Poles* and *Swedes*, at *Kaliſh*, in the Leſſer *Poland*, as it were directly in the way to *Saxony*.

His *Poliſh* Majeſty reſolving to reſcue his own Dominions whatever it coſt him, found it abſolutely neceſſary to fight this Army in the firſt Place, and having now the Support of a powerful Army from his faithful Alie the *Czar* of *Muſcovy*, he reſolv'd upon the attempt, and thereupon, call'd a great Council of War, at which were preſent the *Ruſſian* General Prince *Menzickoff*, and ſeveral of the *Poliſh* Nobility that were in his *Poliſh* Majeſty's Intereſt, who all agreed to what the King of *Poland* had reſolv'd (*viz.*) to Fight; what followed upon this, will be beſt underſtood by the following Account, written upon the Spot where the Action was perform'd.

'IT having been reſolved in a Council of War, 'held by his Majeſty at *Peterkau*, that the Army 'ſhould continue their March in queſt of the 'Enemy; the two Mareſchals of the Crown, 'and General *Brod* were detach'd the 22d In-'ſtant, with 8000 Men; and the 23d his Maje-'ſty and Prince *Alexander Menzickoff* followed 'with the main Body. The 26th, the two Bodies 'join'd near *Szat*, two Leagues from *Kaliſh*, 'with a Reſolution to expect us; thereupon his 'Majeſty went to take a narrow View of them, 'and cauſed immediately the *Calmuck Tartars*, 'and *Coſſacks*, to advance under the Cannon of '*Kaliſh*, ſo that ſeveral Skirmiſhes happen'd be-'tween them and the Enemy. The 28th, the 'whole Army advanced within a ſmall League 'of that of the Enemy commanded by General '*Mardevelt*; but having ſeveral Defiles, and a 'Bridge to paſs before he could get at them, 'his Majeſty employ'd the remaining part of 'that Day, in making the neceſſary Diſpoſitions 'for attacking them the next, with the utmoſt Vi-'gour. The 29th, his Majeſty march'd directly 'towards the Enemy in Order of Battle, and 'finding their Army drawn up likewiſe, behind 'an Eminence, about Three in the Afternoon 'gave the Signal for the Attack, by three Can-'non Shot; the Enemy anſwer'd by two Shots, 'and came down into the Plain with their whole 'Army, having intermix'd their Squadrons with 'their Batallions; their Right Wing being com-'poſ'd of Poliſh Troops, was commanded by the 'Sieur *Potocki*, Palatine of *Kiow*; their Left con-'ſiſting of *Lethuanians*, had Prince *Sapieha* at 'their Head; their Center was commanded by 'the Swediſh General *Mardevelt*; and the whole

whole Army was cover'd with two deep Moraſſes, the Town of *Kaliſh*, and a good Baracade of Waggons; inſomuch, that the Deſign of attacking them, ſeem'd to be attended with almoſt inſuperable Difficulties; notwithſtanding which, King *Auguſtus* perſiſted in his Reſolution. In order to put the ſame in execution, his Majeſty form'd the Center, and the two Wings of his Army, and divided his *Saxon* and *Muſcovite* Troops; beſides which, there were two Bodies of Reſerve of the *Poliſh* Forces, commanded by the two Generals of the Crown; his Majeſty took the Command of the Left Wing upon himſelf, gave that of the Right to Prince *Alexander Menzickoff*; and the Center to General *Brand*, or *Brod*. The Ingagement began between three and four a Clock, and his Majeſty's Troops fought with ſo much Vigour, that the Enemy's Right Wing was ſoon overthrown, and driven within the Baracade of Waggons they had near the Town of *Kaliſh*, but the reſt of their Army defended themſelves with great obſtinacy 'till ſix at Night; his Majeſty, during the whole Action, expos'd himſelf where the Fire was greateſt, and charg'd the Enemy ſeveral Times in Perſon, with his Horſe Guards, and ſeveral other Squadrons; but his Majeſty having no Foot, his Horſe ſuffer'd much by the continual Fire of the Enemy's Infantry, and particularly of the *French* Troops, and others, who, in the Action at *Frawenſtadt*, flung down their Arms, and went over to the *Swedes*. Nevertheleſs, the Enemy was puſh'd with the utmoſt Vigour, and, by the Bleſſing of God, we obtain'd a compleat and ſignal Victory over them. Their Forces, before the Battle, conſiſted of 10000 *Swedes*, and

15000

'15000 *Poles* and *Lithuanians*; and ours of 7000 'Poles, 5000 *Saxons*, 9000 *Muſcovites*, and ſome 'Thouſands of *Tarters*, or *Calmuck Coſſacks*; ſo 'that the two Armies were, almoſt of equal 'Strength; moſt of the *Sweeds* were kill'd in 'the Field of Battle; twenty *Poliſh* Companies 'of their Party, came over to us during the 'Action; and the next Morning, ſome Thouſand 'Poles, who were retired within the Barricades of 'Waggons, were likewiſe oblig'd to yield them-'ſelves Priſoners of War; among the latter, 'were the Sieur *Patocki*, Palatine of *Kiow*, his 'Lady and all her Children; Sieur *Tarlo*, Maſter 'Cook of the Crown; and ſeveral other Perſons of 'Note; who were all diſarm'd, and their Horſes 'taken, as were alſo 10000 Waggons that made 'up their Barricade: The *Sweeds* had left their 'Baggage at *Kaliſh*, under a Guard of 300 Men, 'and after the Action, 500 Horſe eſcaped thither, 'but they were all afterwards obliged to ſur-'render at Diſcretion. However, his Majeſty 'was ſo generous, as to reſtore the Baggage to 'the Officers. All the Enemy's Artillery and 'Ammunition was taken. The *Saxon* Cavalry 'took 19 Standards and Colours from the *Swedes*, '44 from the *Poles*, and 4 Pair of Kettle Drums; 'the reſt were taken by the *Poles* in our Army, 'and the *Muſcovites*. This Victory is ſo com-'pleat, that 'tis believ'd, not above 2000 of the 'Enemy eſcap'd. All the Troops, as well *Poles*, 'and *Saxons*, as *Muſcovites*, behaved themſelves 'in this Action, with great Courage and Intripi-'dity; and all their reſpective Generals ſigna-'liz'd themſelves in Emulation of each other. 'Our Loſs is very inconſiderable, for we had 'only one Officer of Note kill'd, *viz.* Colonel

'*Guerſdorf*

'*Guerſdorf*; this Victory is the more remarkable, becauſe his *Poliſh* Majeſty's Troops had undergone great Fatiegues, by their continual Marches and Countermarches, during the Campaign; whereas the Enemy's had been a long time in Quarters of Refreſhment.

'HERE follows a Liſt of the Priſoners taken from the *Swedes*, both in the Field of Battle, and in the Town of *Kaliſh*, beſides the *Poles* that were taken the next Day, in the foremention'd Brigade of Waggons, *viz.* General *Marderyelt*, who commanded in Chief: 4 Colonels, *viz.* *Marſchal*, *Muller*, *Horn* of the Foot, *Horn* of the Horſe, 5 Lieutenant Colonels, *viz.* *Guildenſtern*, *Raad*, *Horn*, *Iſſendorff*, and *Mumand*; 4 Majors, to wit, *Bornfold*, *Openbaſch*, *Schelling*, and *Rurſt*; 27 Captains of Foot, and 4 of Horſe, 39 Lieutenants, 21 Enſigns, 4 Adjutants, 294 Subaltern Officers, 1600 Soldiers, making in all 2007 Priſoners taken in the Battle, thoſe taken in the Town of *Kaliſh*, are, 1 Major, 1 Captain of Horſe, 16 Captains of Foot, 19 Lieutenants, 15 Cornets, 6 Enſigns, 4 Miniſters, 18 Subaltern Officers, and 800 Soldiers, in all 894 Priſoners; which with thoſe taken in the Battle, amount to 2901. We had 806 *Germans* and *Saxons* kill'd, and 800 wounded.

THE great Share his *Czariſh* Majeſty's Troops had in this Victory, was acknowledg'd by King *Auguſtus* himſelf, till he found it neceſſary for Reaſons of State to Cancel all the Obligations which he ow'd to his Supporters, and Conſequently to leſſen the Merit of the Support, which they had given him; but as he own'd to have in his

Army

Army 9000 *Muſcovite* Soldiers, I mean Regular Troops under Prince *Menzickoff*; ſo 'tis known he had alſo as many *Coſſacks* and *Circaſſians* of his *Czariſh* Majeſty's Subjects, who in their way did him very good Service on that occaſion.

BUT now we come to the Tranſactions of King *Auguſtus*'s Life, which are the meaneſt part of his Hiſtory, Namely, that of abandoning the Crown of *Poland*, quitting his Alliance with the *Czar* of *Muſcovy*, who had never forſaken him in his greateſt Diſtreſs, and yielding to the loweſt Steps, which his inſulting Enemies could put upon him.

IT muſt be confeſt that the Plenipotentiaries on either Side, had ſign'd the Treaty at *Alt Ranſtadt*, nay, the Peace was concluded and ſign'd four Days before the Battle of *Kaliſh* was fought; otherwiſe, perhaps King *Auguſtus* would have ventur'd with his victorious Army to have march'd directly againſt the *Swedes*, who tho' they were indeed in poſſeſſion of the open Country of the *Electorate*, yet had no fortify'd Place in their Hands, nor above 15 or 16000 Men in their Army, whereas the King of *Poland* could in leſs than 12 Days have had 60000 Men in his Army, beſides what Troops he had in *Saxony*.

BUT it was too late, and King *Auguſtus* made it a point of Honour to ſtand to the Agreement his Plenipotentiaries had made, however diſhonourable it might be; ſo he laid down his Arms at once, and gave up the Kingdom of *Poland*, and all his Friend, and Intereſt there to the Mercy of a Mercenary, who the *Poles* diſpis'd moſt heartily, tho' many of them were oblig'd to call him King, and this was the Condition of things when his *Czariſh* Majeſty return'd to his Army in *Lithuania*.

BUT this no way diſcourag'd the *Czar*, he reſolv'd to Support the Party that had ſtood for the Liberty of their Country againſt the *Swedes*, and to this purpoſe he publiſh'd a Declaration, or Memorial to the *Poliſh* Nobility, and having receiv'd a formal Notification of the Treaty concluded by King *Auguſtus* with the King of *Sweden*, he wrote Letters to the General of the Crown, the Primate of the Kingdom, and other Grandees, who were in the Party of King *Auguſtus*, to repreſent to them, That he concluded an 'Alliance with the Republick, and not in parti-'cular with *Auguſtus*, and that he was reſolved 'to perform all the Articles thereof, and aſſiſt 'the Republick with all his Forces againſt the '*Swedes*, who being not ſatisfy'd with having oblig'd 'King *Auguſtus* to abdicate his Crown, would im-'poſe a King of their own Election upon them. 'His *Czariſh* Majeſty promiſes therein to repair 'ſhortly to *Lemberg* to concert Meaſures with 'the Republick, and in the mean time to ſend ſuch 'an Army as will be ſufficient to enable the *Poles* 'to vindicate their independency; the Primate 'having held a great Council with the Officers of 'the Crown, has appointed a great Council to 'meet at *Lembergh* the 17th of the next Month, 'and has declared the Throne vacant, bidding 'all the *Poles* to acknowledge the *Palatine* of *Po-'zen*, under the Name of *Staniſlaus*, the Primate 'alſo has written to the Emperor, the Queen of '*England*, the Kings of *Denmark*, and *Pruſſia*, the 'States General, the Pope and other Potentates, 'to acquaint them with the vacancy of the Throne. 'The General of the Crown, has alſo publiſhed 'univerſalia, forbidding the Forces of the Re-'publick to receive any Orders from King *Au-*

'*guſtus*,

'*guſtus*, or King *Staniſlaus*, and promiſing a re-
'ward of 5000 Rixdollars to ſuch who ſhall de-
'liver up alive the Sieur *Smigielſki*, or 2000 to
'ſuch who ſhall deliver him dead; that Gentle-
'man has lately embrac'd the Party of King
'*Staniſlaus*, and ſet at Liberty the Weywood of
'*Kaliſh*, which has ſo provoked Prince *Menzic-*
'*koff*, that he has caus'd him to be hang'd in Ef-
'figie.

IN purſuit of theſe Reſolutions, his Majeſty came in Perſon to *Zolkiew* in *Poland*, the 11th of *January*, 1707. And being inform'd by his Mi-
'niſters of what had paſs'd during his Abſence;
'he order'd them to write to all the Generals of
'the Army, and of the Crown, and to the Sena-
'tors to invite them to repair to him, he alſo or-
'der'd univerſaly in his own Name to be print-
'ed for confirming thoſe already publiſh'd by
'his Miniſters; the 9th he went to Church attended
'by Prince *Menzickoff*, and other Officers and
'Generals, and afterwards Din'd in Publick;
'the 10th and 11th were ſpent in Conferences a-
'bout the diſpoſing of the Army, and in ſending
'private Diſpatches to divers foreign Courts.

PURSUANT to this Summons of the *Czar* of *Muſcovy*, the 7th of *February* the great Aſſembly of Senators, Generals and great Officers, that is to ſay, the *Poliſh* Nobility met together at *Lemberg*, there to conſult with his *Czariſh* Majeſty what was to be done in the preſent Conjuncture: This Grand Council, for ſuch they were call'd, open'd their firſt Seſſion, by going in formal Proceſſion to Church to implore the Bleſſing of Heaven on their Proceedings, then they repair'd to the Hall of Council, where ſeveral Pathetic Speeches were made to explain to one another

Author the Reaſon of their Aſſembly, and repreſent the preſent State of their Country, all of them concurring to declare the Throne vacant.

'AFTER theſe things they renew'd the Confe-
'deracy of *Sendomir*, as the moſt effectual Means,
'to put themſelves in a Condition to aſſert their
'Liberties; they ſeem'd very unanimous in their
'Reſolutions; but had not yet taken any Mea-
'ſures for a new Election. And King *Auguſtus*
'having not notify'd unto them his Renuncia-
'tion of the Crown; the Aſſembly ſeem'd to act
'rather, as if their King was Priſoner amongſt
'his Enemies, or abſent, than if the Throne
'were Vacant. Prince *Dolhorucki*, Chief Mini-
'ſter of State to the *Czar*, had then his firſt
'publick Audience of the Council, to which
'he was conducted by one of the Chief Officers
'of the Crown, with 7 Coaches, and a Detach-
'ment of the Cavalry of the General of the
'Crown; he was placed in the Congreſs, be-
'tween the two chief Miniſters of the Repub-
'lick; and delivered a Letter to the Aſſembly
'from the *Czar*, and then made a Speech in the
'*Poliſh* Language, importing, That notwith-
'ſtanding the Republick ſeem'd reduced to the
'laſt Extremities, by the Retreat of King *Au-*
'*guſtus*, yet, they were ſtill in a Condition, to
'retrieve their Affairs and Glory, if they would
'concur in the Meaſures that ſhould be propoſed
'unto them on the Part of the *Czar*, a faithful
'Ally of *Poland*; whom no private Advantage
'whatſoever, that may be propoſed unto him,
'ſhall be able to ſeparate from the Intereſt of
'the Republick: Concluding with a pathetical
'Exhortation, to take vigorous Meaſures againſt
'their Common Enemy; and aſſuring them that

'the *Czar* would reſtore to the Republick, the 'Places in the *Ukraine*, that formerly belonged 'to *Poland*, and furniſh the Sums he had promi-'ſed for paying of the Army of the Crown. The Primate of the Kingdom Anſwered, in the Name of the Republick: 'And having return'd 'Thanks to the *Czar* for his Affection and Friend-'ſhip, he aſſured his Miniſter that the Council 'would not ſeparate 'till they had taken ſuch Re-'ſolutions, as the Glory of their Nation, and 'the diſtreſſed Conditon of their Country re-'quired from them. Then Prince *Dolhorucki* was 'conducted back to his Houſe with the ſame Cere-'mony: The 19th his *Czariſh* Majeſty with his el-'deſt Son Prince *Alexander*, Prince *Menzickoff*, and 'ſome other Perſons of Note arrived there from '*Zolkiew*; he was Complimented upon his arrival 'by the Primate, and other Grandees, and nob-'ly entertain'd by the General of the Crown; 'the 20th that Prince aſſiſted at the Ceremony 'of the Conſecration of the Biſhop of *Cujavia* 'perform'd in the Cathedral, and preſented that 'Prelate with a Crucifix, valued at 15000 Rix-'dollars; the 21ſt, there was a long Conference 'between the Miniſters of that Prince, and the 'Council of *Poland*; but the Reſolutions taken 'therein were kept very private: His Majeſty 'with the Prince and Miniſters, ſet out the next 'day to return to *Zolkiew*, and Prince *Dolhourcki*, 'continued there as his Plenipotentiary, the 'Count *de Denhoff*, Governour of *Crawcow* or-'dered the Fortification of that place to be aug-'mented with all poſſible ſpeed, and has in con-'cert with the *Czar*, order'd the Neighbouring 'Diſtricts to furniſh without delay a quantity of

'Fo-

'Forage, and Corn it being reſolved to make a 'great Magazine in that City.

The following Letter was alſo written by the *Czar* to the great General, and dated from *Zolkiew* the 7th of *February*.

THE King of Sweden, *having by Force and Management, compaſs'd his Deſign againſt King* Auguſtus, *ſeeks with no leſs Cunning to gain his Ends of us and the Republick, and to render Fruitleſs our good Diſpoſitions to maintain the common Intereſt. In this View, his Miniſters in all foreign Courts inſinuate, that he is treating of a Peace ſeparately with us. We do not deny, that (when) formerly, at* Seoliza, *ſeveral Miniſters of foreign Potentates, ſounded our Inclination to Peace; we intimated, that out of Chriſtian Duty, and to ſpare the Effuſion of Blood, we ſhould always be ready to hearken to all Propoſitions of Peace which the King of* Sweden *ſhould offer, but on Condition, that ſuch Peace ſhould be negotiated openly, and with the Conſent and Participation of the Republick, and concluded by Commiſſioners appointed by all the Nations concern'd. We never did, or ſhall entertain any Thoughts of treating of Peace ſecretly, by the Intervention of any foreign Courts; prefering to all Intereſt and Advantage, the Reputation, Honour, and Inviolable good Faith of a Monarch, in the ſtrict Obſervation of all his Alliances. We therefore, aſſure your Lordſhip, that we have not yet enter'd into any Manner of Negotiation of Peace with* Sweden, *nor, for the future, will enter into any, otherwiſe than we have already declared, with the Participation and Conſent of the Eſtates of the Republick; being abſolutely determin'd to keep inviolably*

the Alliance and Guarantee we are ingaged in with the Republick.

In Purſuit of the *Czar's* Reſolutions to aſſiſt the *Poles*, we find that his Majeſty's Troops were very numerous in *Poland*.

The Body of *Muſcovits* in *Pruſſia* conſiſted of 18000 Men, and were augmented conſiderably; the City of *Dantzick* were not a little alarm'd at it, eſpecially ſince they receiv'd a threatning Letter from the *Czar* on Account of their acknowledging *Staniſlaus*. The Body of *Muſcovites* about *Thorn* were ſo ſtrong, that they oblig'd Prince *Lubomirſky* to retire with his Troops into great *Poland*. The *Muſcovites* alſo form'd another Body near *Caliſh*, making near 30000 Men; and a Fourth about *Gueſna*. During theſe things the *Czar* ſeeing the *Poles* unſteady in their Reſolutions, and diſputing Trifles with their beſt Friends, went himſelf in Perſon to the great Council of Senators, which were adjourn'd from *Lemberg*, and met at *Lublin*; where is *Czariſh* Majeſty arrived the 20th of *May*, 1707, with a Guard of 3000 Dragoons. The Senators had all agreed as above, that upon the King of *Poland's* having abdicated the Crown, they were in a State of *Interregnum*, and that the Throne was vacant; but could never be brought to fill up the Vacancy, and elect a new King, which his *Czariſh* Majeſty juſtly thought was the only way to engage them heartily, ſo that they might be depended on.

But they put it always off, alledging that King *Auguſtus* had not ſignified his Reſolution of abandoning the Crown to them in Particular, and therefore they ought to ſend a Deputation to him

him, to have his laſt Anſwer from his own Mouth.

THIS the *Czar* took for groſs Triffling with him, and ſuch indeed it was; for they had their Articles of Peace between the King of *Sweden* and the King of *Poland*, publiſh'd by the ſaid two King's reſpectively, and the Letter which the King of *Sweden* oblig'd the King of *Poland* to write to King *Staniſlaus*, owning him for King of *Poland*, all theſe were before them, and yet they made Excuſes to put off a new Election of a King.

THEY were indeed, all of them willing to have his *Czariſh* Majeſty to advance with his Army, and propoſed to concert Meaſures to act againſt the King of *Sweden* with joint Forces, and Endeavour to bring the King of *Sweden* to a deciſive Battle; which his *Czariſh* Majeſty was willing enough to do, as ſoon as a new King ſhould be nam'd, but did not think any other Step leſs than that, could ſufficiently aſſure him of the Fidelity and Steadineſs of the *Poles*, who in Caſe of a Battle, he knew well enough might have an Opportunity to make their Peace at his Majeſty's Expence; and indeed, thoſe Uncertainties produced ſuch a general Diſtaſte, and gave ſuch a plain Ground of Miſtruſt, that they, the *Poles*, only ſought a Delay, and to ſee what Meaſures the King of *Sweden* would take, or whether he reſolved to bring his Army again into *Poland*, or not, that they might have Time to take up with the Strongeſt; that his *Czariſh* Majeſty, from this Time, begun to ſee plainly, he had nothing but his own Power to depend upon; and that the *Poles* were not to be truſted; and this brought in the End, all the Conſultations,

Confederacies and Pretences of Defending the Liberties of *Poland* to nothing, and ended as ſuch generally do, in their falling all into the Hands of their Enemies; and being oblig'd to ſubmit to King *Staniſlaus*, as we ſhall preſently ſhew.

BUT his *Czariſh* Majeſty who knew them too well, to be drawn into any Snare by them; acted an open, plain, and fair Part with them; and let them know, that ſince they would not do their Duty, and were not mov'd either by their preſent or future Intereſt, he would take Care to depend upon himſelf only, and take ſuch Meaſures as he ſhould think fit. But whereas their famous Champion *Smegielski*, who had done ſo many gallant Exploits againſt the *Swedes* in the Cauſe of King *Auguſtus*, had now made his Peace, and was gone over to *Staniſlaus*, and had committed ſome Hoſtilities againſt the *Ruſſians*: The *Ruſſian* General caus'd him to be hang'd in Effigie, as a Traytor to his Country, and put a Reward upon his Head, to any who ſhould bring him in alive or dead.

AT the ſame Time, his *Czariſh* Majeſty ſeeing himſelf thus uſed, by King *Auguſtus*, even juſt after his Troops had obtain'd a great Victory for him, the ſaid King *Auguſtus*; and that notwithſtanding all this, he had not only abandon'd his Confederacy or Alliances with his *Czariſh* Majeſty, but had joyn'd his Enemy the King of *Sweden*, and obliged himſelf to act Contrary to the Intereſt he had eſpouſed; and alſo that King *Auguſtus* had ſent Letters and Memorials to *England*, to *Holland*, and other Places, to excuſe and palliate the Treachery of his Friendſhip. I ſay, ſeeing himſelf thus uſed by King *Auguſtus*; his *Czariſh* Majeſty thought it needful to write to the ſame

ſame Powers to expoſe the Ingratitude of King *Auguſtus*, and to let them ſee, what in the Courſe of the late War, his *Czariſh* Majeſty had done for him; the Copy of this Letter to the Queen of *Great Britain*, being as follows, that to the States General, being *mutatis mutandis*, much the ſame.

Moſt honoured and beloved SISTER.

ALTHOUGH 'tis not unknown to your Royal Majeſty, yet we have judged it neceſſary as Affairs now ſtand in a Friendly and Brotherly manner, to acquaint you by this Letter, and as briefly as poſſible with the Services we have done King Auguſtus, *from his firſt Election to the Kingdom of* Poland, *having by our powerful Endeavours for the common Benefit of that Crown, hindered the Prince of* Conti, *who had been choſen before by part of the Republick from taking poſſeſſion of it, and even ſent a numerous Army againſt the Prince of* Conti's *Party, for the uſe and Service of thoſe Senators, that ſided with King* Auguſtus, *before any League had been concluded with him, or his Enterance into* Poland; *the Army was immediately upon his arrival put under his command, that he might be able to puniſh his Enemies, beſides which we threatned the contrary Party with Fire and Sword; upon Apprehenſion hereof, many were forced to acknowledge him, and ſo by our Aſſiſtance he was firmly Settled upon the Throne; afterwards by his particular Intreaties, and a Meſſage by General* Carlowitz *in the Tear* 1700, *we concluded with him an Alliance againſt the King of* Sweden, *in which there was no Subſidies of Money promiſed him, moreover many Affronts and Injuries having*

been done us at the beginning of the War by the Crown of Sweden, *we were prevail'd with by the earneſt Sollicitations of his Miniſter General* Langa *in an unproper Seaſon, it being the latter End of Autumn for his Relief, and to make the Enemy turn their Arms againſt us, to begin to attack* Narva, *and then his Forces, contrary to his Promiſe, leaving ours in Action, went into Quarters in* Poland, *and* Courland, *on which occaſion our Forces ſuffer'd no ſmall Loſs, notwithſtanding which, a League being renewed with him at* Birſa, *in* 1701, *not a ſmall Sum of Money was Lent him, beſides which, we aſſiſted him with* 20000 *Foot, nevertheleſs this ſignified nothing, nor were our Arms made uſe of according to the Treaty, but by the Intrigues of the* French *Ambaſſador* du Heiron, *to whom contrary to our Agreement and Perſonal Proteſtations confirm'd by us, full power was at that time given to Treat about a ſeparate Peace, thoſe our Forces without neceſſity were greatly fatigued and the Enemy permitted to paſs the* Dwina, *diſmiſs'd without being ſupplied with Proviſions, during their March, for which the ſaid King received Money from us, which cauſed great Numbers of them to periſh, and others to Deſert: Notwithſtanding all this, upon his repeated Aſſurance, and Meſſages, we renewed a League with him in the Year* 1702, *and promiſed* 300000 *Rubles for the uſe of his Forces, and* 12000 *Foot to be maintain'd at our own Charges, which we faithfully perform'd; and although the Subſides, and Auxilliaries were not then ſpecified in that Treaty, nor whether the ſame ſhould be given Yearly, yet we ſent him every Year no leſs then the abovementioned Sum, not reckoning other immenſe Charges, we were at, for the preſerving the Republick in his Intereſt; but inſtead of imploying the Forces againſt the Enemy, he made them March to*

and

and fro in Poland, *whereby they were very much fatigued; and afterwards parting from them without any occaſion, he permitted them to be driven into* Saxony, *together with the* Saxons, *whereby without any neceſſity half of them were unaccountably loſt, and the reſt were forced to die with Hunger; and altho' free Winter Quarters were promis'd them in the Treaty, yet on the contrary, 'twas forbidden to ſupply them with Bread in their Quarters: Upon which our Miniſter extraordinary,* Van Patkul, *then reſiding at his Court, and chief General of thoſe Forces, in order to preſerve them from utter and certain Ruin, agreed with the Emperor's Miniſters to put them into his imperial Majeſty's Service, for which by the Suggeſtions of the ſaid King's wicked and treacherous* Saxon *Miniſters, he was put under Arreſt contrary to the Law of Nations, and without our conſent, was caſt like a Traytor into a loathſome Priſon, altho' we were oblig'd for the Intereſt of the ſaid King* Auguſtus, *as well as before the Affront offered to our Miniſter, as after the going of the ſaid King out of* Poland, *in order to preſerve him upon his Throne, and defend the Republick of* Poland *againſt the* Swediſh *Forces, to leave all our Armies to Act for his Intereſt; and at the deſire of the Republick by their extraordinary Embaſſy to March with all our Forces into* Poland, *where they were oblig'd to be maintain'd to this Day to our great Charge in our own Pay; yet notwithſtanding all this, his Generals at his going out of* Saxony, *with our and their Troops, ſuffered themſelves, not without ſuſpicion of Treachery, to be beaten without any Reſiſtance; and our Forces were ſo Deſerted, that only* 1600 *of them remained, and theſe with much a-do ſaved themſelves, and return'd into* Saxony, *although King* Auguſtus *upon our repeated Inſtances and Sollicitations, promis'd*

mis'd both before and after his infamous Peace, by his Meſſages and Proteſtations made to us by General Goltz, *either to deliver up to us, or ſecretly to ſet at Liberty our ſaid Miniſter, General* Van Patkul; *yet nothing was performed, notwithſtanding which, without regarding the intolerable Falſhoods of the ſaid King* Auguſtus, *his Non-performances of the Treaty made with us, his impriſoning our Miniſter, and violating the Laws of the Nations, and tending to ſeparate Peace, as well by the Sieur* Octima, *as by Count* Koningmark, *and afterwards in Writing by their Secretary* Nemitz *and* Figgſtone *from the beginning of the War, and after their enterance into* Saxony, *of which Tranſactions we had Notice given us by ſeveral of our faithful Friends, and notwithſtanding we had thoſe Treaties in our Hands, yet we did not leave to aſſiſt him, both with our Forces and Money; and in the laſt Compaign, though the Seaſon of the Year was ſo far advanced, it being the latter End of Autum, yet being deſir'd to draw the Enemy back, and harraſs his Army, we ſent our Cavalry under the command of our General Prince* Menzikoff *to join him, and his* Saxon *and* Poliſh *Forces, who Marching towards* Caliſh, *met with the* Swediſh *General* Mardefelt, *and the* Poles *of the contrary Party under the command of the* Waywode *of* Kiow, *and by the Aſſiſtance of the moſt High, entirely defeated them, and took their chief General and many other inferior Officers, and Soldiers, Priſoners of War, whereby all great* Poland *was brought under his Obedience; after this, being fully ſupplyed with all Neceſſaries, we deſign'd, by the Help of the moſt High, to act ſtill in his Defence, which was begun with the Action at* Wyburg *in* Finland, *and did expect many good Conſequences from that Defeat, and rely'd on a ſtrict Obſervance of the Treaty, purſuant to the*

Aſſur-

Aſſurances we had receiv'd from him in two Letters, written ſince the Battle, the firſt dated the 31ſt. of October, *and the ſecond the 20th of* November; *but ſaw at firſt, that he begun to take away from our ſaid General, Prince* Menzikoff, *the General Officers, and other Priſoners we had taken, giving his Royal Word, and many Aſſurances, that he either would exchange them for our Generals and other Officers, detain'd in* Sweden; *for the Performance whereof, General* Mardefelt, *with the Reſt of the Officers, gave alſo their Parole, and confirm'd the ſame to our General; or, if it were not poſſible to effect this Exchange, that he would reſtore the ſaid Priſoners into our Hands; but contrary to all his Promiſes, he let them go without any Exchange. After this, we underſtood to our great Aſtoniſhment, that he had already concluded a diſhonourable Peace with the King of* Sweden, *and* Leſcheinsky; *yielded up all his Rights to the* Crown *of* Poland, *and ſurrendering all to the Pleaſures of his Enemies, without giving us any previous Notice, that we might have provided for our own Security, in Return of the innumerable Favours done him by us; but what ſhows his Ingratitude to the higheſt Degree, is, that the Peace was confirm' by him many Days before the Battle. After which, by his Letters, he gave his earneſt Aſſurances of his firm Adherence to the Treaty; the Inconſtancy of his Promiſes, Non-performance of the League, and Forgetfulneſs of our many Favours and Aſſiſtance, we leave to the righteous Judgement and Vengeance of Almighty God, and upon whoſe powerful Aſſiſtance in our juſt Cauſe, we firmly rely; proteſting againſt the ſaid King* Auguſtus *and his Subjects; and Leave alſo to all the World to Judge impartially of our faithful Performance of the League to the very laſt. Moreover, we are extreamly ſurpriz'd, at three Articles*

in

in the aforeſaid League, viz. the 11th, 12th, and 20th, in the firſt of which, he, the ſaid, late King Auguſtus, *promiſed to deliver up our publick Miniſter and Plenipotentiary reſiding at his Court, into the Hands of our Enemies, in an unheard of Manner, and to his utter Ruin, upon Pretence of his being a* Swediſh *Deſerter. Secondly, in the 12th Article he maliciouſly obliges himſelf to deliver up to the Enemy, as Priſoners of War, the Remains of* 12 *Regiments,* viz. 1600 *Auxiliary Troops, who for his Preſervation have often expos'd their Lives; and were there ſent by him as Auxiliaries into the Empire; which is not only contrary to divine and human Laws, but even to the Cuſtoms and Laws of Barbarians:* Thirdly, *In the 20th Article, he ſtipulates for himſelf, in Caſe of Peace between us and the Enemy, full Satisfaction. And afterwards, he the ſaid* Auguſtus, *in that Treaty, obliges himſelf, to procure your Royal Majeſty Guarantee, therefore we in a brotherly and friendly Manner, deſire your Royal Majeſty, that through your innate and wonted Goodneſs, you would be pleaſed not to conſent thereunto, nor countenance his diſhonourable Actions. It would have been neceſſary we ſhould, before this Time, have exhibited this our Proteſtation, both to your Royal Majeſty, and other Potentates in writing, which we abſolutely would have performed by our Miniſters, had we not been deluded, as we have made it appear, by the freſh Aſſurance he ſent us by Major General* Goltz, *who among many other falſe Aſſurances of Friendſhip engaged for the Performance of the League, and ſolemnly aſſured us, that our Miniſter ſhould never be deliver'd up, and that in Caſe, it ſhould come to the laſt Extremety, King* Auguſtus, *ſhould either ſet him privately at Liberty, or detain him in* Koningſtein *'till the Departure of the* Swedes; *and afterwards, deliver him*

into

into our Hands. But we have ſince, with Wonder, and bitter Grief underſtood, that that Prince foregoing his Honour, has deliver'd up our innocent publick Miniſter, contrary to the Law of Nations, and even Cuſtoms of Barbarians, *and without the Fear of God, into the Hands of his Enemies. For which Reaſon, we have the rather thought fit to acquaint your Majeſty with all the Premiſes; and in a friendly and brotherly Manner, to deſire, that you would be pleaſed, by your good Offices, to procure the Liberty of our ſaid Miniſter,* Van Patkul, *or at leaſt, that he may be uſed by the King of* Sweden, *as our Miniſter, and not as his Subject, which we are confident, his* Swediſh *Majeſty will grant, at your Royal Majeſty's Deſire, whereby he will gain, with all the World, the Name of a magnanimous Monarch, inſtead of giving an Example of ſo wicked and barbarous an Action. But, if on the Contrary,* Van Patkul *be hardly dealt with, and not uſed as our Miniſter, we ſhall be forced to ſeek Opportunities to return the like Uſage. Truſting that in our juſt Cauſe, we ſhall receive all Aſſiſtance from the Moſt High. We hope likewiſe, by your Majeſty's good Offices, and others, our Subjects detain'd at* Stockholm, *and now under Arreſt,* viz. *the ſame Number and of the ſame Rank, as thoſe that were permitted to go upon their Parole from our General, Prince* Menzikoff, *namely, his General* Mardefeldt, *and other Officers, and Soldiers, by Order of King* Auguſtus; *and on the Parole of the reſt of the* Swediſh *Officers. The ſaid* Auguſtus, *having thus, Evidently before all the World, violated his Vows, and the Laws of Nations, by his unheard of diſhonourable Proceedings, contrary to the Dictates of Conſcience; as appears by thoſe Treaties, we ſhall be oblig'd to do our ſelves the Juſtice, and ſeek for entire Satisfaction from him, as*

Elector

Elector of Saxony, *and a Member of the* Roman *Empire, which our fair Proceedings and Stedfaſtneſs to the League entitiled us too. The rather, becauſe by the 20th Article, contrary to his own Conſcience, he propoſes to ſeek for full Satisfaction from us; the remaining Part of our Auxiliary Troops now upon the* Rhine, *we put under your Royal Majeſty's Protection; and deſire that they may either enter your Majeſty's Service, or that of your Allies; or at leaſt we entreat your good Offices, that they may have Leave to return Home with Safety; hoping that you will favour us with your Concurrence and Aſſiſtance in theſe our juſt Deſires; We the Imperial Czariſh Majeſty. Pray God to Grant, your Royal Majeſty many Years, Health, and a happy Reign, over your Majeſty's Dominions.*

Given at *Zolkew*, *April* 27, and in the 25th, Year of our Reign,

Your Majeſty's Affectionate

Loving Brother,

PETER

THIS

THIS Letter is too ſignificant, and the Subſiſtance of it of too much Weight, to be paſs'd over, it being an Abridgement of the Conduct of his *Czariſh* Majeſty, in Aid of the King of *Poland*, and of his treacherous Return, and alſo a kind of Summary of the State of Things between them at that Time.

THERE are two Caſes mention'd in this Letter, which have not yet been ſpoken to; the one is, That of the 1600 *Ruſſians*, who had been put into the Service of the Confederates in the Empire, and were acting upon the *Rhine*, as Part of King *Auguſtus*'s Quota to the grand Alliance againſt *France*; and the other, is that of General *Patkull*, who the *Czar* here declares to be his Miniſter and Ambaſſador to King *Auguſtus*; certain it is, that King *Auguſtus* yielded both theſe Points to the King of *Sweden*, that is to ſay, as far as lay in his Power; he gave up the *Ruſſian* Troops upon the *Rhine* to the King of *Sweden*; but the Emperor, who had more Humanity and Honour, than to be a Party to ſo diſhonourable an Action, ſtood out ſo long, 'till the ſaid Regiments had Opportunity to retire from thence, and to diſband, and by ſmall Parties to paſs through the Imperial Countries into *Poland*, and ſo to their own Country. But as for General *Patkull*, he deliver'd him up to the King of *Sweden*, who, deaf to all Interceſſion, and not regarding him as a Publick Miniſter, but as a Traytor, cauſed him without Mercy, to be put to Death, by breaking him a-live, and that with ſome extraordinary Marks of Cruelty, ſuch as particularly cauſing his own Nephew, an Officer then in the King of *Sweden*'s Service, to be the Perſon to ſee the Execution perform'd

perform'd, to the Aſtoniſhment and Horror of all that heard it.

BUT to return to his *Czariſh* Majeſty, he now found that nothing was to be done with the *Poles*, and that he muſt reſolve to ſtand upon his own Feet, againſt the King of *Sweden*, who having encreaſed his Army, in *Saxony* to 50000 Men, by raiſing Men almoſt over the whole Empire, was in Motion towards *Poland*. I ſay, finding this, his Majeſty leaving 40000 Horſe in *Poland*, to Countenance the *Poles* if they would be ſteady, and diſcharge themſelves as was their Duty: Went himſelf into *Lithuania*, to draw his Forces together there, in order to be in a Condition to Face the King of *Sweden*, or, withdraw the reſt of his Troops, as he ſhould find Occaſion.

THE King of *Sweden* left *Saxony*, the Beginning of *September*, to the great Joy of the Poor People there, who had been terribly impoveriſh'd by their long Stay in the Country. They advanced by long Marches through *Sileſia*, and came the 10th of *October*, to *Caſimir* in *Poland*, where the barbarous Execution of Count *Patkull*, abovemention'd, was perform'd, being the firſt Town they halted at, on their entering *Poland*.

HIS *Czariſh* Majeſty being, as I have ſaid, gone into *Lithuania*, had his head Quarters at *Wilda*; before the withdrawing his Army, he ordered the Lands of the *Palatines*, in the Intereſt of the Uſurper *Staniſlaus* to be laid Waſte, which his Enemies repreſented as a mighty Injury; altho' he therein only follow'd the Example of the *Swedes*, who had ſo often done the like in an extraordinary manner, to the Lands and Eſtates of the Nobility who adheard to the Intereſt of their Country.

THIS

THIS was the Caſe wherein the King of *Sweden*'s Party pretended the *Czar* had rifled the Seats of the Nobility in *Poland*, and carry'd away the Pictures, Statues, Orange Trees, *&c.* into *Muſcovy*, as alſo ſeveral Extraordinary Libraries with many valuable Manuſcripts, and other Curioſities, or Rarities in Nature and of Art, part of which, if it were ſo, was relative only to the Houſes of his Enemies, which by the Laws of War he had Right to, they being now in Arms againſt him.

THE Diet or Aſſembly at *Lublin*, continued ſome time longer, and ſeem'd to adhere to their former Reſolutions, and to ſupport their Liberties, againſt King *Staniſlaus* and the *Swedes*, but as the *Czar* had no Confidence in them, ſo indeed, he had no Reaſon, as the Event ſhew'd afterwards; for the King of *Sweden* advancing, they all ſeparated and diſappear'd, leaving his *Czariſh* Majeſty to ſtand by himſelf, as it may be ſaid, in the War with the King of *Sweden*, which how well he was able to do, and how Ill they deſerv'd it of him, will ſoon appear in the Conſequence of the Story.

NOT that they ever fell in heartily with the King of *Sweden*, or with *Staniſlaus*, which made the Revolution which follow'd, the more eaſie to the King of *Poland*. But the King of *Sweden* coming with ſo formidable a Power, back into *Poland*, and bending the firſt of his March towards *Thorn*, and the Towns on the lower *Viſtula*; it was no more Queſtion'd for ſome Time, but that his *Swediſh* Majeſty, would in the firſt Place, clear the Country of all King *Staniſlaus*'s Enemies, and uſe them with the uttmoſt Severity.

BUT the King of *Sweden*, whoſe dark Hours were juſt now begining, and who, as ſome have

obſerv'd, ſcarce ever took one right Step, after his coming from *Saxony*, but delay'd his Proceedings, either one Way or other, for near three Months, hovering on that Side of *Poland* next the Borders of *Sileſia*, 'till he had brought the Emperor to Execute fully a Treaty which had been made between them, in the behalf of the Proteſtants of *Sileſia*.

AND indeed, he was oblig'd to ſtay thus long about *Poſen*, and *Caliſh*, and thoſe Parts, to lay up Magazins, and Stores of Proviſions for his Army; for the *Ruſſians* had ruined the Country with a Deſign to render it difficult to him to ſubſiſt, and it had the deſired Effect; for after he begun to extend himſelf, there was no Forrage to be found, ſufficient to ſupply his Army on any conſiderable Occaſion, and this made the King of *Sweden* lye ſtill, 'till the Month of *February* at leaſt.

DURING all this Time, things hung in ſuſpenſe between the King of *Sweden*, and the *Czar* of *Muſcovy*; ſeveral Powers, and Princes, ſought to mediate a Peace between his *Czariſh* Majeſty and the King of *Sweden*; Nor was the *Czar* averſe to a Peace, upon equitable and juſt Conditions; but the King of *Sweden* breathed nothing but War, and declar'd, or the World was ſo unjuſt as to publiſh it in his Name, that nothing ſhould ſatisfy him now, but dethroning the *Czar* of *Muſcovy*, as he had dethron'd the King of *Poland*; So that the *Czar* might be truly ſaid to fight for his Crown, as he had fought before for his Friend the King of *Poland*, and for the Peace of the Republick.

IN Perſuance of this wicked Principle of Revenge, he turn'd his Arms froom *Poland*, not yet half

half ſubdued, and left his new pretended King, to ſtrugle with a half reduced Nobility, and a divided Nation, and profeſs'd to make War againſt neither ſmall nor great, but againſt his *Czariſh* Majeſty in Perſon.

THIS chymerical Piece of Perſonality in War, drew is *Swediſh* Majeſty, otherwiſe a moſt gallant and experienc'd Prince, into ſo many wild and deſperate Undertakings, as have never been heard of before; and into ſuch Miſtakes, to ſay no worſe of them, as never any General of an Army run into, and which at laſt ended in his utter Ruin, and overthrow, as will preſently appear.

HIS *Czariſh* Majeſty, diſpiſing the Threatening or *Gaſconade* of Depoſing him; but not at all Diſpiſing, either the Perſon or Armies of the King of *Sweden*, had no more to do than to draw off his Armies from *Poland*, keep his new Conqueſts well guarded, and provided, and bring all his Forces into ſuch Poſts, as that he might ſooneſt draw together his Power, when he ſaw where the Cloud would break; wait to ſee which Way this new Invader would go about this great Work of entering the *Ruſſian* Empire, in order to bring to paſs the Revolution he had projected.

IT was with ſome Reaſon that his *Czariſh* Majeſty thought the firſt Step that the King of *Sweden* would take, would be to march into *Livonia*, and there endeavour to recover what he had loſt; retrieve the ruin'd Condition of that flouriſhing Country, and like a true Father thereof, reſtore Peace to his People. But far from this, he found that on a ſuddain, his Enemy turn'd his Face to the *South*, or rather to the *South Eaſt*, and bent his Marches really towards his Majeſty's Dominions.

THEN it was, that the *Czar*, who early penetrated into the Design; foreſaw, that ſome Treachery muſt be form'd among the *Coſſacks* of the *Ukrain*, and that the King of *Sweden* had held ſome private Correſpondences with the Traytor *Mazeppa*, General of that falſe and fickle People: And this was the more probable, becauſe it was the only View that the King of *Sweden* could have on that Side: The *Tartars* of *Ciraſſia*, and all that Side of the Country, were too remote for any ſuch Attempt, nor would it be poſſible for the King of *Sweden* to penetrate into *Muſcovy* any of her Way, the Frontiers lying deſolate for ſo long a Way before he could come to the inhabited fruitful Part of *Muſcovy*, that it would be impoſſible for an Army to ſubſiſt, to find Forriage for their Horſes, and Food for their Men, and that the carrying it with them for ſo long a March, would be as Impracticable, as the other would be Impoſſible.

BUT the *Ukrain*, a fruitful and populous Country could it be brought into a Revolt, as the *Swedes* had flatter'd themſelves, or as ſome had brought them to believe it would, might indeed, have given him an Inlet into the Heart of the Country, and have furniſh'd them with Carriages and Horſes for carrying their Proviſions, if the *Czar* ſhould lay waſte the Enterance into his Dominions, as they might conclude would be done.

WITH this View, the King of *Sweden* began the deſperate undertaking, and marching thro' the whole Kingdom of *Poland*, paſt the *Boriſthenes*, and advanc'd directly towards the *Ukrania* by long and Fateaguing Marches, having 42000 Men compleat in his Army, with a fine Train

Train of Artillery, and ſuch an infinite Store of Ammunition and other millitary Things, as alſo of Proviſions and Baggage as took up 11000 Waggons to carry after them, beſides Mules and Baggage Horſes innumerable, and beſides an Army of 16000 Men, under the Command of Genral *Lewenhaupt* who his *Swediſh* Majeſty left to come after him, with another Train of Artillery, and 7000 Waggons of Amunition and Warlike Stores more.

Now his *Czariſh* Majeſty knew his Buſineſs; the Field was mark'd out for him, and he knew where to expect his Enemy. Now he ſaw where this gathering Cloud would break, and where the Storm would fall; and he had no more to do but to follow and provide for his Defence.

He did not however, abandon all Hopes from the confederate States of *Poland*, or their Aſſembly at *Warſaw*, tho' he ceaſed to depend upon their Aſſiſtance; but as he knew the Diſpoſition of the *Poles* perfectly well, he knew that tho' they would not go on in the Path that he propoſed, that is to ſay, to bring Things to a Point, and ſet up another King; which, after they had declar'd, and publiſh'd an *Interregnum*, one would have thought they ſhould not have ſtuck at; yet, that they had gone too far, to go back again to King *Staniſlaus*, and that at leaſt they would create him a great deal of Trouble, and employ a great many of his Troops, to prevent him joyning with the King of *Sweden*, and this happen'd exactly as the *Czar* foreſaw it would.

Upon this Foot, I ſay, he did not break with them, and leave them abruptly, and entirely to themſelves, which had been to have them all torn in Pieces by the King of *Sweden*, or to have forc'd them to go in at once to King *Staniſlaus*, and to joyn him againſt his *Czariſh* Majeſty's

Armies. But to prevent either of theſe Extreams, the *Czar*, tho' he retir'd with the Groſs of his Army, to his own Frontiers; and as I have ſaid, prepar'd to defend himſelf, yet he left a Body of Troops with them, to encourage, and aſſiſt them, and manag'd them ſo well, that they could never be brought to joyn King *Staniſlaus*, or fall into his Meaſures, and Intereſt, to the laſt, no not when the King of *Sweden* had 60000 Men in the Bowels of their Country.

But to return to the King of *Sweden*, it has been obſerv'd by ſome Writers, and ſuch too, as have made the beſt Judgement of thoſe Things, that the King of *Sweden* never took one proſperous Step, nor did any Thing thrive that he undertook, after the cruel Execution of Count *Patkull*, nor after his unjuſt and perſonal War againſt the *Czar* of *Muſcovy*'s Crown: I mean his declar'd Reſolution, to depoſe and dethrone his *Czariſh* Majeſty; a Thing the World laugh'd at, and which was in itſelf, conſidering the numerous Armies the *Czar* had then on Foot, really ridiculous. But this is by the Way.

The King of *Sweden* having layn ſtill, in the *Leſſer Poland*, as above, near 3 Months, and having conſulted with his Generals, and reſolv'd what Courſe to ſteer, what Forces to take with him, and what Armies the Generals ſhould Command in his Abſence, ſet forward the 8th of *March* on his reſolv'd Expedition into *Muſcovy*.

The Troops he took with him, were about forty two Thouſand Men, all well diſciplin'd choſen Men, and he left General *Rhenſchild* Field Marſchal, and Governor of *Livonia* as above, with 15000 Men more, and a ſecond Train of Artillery, with 6000 Waggons Loaden with Amunition,

Amunition, and Military Stores, and Proviſions, to follow him.

THIS was indeed, a formidable Force, and might have been more ſuitable to the Undertaking, had he been actually in the Field of Action, that is to ſay, had he been in the inhabited populous Part of *Muſcovy*, and had not a vaſt unpeopled waſted Country to march through, and which the *Czar* had on purpoſe ſtrip'd of all poſſibility of ſubſiſting him, and that he muſt carry every Mouthful of Proviſions with him, as well Forrage for his Horſe, as Bread for his Men.

HOWEVER, about *March*, the King of *Sweden*, a Prince reſolute and unalterable in his Undertakings, when once his Councils were concluded, began his March, as I have ſaid, for *Muſcovy*, and paſſing the *Viſtula*, firſt advanced to wards *Lithuania*: His *Czariſh* Majeſty had left a Body of 3000 Horſe, and 22000 Foot, to guard the Paſſages of the *Viſtula*, againſt any Parties of the *Swedes*; but with Orders to Retreat in Caſe the whole *Swediſh* Army ſhould advance.

HIS *Czariſh* Majeſty, was at this Time, gone to *Muſcow*, to ſettle the Minds of his People, and to raiſe Money for carrying on the War; as alſo, to appoint more Troops to advance towards the Frontiers; He likewiſe, ſettled his Affairs of Civil Government, and appointed a Body of an Army to continue about *Moſcow*, to keep all quiet at the Capital.

HE had left the Army above, under the Command of the Princes *Czermet* and *Repuin*, both bold daring Officers, and accuſtom'd to the Service, tho' natural *Ruſſians*, and who had often look'd the *Swedes* in the Face. But, as above, it

Armies. But to prevent either of theſe Extreams, the *Czar*, tho' he retir'd with the Groſs of his Army, to his own Frontiers; and as I have ſaid, prepar'd to defend himſelf, yet he left a Body of Troops with them, to encourage, and aſſiſt them, and manag'd them ſo well, that they could never be brought to joyn King *Staniſlaus*, or fall into his Meaſures, and Intereſt, to the laſt, no not when the King of *Sweden* had 60000 Men in the Bowels of their Country.

But to return to the King of *Sweden*, it has been obſerv'd by ſome Writers, and ſuch too, as have made the beſt Judgement of thoſe Things, that the King of *Sweden* never took one proſperous Step, nor did any Thing thrive that he undertook, after the cruel Execution of Count *Patkull*, nor after his unjuſt and perſonal War againſt the *Czar* of *Muſcovy*'s Crown: I mean his declar'd Reſolution, to depoſe and dethrone his *Czariſh* Majeſty; a Thing the World laugh'd at, and which was in itſelf, conſidering the numerous Armies the *Czar* had then on Foot, really ridiculous. But this is by the Way.

The King of *Sweden* having layn ſtill, in the *Leſſer Poland*, as above, near 3 Months, and having conſulted with his Generals, and reſolv'd what Courſe to ſteer, what Forces to take with him, and what Armies the Generals ſhould Command in his Abſence, ſet forward the 8th of *March* on his reſolv'd Expedition into *Muſcovy*.

The Troops he took with him, were about forty two Thouſand Men, all well diſciplin'd choſen Men, and he left General *Rhenſchild* Field Marſchal, and Governor of *Livonia* as above, with 15000 Men more, and a ſecond Train of Artillery, with 6000 Waggons Loaden with Amunition,

Amunition, and Military Stores, and Proviſions, to follow him.

THIS was indeed, a formidable Force, and might have been more ſuitable to the Undertaking, had he been actually in the Field of Action, that is to ſay, had he been in the inhabited populous Part of *Muſcovy*, and had not a vaſt unpeopled waſted Country to march through, and which the *Czar* had on purpoſe ſtrip'd of all poſſibility of ſubſiſting him, and that he muſt carry every Mouthful of Proviſions with him, as well Forrage for his Horſe, as Bread for his Men.

HOWEVER, about *March*, the King of *Sweden*, a Prince reſolute and unalterable in his Undertakings, when once his Councils were concluded, began his March, as I have ſaid, for *Muſcovy*, and paſſing the *Viſtula*, firſt advanced to wards *Lithuania*: His *Czariſh* Majeſty had left a Body of 3000 Horſe, and 22000 Foot, to guard the Paſſages of the *Viſtula*, againſt any Parties of the *Swedes*; but with Orders to Retreat in Caſe the whole *Swediſh* Army ſhould advance.

HIS *Czariſh* Majeſty, was at this Time, gone to *Muſcow*, to ſettle the Minds of his People, and to raiſe Money for carrying on the War; as alſo, to appoint more Troops to advance towards the Frontiers; He likewiſe, ſettled his Affairs of Civil Government, and appointed a Body of an Army to continue about *Moſcow*, to keep all quiet at the Capital.

HE had left the Army above, under the Command of the Princes *Czermet* and *Repuin*, both bold daring Officers, and accuſtom'd to the Service, tho' natural *Ruſſians*, and who had often look'd the *Swedes* in the Face. But, as above, it

was the *Czar*'s expreſs Order to them, to harraſs the *Swedes* with continual Parties, and Excurſions, but never to come to a general Battle with them if it was poſſible to avoid it.

THIS they obſerv'd exactly, ſo that when the *Swedes* paſs'd the *Viſtula* theſe retreated before them; in the mean Time, the pretended King, *Staniſlaus*, with a ſtrong Body of Troops, as well *Poles* as *Swedes* advanc'd toward *Sandomir*, to try if poſſibly he could, either by fair Means, or foul, bring over the confederate Nobility to joyn with him; and he had the more Proſpect of it at that Time, becauſe he carry'd with him the Inſtrument of King *Auguſtus*'s relinquiſhing them, and in which, was ſomthing particularly reflecting upon their Conduct; and which, *if they reſented*, it might be very propable they would take Part with the new King. But it was not to be done, the *Poles* true to themſelves, *that is to ſay*, ever factious, and ſteady to nothing but their Unſteadineſs; tho' they had declin'd the *Czar*'s Propoſal for a new Election, tho' they had no new King, and their old One had diſown'd them, as a People not worth any Prince's while to Govern; yet they would not hear of *Staniſlaus*, but aſſembling again at *Opatow*, they bound themſelves by a new Oath, to oppoſe King *Staniſlaus*, and the *Swedes* alſo, to the laſt Drop. So that King *Staniſlaus* not being willing to uſe Force with them, leaſt he ſhould drive them again into the Arms of the *Czar* of *Muſcovy*; and indeed, not being ſtrong enough, to attack them, came away and left them, and joyn'd the King of *Sweden* at *Minſk*, in *Lithuania*. That which encouraged the Confederate Nobility the more, was, that beſides 22000 *Ruſſians*, which the *Czar* had ordered to march to *Opatow*,

Opatow, to defend them; they had by a particular Negotiation, brought over the *Coſſacks* of the *Ukraine*, to favour their Intereſt; and General *Mazeppa*, the famous Chief of the *Coſſacks* advanced to joyn them with 30000 Horſe, and promiſed them, on Occaſion, 20000 more.

THIS encourag'd them ſtill the more, and made the other of the Nobility come in to them; ſo that they began to riſe on every Side, againſt *Staniſlaus*; his Friends had their Houſes inſulted, and their Lands Waſted, and were every where fain to fly to the *Swedes* for Succour; even the Palatine of *Kiow*, was obliged to follow the Courſe of King *Staniſlaus*, and with all his Dependents, making about 6000 Men, came to the *Swedes* Camp at *Minſk*.

THE *Swedes* continu'd in *Lithuania*, from *March* to the Middle of *June*, not yet reſolving, it ſeems, which Rout yet to take; And the King of *Sweden* not finding *Poland* in a Poſture fit to be left to their own Defence; In all this Time, they could never come to any conſiderable Action with the *Czar*'s Troops; The principal Skirmiſh we had with them, was near *Mohilow*, on the *Boriſthenes*, where they ſurpriz'd a Body of about 8000 of our Men, moſt of them Dragoons; who, after a very Gallant Defence, in which the *Swedes* loſt abundance of Men, were oblig'd to retire with the Loſs of about 3000 Men kill'd, and taken Priſoners.

THIS Days Action might have let the *Swedes* have ſeen, that the *Muſcovite* Troops were now quite another ſort of People than they uſed to be, and fought with as much Order and regularity as other People; that they rallied as expertly after any Diſorder; and retreated as orderly after a Defeat.

ing all their Left Wing. On their Right *Lewenhaupt* rallying his Troops, faced our Men who were among their Waggons, and cauſed ſuch a Fire to be made on our Battallions and Squadrons, as oblig'd them to retire; but our Center, and Left Wing advanced at the ſame Time againſt the Enemy, who were oblig'd to Face to the Right about, to make Head againſt us; then the Charge was renewed with greater Fury than before, both by the Horſe and Foot, and their Fire which the Enemy anſwer'd duly, did not ceaſe 'till it was dark Night, when we could no longer diſtinugiſh our own Men, from our Enemis.

'In the Night, his *Czariſh* Majeſty conſidering the Difficulty of diſlodging the Enemy from behind the Waggons, forbid the Officers, on pain of being Caſhier'd, and the Soldiers of being hang'd, to quit their Ranks, to rifle the killed; ſo the Army kept all Night under Arms watching the Enemy. In the mean Time the Trophies of the Day, were preſented to his Majeſty, conſiſting of 47 Colours, and 10 Standards; and 16 Cannon, which he had gain'd, were added to our Train of Artillery.

'Thus we paſs'd the Night, which was very Cold, and towards the Morning, we ſaw the Enemy kindle Fires, about their Waggons. His *Czariſh* Majeſty order'd that Fires alſo ſhould be made in the Front of onr Line, and that we ſhould hold our ſelves in a Readineſs againſt Break of Day; which being come, we march'd towards the Enemies Waggons, expecting to meet no leſs Reſiſtance than before; but we found that *Lewenhaupt*, had made uſe of that Stratagem to cover his Flight, abandoning to

'our

‘ our Diſcretion, all the Wounded, and 7000
‘ Waggons deſign'd to Supply the Want under
‘ which the King his Maſter Labours.

‘ General *Pflug* was immediately order'd
‘ with a 1000 Granadiers on Horſe-back, and
‘ 2000 Dragoons, to purſue and harraſs the fly-
‘ ing Enemy; he had not March'd above half
‘ a League, when he found the Remains of the
‘ Enemy in a Wood, and falling upon them,
‘ he made a Slaughter among them for the
‘ Space of a League and a half, to *Propoi-*
‘ *ſick*, where the reſt of the Run-aways, to the
‘ Number of 3000, retir'd into the Church-
‘ Yard.

‘ Our General advancing to Force them,
‘ they made a Signal that they were deſirous
‘ to Capitulate; and then he ſent a Lieutenant
‘ Colonel, with ſix Granadiers, to receive their
‘ Offers of Capitulation; but many of the *Swe-*
‘ *diſh* Soldiers being Drunk with Brandy, would
‘ not agree to their Officers Propoſitions, and
‘ many of them Firing, kill'd two of our Gra-
‘ nadiers, the Lieutenant Colonel ſeeing their
‘ Headineſs, retir'd. And General *Pflug* reſolv'd
‘ not to ſpare them; our Granadiers and Dra-
‘ goons enter'd the Church Yard Sword in
‘ Hand, kill'd all that reſiſted. During this Exe-
‘ cution, part of them fled towards the River
‘ *Soza*; General *Mikuſch* purſu'd that Party two
‘ Hours, and ſaw Count *Leuwenhaupt* Swimming
‘ through that River among his Men; whereup-
‘ on he ſwam it with his Detachment, and com-
‘ ing to the other Side, moſt of the *Swediſh* Offi-
‘ cers begg'd Mercy and he gave them Quarter,
‘ but caus'd the Soldiers to be put to the Sword:
‘ He rejoyn'd General *Pflug*, with all the Officers

'and Booty; and those Prisoners reported, that 'General *Leuwenhaupt* was Dead of two Shots 'through his Body.

'THE next Day, his *Czarish* Majesty caus'd 'Thanks to be solemnly return'd to the Almigh-'ty for this signal Victory, which cost the Ene-'my 20 Regiments, amounting to 16000 Men, 'among them, Major General *Sculemburgh*, who 'was kill'd on the Field of Battle, with all the 'Officers that were not taken Prisoners.

'WE have 2673 Prisoners, 103 Officers, 47 'Colours, 10 Standards, 16 Cannon, 7000 Wag-'gons, and all the Arms and Baggage; the 'Victory being compleat.

'ON our Side, we lost 70 Officers kill'd or 'dangerously wounded, 1277 Soldiers kill'd, '2734 wounded, among them his Highness the 'Prince of *Darmstadt*, General *Baur*, Colonel '*Weiden*, and two *Muscovite* Colonels.

UPON this Disaster, the *Swedes* were at a full Stop, they could neither go forward, or back-ward, they had lost all their Ammunition, and all their Magazine, among which were 20000 small Arms, wherewith they propos'd to Arm, and Discipline the *Cosacks* which should Rebel; they lost 500 Ton of Musket Bullets, 6000 Barrels of Powder, and about 600000 Rixdolars in Money; their Communication with *Poland* was entirely cut off, and the Palatine of *Kiow*, the King of *Sweden*'s faithful Allie, was utterly disabled by another Defeat given him, by the Crown Army of *Poland*; so that King *Stanislaus*, and General *Crassau*, who with another Army of 18000 were advanc'd almost to *Lemberg*, could get no Intelligence of the King of *Sweden*, or

of

of his Army, nor by any Means break thorough to ſet him Free.

It is true, the Province of *Ukrania*, a rich, fertil, and plentiful Country, ſupply'd the King of *Sweden* effectually with Proviſions in Great Plenty; and his *Swediſh* Majeſty ſeeing what Condition he was reduced to, mark'd out a Camp, in a very advantagious Situation, on the River *Deſna* between *Czeruikhow* and *Mekoſzi*, where he caus'd ſtrong Entrenchments to be made, and mounted his Cannon reſolving not to be attack'd by Surprize. Here he reſolv'd to ſtay till he had recruited his Magazines of Millitary Proviſions as well as his Army with Troops; but during his whole Stay here, his *Czariſh* Majeſty ſo ſcour'd the Country with continual Parties, that no Meſſenger he could ever ſend arriv'd, nor could he receive any Intelligence from the reſt of *Poland*, or they from him.

During this long Encampment, his *Czariſh* Majeſty's General, by inceſſant Parties, cut off abundance of his Men, and continually harraſs'd them with his Troops, and gave them two or three very conſiderable Defeats.

In the mean Time, the *Swedes* on the other Hand, found Means to get ſome Supplies of Amunition out of *Podolia*, and from *Lemberg* they got ſome ſmall Arms, tho' all was with great Difficulty brought to them, the Confederates being ſtrongeſt on that Side, and it being a moſt tedious Way to bring things all by Land Carriage to *Kiovia* in the *Ukrain* alſo; and on the Side of *Volhinia*, they Liſted a great many Men, with which they fill'd up all the Regiments of General *Leuwenhaupt*'s Army, which we had defeated, and made them as ſtrong as when we firſt attack'd him; on-

ly, with this Exception, namely, that they were not ſo good Soldiers by a great Deal.

THUS the two Armies paſs'd the Winter, and the firſt part of the Spring. But the Seaſon advancing, and the King of *Sweden* ſtill fancying himſelf ſtrong enough to put his Deſigns in Execution, and hoping for great Matters from the *Coſſacks*, he prepar'd for his Enterprize.

IT ſhould have been obſerv'd here, that the Rebel *Mazeppa*, finding the *Czar* preſs'd hard upon the *Coſſacks*, and terrify'd them from following him; ſo that he could not bring that Number with him to his new Confederate the King of *Sweden*, as he had promis'd, endeavour'd by Parties and Inroads on the Side of *Muſcovy*, to intercept all the Proviſions that ſhould be convey'd that Way to the *Czar*'s Army, and ravag'd the Country far and near, by the King of *Sweden*'s Order; to puniſh them for which Treachery, Prince *Menzickoff* advanc'd with 24000 Foot, and 6000 Horſe, to the Eaſt Side of the *Ukrain*, and having caus'd the greater Part of the *Coſſacks* on that Side to return to their Duty, he advanc'd to *Baturyu Mazeppa*'s chief Town, and which he had fortify'd, as well as the Place and Time would permit; *Mazeppa* foreſeeing the Deſign, put 6000 *Coſſacks*, bold, hardy reſolute Fellows into the Place; which beſides, was very well furniſh'd with every Thing neceſſary for it's Defence; the Prince, however, came fairly up to the Town, and formally attack'd it, tho' the *Swedes* in a manner look'd on.

HE had no Time to looſe in the Formalities neceſſary for a long Siege, but having raiſed three Batteries in two Days time, with the Help of a multitude of Hands, he fired ſo furiouſly on the

the Place, that in one Night and Day, he had made a tolerable Breach, which tho' it was not what they call practicable, in the Common Dialect of the Enginiers, yet he caus'd it to be ſtorm'd: The Garriſon defended themſelves with a great deal of Obſtinacy, and kill'd the *Muſcovites* by Heaps in their Ditches. But the *Ruſſians* led on again, and annimated by the Preſence of their Generals, fell on with ſuch Fury, and withal, in ſuch Numbers, that they enter'd the Town Sword in Hand, cut all the Traytor *Coſſacks*, being 6000, as above, in Pieces; not giving Quarter to one of them; which was a Piece of requiſite Juſtice, not only upon them for their Treaſon and Rebellion, but in Terror to the reſt, who had ſhew'd Inclination enough to Rebel; as for the Town it was plunder'd by the Soldiers.

NOR did their Execution fail of its deſign'd End, for it effectually aw'd the reſt of the *Coſſacks*, from revolting to the King of *Sweden*, as was the deſign of the whole Nation of them, beſides which, it leſſen'd the King of *Swedens* Army 6000 Men, for thoſe 6000 were Part of the 10000 who had join'd the *Swedes* with their General.

AFTER the taking of this Town, which was in Sight of the whole *Swediſh* Army, the River *Deſua* only parting them; over which, however, the *Swedes* had no Bridge. I ſay, after this, the *Ruſſian* General ſuppreſs'd entirely the Diſſafection of the *Coſſacks*, and having proclaim'd *Mazeppa* a Traytor, and cauſed him to be hang'd in Effigie, made the whole Body of *Coſſacks* meet, and chooſe another Chief or General, which was done with the loud Acclamations of the People; ſo the *Czar* was in ſome Degree even with the King of *Sweden*, for if he depoſed one King, the

Czar of *Muſcovy* now depoſed another, for tho *Mazeppa* was not a King in Title, he was equal to a King in Power, and every way Equal if not Superior to King *Auguſtus* in the divided Circumſtances, in which his Power ſtood, even at the beſt of it.

AND now the King of *Sweden* having reſolv'd to move forward, decamp'd, in an evil Hour for him, in the begining of *June*, and paſſing the *Deſna* at *Czeruihow* advanced towards *Pultowa*. The Country all the Way in this March being low and level, is full of Rivers which fall into the *Neiper*, and lying juſt croſs the Way which the *Swedes* were to March, they had ſometimes three or four of thoſe Rivers to paſs in a Day; the Reaſon of this is plain, for that the Courſe of the *Boriſthenes* being here from *North* to *South*, and the great River receiving into it all the ſmaller Rivers of the Country of both Sides, the Courſe of thoſe Rivers naturally muſt be from *Eaſt* to *Weſt*, on the Side where the *Swediſh* Army march'd.

THIS retarded the March of the *Swedes* very much, who were oblig'd to make Bridges over moſt of thoſe Rivers, and who drew a great Train of Carriages with them for their Baggage, and Ammunition, beſides their Artillery.

SOME of theſe Rivers indeed, the Weather being dry, and the Seaſon ſo far advanc'd, were low, and might be foarded by the Cavalry and Carriages, but others again could not.

HOWEVER, the King of *Sweden* whoſe Authority preſs'd on his Men, forc'd to March over all the Rivers, and whatever Difficulties offer'd to ſtand in his Way, puſh'd on till he came to *Pultowa*; a Town which the *Czar* had fortify'd in a better manner than formerly; and as it was a

Frontier,

Frontier againſt the *Budriack Tarter*, who uſed to make their Incurſions that way into *Muſcovy*.

His *Czariſh* Majeſty finding the *Swedes* in Motion, broke up with all his Army from *Smolenſko*, where he had encamped in order to diſpute the Ground Inch by Inch with them, if they had offer'd to move towards *Moſcow*, and mov'd after them; he had never ſtirr'd from that Situation with the Groſs of his Army while the King of *Sweden* lay on the Bank of the *Deſna*, leaſt finding his Army remov'd, they ſhould counter March and ſlip by him on the Way to *Moſcow*; but now finding the *Swedes* running farther into the Net, he purſu'd with his whole Army, which was about 70000 Men, beſides about 42000 which were poſted at diſtant Places, as at *Mohilow*, and at the River *Bug*, to prevent Succours paſſing to the *Swedes*.

With this Army his *Czariſh* Majeſty follow'd the *Swedes* ſo cloſe, that he was always at Hand to take any Advantage that might offer.

The King of *Sweden*, who was now near the End of his good Fortune, and found himſelf embarraſs'd with the Difficulties of the Country, encamp'd under the Walls of a Town, tho' not conſiderable in it ſelf, yet better fortified, and better furniſh'd than he expected, wanting many Things neceſſary for a Seige of Importance; and which was worſe, the *Czar*, who he had always flatter'd himſelf, would never venture a Battle, was, as I have ſaid at his Back with an Army of 70000 Men, and not only ſeem'd reſolv'd to venture a Battle with him, but poſted himſelf in ſuch a manner, as that it was apparent he would Beſiege him and his Camp, and perhaps attack his Intrenchments.

HAD not the King of *Sweden*'s Courage exceeded his Diſcretion at that Time, and his ill Fate hurry'd him on to his own Deſtruction, he would certainly have carry'd on his Attacks in the uſual Form, and chooſing a ſtrong Situation, have encamped with the Groſs of his Army to cover the Siege; expecting that if the *Czar* would raiſe the Seige, he ſhould fight him with all the Diſadvantages uſual on ſuch Occaſions; as namely, that of attacking a Powerful Army entrench'd up to the Teeth, and poſted with all poſſible Art and Advantage.

BUT on the other Hand, had their Reſolution to Fight been attended with the uſual Prudence of a good General, ſuch as the King of *Sweden* certainly was, and ſuch, as if he had not been ſo himſelf, all his other leading Men were eſteem'd to be; particularly, Field Mariſchal *Rhenſchild*, the Generals *Lewenhaupt*, *Slippenback*, *Stakelberg*, *Stenbock*, and others; and it was very ſtrange they ſhould not reſtrain him, by Reaſoning againſt the Meaſures taken; but to do him Juſtice, it is reported that his *Swediſh* Majeſty was not ſo much for fighting as his Generals were, and that it was carry'd in a Council of War, before the King gave his Opinion: The Caſe was dubious, and every Man aſham'd to ſpeak firſt againſt Fighting, leaſt he ſhould be ſuppoſed to want Courage, and leaſt the King, whoſe Temper was ſo well known, ſhould reſent it; thus it was that all Men voted for Fighting, tho' even almoſt every one of them were againſt it in their Judgements.

THIS was too much the Effect of the exceeding Fire in the Temper of their Monarch, who was ſo much fear'd by his Officers, that they it ſeems voted as they thought would be moſt agreeable

able to their Prince's Humour, than Safe and prudent for his Intereſt and Honour.

THE Neighbourhood and Strength of the *Muſcovite* Army made it difficult, and ſcarce practicable to carry on the Siege of the Place, the Garriſon being numerous alſo, and well furniſh'd, and the *Swedes* began to ſee a Neceſſity of removing the Enemy, or of raiſing the Siege, and upon this Occaſion, the great Council of War was called, where it was, unfortunately for them, reſolv'd to Fight.

BEING now come to mention the Battle it ſelf, I refer the Reader to a full Account of it given by the Enemy themſelves, becauſe what they acknowledge comes with an Authority not to be deny'd; whereas, ſpeaking of a Thing of ſuch Conſequence on the Side of that Monarch, whoſe Story we write, we may be the more ſuſpected of Flattery and partiality; take it then from their own Accounts as follows,

'OUR Army, *ſay they*, conſiſted of about 36000 'Men if we had been all together, of whom our 'Cavalry made the better Half; our Infantry in 'the Battle, were not above 15000; neither had 'we any Artillery with us; the Deſign being to 'force an Enterance, and then break in with our 'Horſe; of theſe Forces we left our whole Body 'of Reſerve as before noted, in the Camp; which, 'with other Troops left there, were about 8000 'Men; ſo that in the Battle we had not above '28000 Men.

'THE King led on his Cavalry, and with him 'General *Lewenhaupt*, *Steenboch*, and *Spar*; *Rhenſchild*, *Horn* and *Stakelberg* commanded the Foot; 'as ſoon as we came out of the Defiles, and ſaw 'the Countenance of the Enemy, it was eaſie to

'ſee

'ſee we had a terrible Task on our Hands; but 'there was no looking back, the King with his 'uſual intrepidity advanc'd to the Charge, and 'with his Horſe fell upon a great Body of *Muſco-* 'vite Horſe, who were advanc'd from the reſt, 'and in a Moment drove them into the Line of 'Horſe, which ſtood behind them, upon which 'the reſt of the *Swediſh* Horſe advancing the 'whole Line acted at once, and puſh'd the Ene- 'my ſeveral times into Confuſion; but by the 'Vigilance of their Officers, and the help of new 'Troops, they reſtored their Line and fought with 'the utmoſt obſtinacy: During this part of the 'Action, the Enemy with a great Body of Horſe, 'and ſome Foot had wheel'd at ſome diſtance, 'and appear'd on our Flank in order to ſur- 'round our Cavalry, ſome Troops charg'd them, 'but being over power'd were repulſed, and 'this made us ſlacken the Charge in Front for 'fear of being cut of from our Infantry.

'THAT in the mean time our Infantry ad- 'vancing, and the Horſe making a Halt till they 'came up, form'd themſelves in order of Battle, 'the Horſe on the Wings, and the Foot in Cen- 'ter, and advanc'd again directly to the Enemy, 'Charging them with great Fury and good Suc- 'ceſs; but the Cannon from the entrench'd 'Camp advancing, and the Troops opening in 'ſeveral Places for their playing upon us; it 'was impoſſible our Foot could keep their or- 'der, or the Men ſtand in the Face of ſeventy 'Peices of Cannon, loaden with Cartouches of 'ſmall Shot; ſo that our Generals ſaw it abſolute- 'ly neceſſary to draw of the Foot, the Horſe all 'this while continu'd engaged, and drove the 'Cavalry of the Enemy every where before them,

'but

' but the Enemies Foot advancing to ſupport
' their Cavalry with their Fire, our Horſe alſo
' ſounded a Retreat, and drew off in very good
' order out of the Field of Battle, recover-
' ing the Defiles were our Foot was poſted. The
' Enemy made a no purſuit at that time, the E-
' nemy made ſhew of advancing indeed on our
' Left, and ſome Skirmiſhes happen'd, but they
' were beaten off with Loſs; however, having
' thus left the Field of Battle to the Enemy, ſe-
' veral Diſaſters follow'd; as firſt, being cut of
' from our Camp, our Body of Reſerve, our Ar-
' tillery, heavy Baggage, Carriages, *&c.* fell all
' into the Enemies Hands, and the Troops left
' there were oblig'd to yeild themſelves Priſo-
' ners of War; in this Condition there was nothing
' left to conſider of, but Retreating with all poſ-
' ſible Speed before the Enemy ſhould be in a
' poſture to attack us, and the way for this was,
' if poſſible to reach the *Bariſthenes*, and get
' means to paſs over the Troops, and reach to
' *Kiou*.

' GENERAL *Lewenhaupt* had the Conduct of the
' Retreat, and he march'd with ſuch Expedition,
' that all the Troops came to the Bank of the
' River the next Day, about One at Night, tho'
' extreamly fatigu'd and harraſs'd, eſpecially
' the poor Infantry, of whom many died by the
' way, either of their Wounds, or by the extremity
' of the March; inſomuch, that as appear'd after-
' wards, there were not 4000 of them left, above
' 3000 of them choſe rather to fall into the Enemies
' Hands, then ſuffer ſo ſevere a March, and ſo drop'd
' off ſome and ſome by the way, expecting every
' Hour to be knock'd on the Head by the Ene-
' my, many of them wandered about the Coun-

' try

'try, and got into *Poland* afterwards, and Liſted 'in the Troops of King *Staniſlaus*, ſo eſcaping to 'the *Swediſh* Army at better Leiſure.

'But we were in no better Condition now then 'before, for the River was a full ſtop to us; Boats 'there was none, we had no Materials for a 'Bridge, or time to make it, we knew the Ene-'my was at our Heels; we had neither Strength 'left to Defend ourſelves, nor Ammunition to 'Supply a Battle if we were diſpoſed to it; nei-'ther had we Proviſions to keep our Men from 'periſhing: In this ſtrait the main Concern of 'our Generals was for the ſafety of the King, to 'have him fall into the Hands of the Enemy 'was worſe than Death to think of; there was 'but one way, which was to venture to Swim the 'great and rapid River that we lay on the Bank 'of, and then to make the beſt of his way into the '*Turks* Dominions, his Majeſty made light of the 'hazard; but it was eaſie to ſee that it was with 'extream reluctance that he parted with his be-'loved Troops, who he knew muſt immediately 'fall into the Hands of the Enemy; but there 'was no deliberating in the Choice; his Majeſty 'could not by ſtaying ſave his Men, and falling 'into the Enemies Hands with them, would but 'increaſe their Misfortune, ſo it was reſolv'd; 'and the next morning the King, attended by 'about 300 of the beſt Horſe paſs'd the River in a 'little Boat, moſt of the reſt Swam the River, be-'ing guided by ſome *Coſſack* Gentlemen, who it 'ſeems in that Country make light of it; 'they all landed ſafe on the other Side. His Ma-'jeſty gave private Orders to the reſt of his 'Men, that if they could make any eſcape, they 'ſhould follow towards the *Turks* Dominions,

'where

'where they would ſoon hear of him, if he got
'ſafe thither. That ſame Evening the *Muſcovite*
'Prince *Menzickoff* at the Head of about 10000
'Horſe, appear'd in ſight of our Camp, and Ge-
'neral *Reinſchild*, who was then Priſoner among
'them, having ſignify'd to them, as they ſaid,
'that it was probable in the Condition we was
'in, we would Capitulate; the Prince ſent a Trum-
'pet with a *Swediſh* Captain, and a *Muſcovite* Co-
'lonel with a Letter to our General, to offer us,
'if we would Surrender, good Uſage and hono-
'rable Conditions; this was the more welcome
'to us, becauſe it was wholly unexpected: The
'matter needed no Debate, our Circum-
'ſtances admitted of nothing elſe, and if
'he had not ſent to us; we muſt have ſent to
'him, and have yeilded; wherefore our General
'after holding a ſhort Council of War,
'return'd a reſpectful Anſwer to the Prince,
'ſignifying, that if he might have Soldier like
'uſage, and be treated honourably, he would en-
'ter into a Treaty, but that if not, they would
'die with their Swords in their Hands, and ſell
'their Lives as dear as they could; in the mean
'time many of our Men enrag'd at the Thoughts
'of the Slavery of *Muſcovy*, threw themſelves
'madly into the River, ſome ſtrip'd and Swam,
'but they found it worſe, for many of them pe-
'riſh'd with Hunger, and with wandering naked
'over the Country, and ſome not able to reach
'over, for the River is there very Broad, were car-
'ried down the Current and drown'd; to be ſhort
'with this diſmal Story; we obtain'd very hono-
'rable Conditions, and Surrendered to the *Muſ-*
'*covites*; tho' we cannot ſay thoſe Conditions
'have been ſo honourably perform'd as they

'ought

'ought to have been. The Articles of our Sur-
'render were as follows.

THE under-written AGREEMENT ſhall be concluded in the Name of his *Czariſh* Majeſty, the Emperor of *Ruſſia*, on the one Hand, and of the King of *Sweden* on the other Part; by the ſubſcribing Generals.

I. *ALL the* Swediſh *Troops, without Exception, who were commanded by Count* Lewenhaupt, *as well Generals and Officers, as Soldiers; ſhall with their Servants yield themſelves Priſoners of War to his* Czariſh *Majeſty.*

II. *All private Soldiers, Troopers, Dragoons, and Muſquetiers, ſhall lay down their Arms, and remain Priſoners of War, 'till their Exchange or Ranſom; but they ſhall keep their Mounting, and all that they have, except their Arms and Ammunition; and all their Horſes, exept thoſe belonging to the Officers, ſhall be delivered to his* Czariſh *Majeſty.*

III. *All General Officers, and other Officers, ſhall keep their Baggage and Equipages, and their Perſons ſhall be releaſed without Ranſom, or Exchange, as ſoon as Peace ſhall be made between his* Czariſh *Majeſty, and the King of* Sweden, *and in the mean Time, they ſhall be honourably us'd, and be permitted to go for a while to their own Country, on their Parole.*

IV. *The* Swediſh *Artillery, all the Ammunition, Colours, Standards, and Inſtruments of Muſick, ſhall be deliver'd to his* Czariſh *Majeſty, as likewiſe the Military Cheſt, or Camp Treaſure.*

V. *The*

V. *The* Zaperogian, *and other Rebels, now amongſt the Troops of* Sweden, *ſhall be immediately deliver'd to his* Czariſh *Majeſty.*

VI. *For the Security and Confirmation of theſe Agreements, the afore-mentioned Articles, ſhall be ſign'd by the Generals Commanding the Army of his* Czariſh *Majeſty, and that of the King of* Sweden; *and a Duplicate ſhall be made of this Capitulation.*

Done in the Camp
Perewoloczea,
June the 30th.
O. S. 1709.

Sign'd

ALEXANDER, Prince of *Menzicoff.*

Count of *Lewenhaupt.*

ADDITION.

All the Officers and Generals, ſhall not only retain their Baggage, but likewiſe their Servants, and the Commiſſioners, Auditors, Secretaries, Chaplains, and Surgeons, ſhall likewiſe be permitted to keep their Baggage and Servants as the Officers.

UPON theſe Articles they being ſent and exchang'd, the next Day being the firſt of *July*, we laid down our Arms, and ſo ended our *Muſcovite* Expedition: The Number and Particulars of this Surrender, as they were taken an Account of at the Surrendery; a Duplicate of which was given to the *Swediſh* General, and which was afterwards

afterwards made publick by the *Czar*. Was as follows,

Swediſh Generals Priſoners.

Count Lewenhaupt, *General of Foot, and Governor of Riga*; *M.* Creutz *and* Craſs, *Major Generals*; *the Counts* Douglas *and* Bonde, *Adjutants of the Field*; *Mareſchal General* Reinſchild.

Regiments of Horſe.

Life Guards, Carelia, *Standard of the* Swediſh *Nobility*, *Standard of the Nobility of* Livonia, Aboſck *and* Bernebourgh, Smaland, Nieland, *and* North Scania, South Scania, Cruſe, *and* Oſter Gotten.

Regiments of Dragoons.

Guards, Wennerſtadt, *Prince of* Wirtemberg, Slippenbach, Schrotenfels, Meyerfeld, Helms, Tauben, Ducker, Alfendiel, Guildenſtern; *in theſe Regiments were ſeven Colonels, nam'd in the Liſt, ten Lieutenant Colonels, and ſixteen Majors nam'd*, 182 *Captains*, 217 *Captain Liuetenants*, 215 *Cornets*, 10 *Quartermaſters of Regiments*, 17 *Adjutants*, 522 *inferior Officers, and* 8637 *Corporals and private Soldiers: Beſides* 26 *Chaplains*, 4 *Commiſſaries*, 18 *Clarks*, 20 *Surgeons, and* 44 *Surgeons Servants*, 13 *Kettle Drums*, 67 *Trumpeters and Hautboys*, 97 *Drummers*, 528 *Provoſts, and neceſſary Attendants on the Troops.*

Of the King's Foot Guards.

Colonel, Baron Poſſen; *Major, Count* Oxenſtern, 8 *Captains*, 19 *Lieutenants*, 31 *Enſigns*, 1 *Adjutant*,

tant, 121 inferior Officers, and 1196 Corporals and private Soldiers; beſides a Commiſſary, a Provoſt of the Regiment, 6 Chaplains, 7 Clarks of Regiments, 6 Hautboys, 53 Drumers and Fifes, 13 common Provoſts, in all 1465.

Regiments of Foot, or Remains of them.

Upland, Dulkler, Weſtmandland, Weſtergotz, Sundermondland, Werk *and* Warmanland, Oſter Gotten, Jencoping, Weſter Gotten, Cronenburgh, *and* Colmar, *in theſe Regiments were 2 Colonels nam'd, 4 Lieutenant Colonels nam'd, 3 Majors nam'd, 60 Captains, 2 Voluntier Captains, 68 Captain Lieutenants, 8 Quarter Maſters, 6 Adjutants, 71 Enſigns, 296 inferior Officers, and 3056 Corporals and private Soldiers; beſides 5 Commiſſaries, 6 Chaplains, 4 Voluntiers, and 15 Surgeons and their Men; in all 3606.*

Officers of Artillery, and Men employ'd in the Train.

Colonel Bierone, *ſince dead of his Wounds, Lieutenant Colonel Appleman, 1 Poſt, 1 Major, 4 Captains, 1 Captain Lieutenant, 6 Sub-Lieutenants, 6 Enſigns, 1 Adjutant, with Gunners, Montroſſes, Miners, Fireworkers, Bombardiers, and Artificers; to the Number in all, 535; the Total 1627 Perſons, beſides, the following of the King's Houſhold,* Charles Guntzau, *Chamberlain;* Sickigell, *Apothecary of the Houſhold and Army;* Sokimbers, *Quarter Maſters;* Aſil, Bier, *and* Brampt, *Commiſſaries; 5 Purveyors, and other Servants, Colonels, Standards, 142; Braſs Cannon, four five Pounders, one of five Pound and a half Ball, 12 of three Pound Ball;*

Ruſſian *Pieces of* 2 *Pound Ball, taken by the* Swedes *at* Weſprick, 2 *Hauwitzers of* 16 *Chambers,* 4 *Mortars of ſix, and four of three Pound Ball.*

OUR Loſs being thus of our whole Army, it is needleſs to enquire how many fell in each particular Action; but, this is certain, that what the *Muſcovites* have publiſh'd of 10000 Men ſlain in the Battle, cannot be true; we reckon about 6000 kill'd in the Action, 2000 Priſoners, at that time alſo, 7000 in the Camp before *Pultowa*, about 2000 who ſwam over the River, with, and after the King, 3000 who wandred away and eſcap'd into the Country, and 16000 now with General *Leuwenhaupt*; thus far the *Swediſh* Account.

I COME then to the Account, which was given from the *Muſcovite* Army, which is more properly my Part, and which varies in nothing, but the Manner of Things: Which, however, is very ſignificant to know, and is as follows,

'AFTER the *Muſcovites* had paſs'd the River '*Workſla* with their whole Army on the 20th of '*June*, O. S. they encamp'd within a League of 'the *Swedes* till the 24th, that Day they advanc'd 'within a Quarter of a League of them, and en-'camping, preſently caus'd an Entrenchment 'to be thrown up before the Camp to prevent 'all Surprize; their Cavalry was poſted in the 'Woods, cover'd by the Redoubts, furniſh'd with 'Men; and tho' the *Czar* gave out Orders for 'preparing to attack the Enemy, they prevent-'ed him according to their uſual Cuſtom; for on 'the 27th early in the Morning, while it was 'yet dark, the *Swedes* came out of the Defiles, 'where they had lain all Night on their Arms, 'and attack'd the *Muſcovite* Cavalry both

'with

with their Horſe and Foot ſo vigorouſly, that notwithſtanding they were repulſed ſeveral times, and beaten off with Loſs from the Redoubts which they aſſaulted, the *Muſcovite* Cavalry, who cou'd not be aſſiſted in time by the Infantry, were oblig'd to retire towards their Entrenchments; but ſoon return'd to the Charge, entirely defeating the *Swedes* Right Wing, and took Priſoner General *Slippenback*, who commanded it; while this was doing the *Czar* detach'd Prince *Menzickoff*, General in chief of the Army, and Lieutenant General *Rentzell*, as well to cut of the Troops, who were advancing to the Aſſiſtance of the Enemy, as to attack thoſe left in the Trenches under the *Swediſh* General *Roſen*; the Prince marching accordingly, met in his way the Enemy's Body of Reſerve of 3000 Men, whoſe Right Wing was Flank'd by a Wood; after ſome Reſſiſtance he broke them, put ſome to the Sword, gave Quarters to the reſt, and return'd to the main Army; leaving Lieutenant General *Rentzell* to proceed on to *Pultowa*, at whoſe approach the *Swediſh* General *Roſen* retir'd with his Regiments into the Works they had made; however, the *Muſcovite* General attack'd him, and forc'd him after ſome Reſſiſtance to Surrender with all his Men at Diſcretion: On the other hand, the *Swediſh* Army having in retiring joyned their Foot; all the *Swediſh* Army drew up in order of Battle againſt the *Muſcovite* Front, at the diſtance of about a Quarter of a League; the *Czar* at the ſame time caus'd two Lines to move out of the Entrenchments, leaving the Third to guard the Camp, and drew up his Army in ſuch a manner, that his Infantry made the main Body, and

'the Cavalry the two Wings, of which the 'Right was commanded by Lieutenant *Bauer* 'in the room of Lieutenant General *Rence*, who 'was wounded in the firſt Engagement: The 'Left was commanded by Prince *Menzickoff*, his 'Preſence being moſt neceſſary, and his main 'Body was commanded by the *Czar* in Perſon: 'The Field Marſhal *Czeremettoff*; the Generals 'of the Foot, Prince *Repnin*, and M. *Hallard*, 'as alſo Lieutenant General *Belling* attend-'ing at his Poſt; Lieutenant General *Brous* had 'the Direction of the Artillery; the *Muſcovite* 'Army being in this poſture, no ſooner began 'to move towards the *Swedes*, then contrary to 'expectation, theſe had the boldneſs after the re-'pulſe they had receiv'd, to advance to meet 'them: About nine in the Morning the Fight 'began, and the fire grew thick on both Sides, 'which the *Muſcovites* continu'd with ſuch Brave-'ry, that they defeated and broke the *Swedes* Army, 'after a Battle of half an Hour; a thing very 'ſtrange, and put both their Horſe and Foot to 'the Rout, the latter not daring to Halt, or 'make farther oppoſition, and were driven like 'a Herd of Cattle, with Sword, Bayonet and 'Pike quite to the Woods. Major-General *Sta-'kelberg* was the firſt Priſoner taken, then Gene-'ral *Hamilton*, Field Marſhal *Rhenſchild*, the 'Prince of *Wirtenberg*, Couſin to the King of 'Sweden; many Colonels and Subaltern Officers, 'and ſome thouſands of Foot and Horſe, a great 'Number of which yielded themſelves volunta-'rily with their Horſes, and Arms. The *Muſco-'vites* Cavalry purſued the *Swedes* full ſpeed a-'bove half a League, that the Plains and Woods 'for three Leagues round the *Pultowa*, were ſtrew-

'ed

'ed with the Enemies Bodies; the Number of 'their kill'd being 8 or 10000; thus by the help of 'the Almighty they gain'd ſo compleat a Victo-'ry over the *Swedes*, that it is hardly to be paral-'lel'd, and that with little Loſs by the Victori-'ous Arms of the *Czar*, and under his own Con-'duct, in which he moſt eminently ſignaliz'd 'his Valour and Experience in the War, expoſing 'himſelf to all Dangers, and had his Hat ſhot 'thro'; Prince *Menzickoff* had three Horſes 'wounded under him; 'tis worthy to be remark-'ed, that 'twas only a Line of Foot, of 10000 'Men, who defeated the Enemy, the other Line 'not being engaged. Here follows a Liſt of the 'Priſoners, and of what was taken from the '*Swedes*, as far as they could inform themſelves 'in the firſt two Days.

'COUNT *Piper*, firſt Miniſter to the King, his 'Privy Counſellor, and great Marſhal; Count '*Reinſchild* Field Marſhal and Privy Counſellor; 'the Majors General, *Slippenback*, *Stackleberg*, '*Roſen* and *Hamilton*; the Colonels, Prince *Wir-'temberg*, Prince *Applegreen*, Count *Horn*, and 'Prince *Rhenſchild*, 6 Lieutenant Colonels, 4 'Majors, 2 Captains of Horſe, 20 of Foot, 1 'Lieutenant of Horſe, 2 of the King's Life-'Guards, 1 of the King's Quarter-Maſters of Re-'giments, 53 Lieutenants of Foot, 3 Adjutants, '1 Trumpeter, 4 Surgeons, 3 Clerks of Regi-'ments, 21 under Officers of Foot and Horſe, '2528 Horſe and Foot Soldiers, 12 Hautboys, 4 'Surgeons Mates, 24 Drums: Of the Chancery 'were Priſoners, the Secretary *Cederkielm*, the Se-'cretary *Dickbon*, 2 Writers in the Chancery; 'the King's Chaplain, and Mr. *Morbergh*; Priſo-

ners; in all 2978, taken from the *Swedes*, the following Trophies, 34 Standards of Horſe, 29 of Dragoons, 69 Colours, of which 6 are of the Regiments of Guards; in all 134 Standards and Colours. In this Battle only 4 Cannon were taken, becauſe the *Swedes* brought no more into the Action, 1 pair of Kettle Drums of Silver, belonging to the Guards, 3 Pair of Copper. In the intrim, Prince *Menzickoff*, who march'd the 28th in purſuit of the *Swedes*, could not overtake them till the 30th, notwithſtanding all the Expedition he made; for they retir'd precipitately, leaving behind them the greateſt part of their Baggage, that Day his Highneſs diſcover'd them poſted very Advantageouſly near the ſmall Town of *Perecolocza*, at the Foot of the Mountain on the Bank of the *Boriſthenes*, and was inform'd by the Quarter-Maſters of a Regiment, and ſome Machians, who were taken Priſoners; that the King of *Sweden* had paſs'd the *Boriſthenes*, by ſwimming with Major General *Spar* and *Lagereroon*, and 300 of the beſt mounted Troopers about 3 Hours before, and had left on this Side the remains of his Army, under the command of General *Lewenhaupt*: Some ſaid the King was wounded the Day before the Battle in the Head, others in the Ankle; and indeed, ſo various were the Stories concerning him, that we cannot here repeat them; he retired as they ſay to *Ockzakow*, a Town at the Mouth of the Bay, in the Country of the *Budzaick Tartars*; but we heard afterwards that he was gone to *Bender*, on the River *Nieſter*, and that he was Royally us'd by the *Turks*; where we muſt leave him, and return to Prince *Menzic-*

koff;

'*koff*, who without loſs of time, caus'd his Body 'of Men, which did not exceed 9000 to advance 'againſt the *Swedes*, and ſome Priſoners having ad-'ded, that they believed they might be diſpos'd to 'ſurrender themſelves on terms of Capitulation: 'His Highneſs ſummon'd them to yield, intimating 'to them, that they were depriv'd of all Means of 'eſcaping by a Retreat, and that if they rejected 'his offer, they were not to hope for Quarter, 'but be all put to the Sword.

'HEREUPON the *Swedes* ſent to his Highneſs 'Major General *Cruitz*, Colonel *Duckers*, Lieute-'nant Colonel *Tranſetter*, and Adjutant General '*Douglas* to Capitulate, and an Agreement was 'preſently made, ſign'd afterwards by Prince '*Menzickoff*, and General *Lewenhaupt*; purſuant 'to which, the *Swedes* who contrary to all expecta-'tion, were yet 16286 Men ſtrong, well arm'd 'and moſtly Horſe, yielded themſelves Priſoners 'of War, and laid down their Arms, ſurrender-'ing that Day to Lieutenant General *Bauer*, 'with the Camp Cheſt or Treaſure, the Military 'Chancery; all the Colours, Standards, Kettle-'Drums, and Drums; the *Czar* came up in Per-'ſon, and joyn'd Prince *Menzickoff*, juſt at the 'time when the *Swedes* laid down their Arms.

IMMEDIATELY after the Action, and before the taking of General *Leuwenhaupt*, and the Surrender of the Army Priſoners; the *Czar*, himſelf, ſent an Account of the Fight in general, to ſeveral Courts, Princes, and Perſons, by Expreſs; the Letters being written by his Majeſty's own Hand, as particularly, to the Court of *Berlin*, to *Vienna*, to the *Hague*, and King *Auguſtus*; the *Czar*'s Letter to his Miniſter, M. *Goltz*, at the Court of *Berlin*, was as follows,

To

To the General, Velt Mariſchal, Lieutenant.

MONSIEUR,

I Acquaint you, by theſe Preſents, with the great Victory I have (unexpectedly) obtain'd, by the Bleſſing of God, and the unſpeakable Bravery of my Troops, with very little Loſs on my Side; in the following Manner: The Enemy early this Morning, attack'd with all their Forces, both Horſe and Foot; our Cavalry, which behav'd themſelves ſo well, that the Swedes *were repulſed with great Loſs; they drew up again in Order of Battle before our Army, whereupon, we cauſed our Infantry to march out of our Intrenchments, and drew up our Forces in order of Battle; and poſted our Horſe, on the Wings of the Foot, which being perceiv'd by the Enemy, they did the like, and having attack'd us, they were ſo well receiv'd by our Troops, that they were oblig'd to quit the Field; and our Troops took many Standards, Colours, and Cannon; and among the Priſoners, there are the General Velt Mareſchal* Renſchild, *beſides four other Generals,* viz. Slippenbach, Stakellbrugh, Hamilton, *and* Roſen; *the firſt Miniſter of State,* Count Piper, *the two Secretaries of State,* Hermelin *and* Cederkielm; *and ſome thouſands of Soldiers and Officers, of which we will cauſe the Particulars to be ſent to you very ſpeedily, becauſe the Shortneſs of the Time does not permit to do it at preſent. To ſay all, in a Word, the Enemy's whole Army has had the Fate of* Phaeton; *we do not yet know what is become of the Perſon of the King of* Sweden, *whether he be Living, or with our Fathers. We have commanded our Lieutenants General,* Galiczin *and* Baurs, *to purſue the flying Enemy with our Cavalry.*

Cavalry. We wiſh you, with this our Victory, all Proſperity.

Sign'd

PETER.

THUS ended all the vaſt Deſigns of the King of *Sweden*, of whom we ſhall ſay no more here, than that he eſcaped, as hath been ſaid, into the Dominions of the Grand Seignior, and was well receiv'd by the Order of the Port at the City of *Bender*, a Frontier of the *Turks*, on the Side of *Tartary*, and on the Banks of the *Neiſter*, and where he meditated his Revenge, in a Manner ſo unbecoming a Chriſtian Prince, as to animate the *Mahometans* and Common Enemies of *Chriſtians*, to make a War againſt the *Czar*; and was again the Occaſion of much Blood, and much Coſt to the *Chriſtian* World, as ſhall appear in its Place.

HIS *Czariſh* Majeſty had now no more Work upon his Hands of this Kind, the Grand Enemy being thus gone, and that Army entirely defeated, which had been ſo long the Terror of *Poland*; what remain'd, was the Work of meer Negotiation and Alliance. The pretended King *Staniſlaus*, and his Party, having now loſt their main Supporter, fell into their firſt Nothing, whence they came, and King *Auguſtus* dethron'd in an Arbitrary and violent Manner, as has been ſaid; was invited to re-aſſume the Kingdom, even by many of thoſe, who had been Inſtruments in turning him out.

THAT

THAT Part of the Affairs of *Poland*, relate ſo much to the Affairs of *Muſcovy*, and the *Czar* had ſo much Glory in reſtoring that ruin'd Prince King *Auguſtus*, notwithſtanding he had relinquiſh'd his Friendſhip, and broken his Treaties with him, that it cannot be omitted.

As Moderation, and doing Good for Evil, is one of the Beſt of *Chriſtian* Virtues, ſo forgetting Injuries, and relieving oppreſs'd Princes, is one of the brighteſt Parts in the Glory of the Conqueror; the *Czar* made it one of his firſt Diſpatches, to give King *Auguſtus* a Part in the Joy of his Victory, and thereby let his *Poliſh* Majeſty ſee, that he had Kindneſs enough left, to forget what was paſt, and place it all to the Account of the Violence he was under; and we were told a Meſſage was ſoon after ſent to invite him to reaſſume the Throne, with Aſſurances of Support, from the ſame conquering Hand, which had driven his only Enemy, *that is to ſay*, his only formidable Enemy out of *Chriſtendom*, and who was now in a State of Exile, among the *Barbarians*, without an Army, without his victorious Generals, without his Chief Miniſter Count *Piper*, without Friends, and without Money; and conſequently, that there was no Room to fear his Return into *Poland*, or meddling any more with the Affairs of that Country.

WHETHER this were ſo or not, *this is certain*, that King *Auguſtus* no ſooner received this ſurprizing and unexpected News, but he began to caſt about his Return and meditate his going back into *Poland*, to recover the Crown, which was torn from his Head by Violence and War: Nor was it long before he receiv'd ſuch Invitations from the *Poles* themſelves, as without any Room to conſider far-

farther, determin'd him in the Affirmative, as we ſhall ſee preſently.

IF the Overthrow of the King of *Sweden*, was a Surprize of Joy to the abdicated King *Auguſtus*, it was no leſs an Aſtoniſhment to King *Staniſlaus*; indeed it was a Clap of Thunder to him, a Blaſt from Heaven, that at one Guſt, overthrew him and all his Intereſt and Friends.

HE was at *Lemberg* when he met with the News, and had with him General *Craſſau*, with a Body of 16000 *Swedes*, very good Troops, and had about 12000 *Poles*, who were moſt of them Gentlemen, and were very well mounted: So that he had near 30000 Men, beſides the Palatine of *Kiou*, who was hearty in his Intereſt, and had about 8000 Men more, with him, at his capital City of *Kiou*, or *Kiovia*.

HAD the King of *Sweden*, after the Loſs of the Battle at *Pultowa*, inſtead of Flying into the *Turks* Dominions he ſcarce knew whether, kept to the North, and gone to *Kiou*, and had directed all that could eſcape to have done the like, he had play'd a Game, that might ſtill have renew'd the War, for his Cavalry which ſurrender'd to the *Ruſſians*, would immediately have ſeparated, and in ſmall Bodies have eſcap'd, and perhaps five or ſix Thouſand of them, have got together there; and having ſuch a Body of Men at Hand, as King *Staniſlaus*, and the Palatine *Kiou* had, as above, he would have been 50000 ſtrong again immediately; but, *Qui Jupiter vult perdere hos dementat*, his *Swediſh* Majeſty was not to take one right Step, or do any thing but what was to precipitate himſelf, and all his Friends into farther Ruin.

As ſoon as King *Staniſlaus*, his People, receiv'd the News, they ſtood like Men Thunder-ſtruck, looking at one another; the *Poles* that were with him, and adheard to his Intereſt, began to conſult their own Safety, and fled like *Iſraelites* every Man to his Tent; ſo that of 12000 Horſe, he had in a Weeks time, ſcarce 2000 left, General *Craſſau*, with his *Swedes*, foreſeeing the Storm that began immediately to gather behind him, I mean from *Saxony*, and of which I ſhall ſpeak at large preſently, began to conſider in what Part of the World he was, namely in the remoteſt Part of *Poland*, that he had no Time to loſe, and that if he did not immediately ſecure the Paſſages into *Pruſſia* and *Pomerania*, his Retreat might be cut off, or he might be obliged to cut his Way through with the Sword.

Upon this Conſideration, he immediately put himſelf in a Poſture to Retreat, and by long Marches, made towards great *Poland*; nay, he made ſuch Expedition, that it look'd as if he had been purſu'd by the *Muſcovite* Army; but the Truth of the Caſe was, that he feared more his Enemies that were before him, than thoſe that were behind him; King *Staniſlaus* went with him, and glad he was to have ſuch a Convoy; for he, that a little before, had a great Body of Troops at his Command, was glad now to take Shelter in a *Swediſh* Camp, and to quit *Poland*, as faſt as he could, leaſt he ſhould fall into the Hands of his Rival.

And this brings me to the Sum of the Affair on that Side; the Victory of his *Czariſh* Majeſty at *Pultowa*, had more Influence upon that remoter Part of the World, by a great deal, than upon that Part where it was tranſacted; the *Czar* had

had nothing to do, but to ſtand ſtill and ſee with Pleaſure, the Conſequences of his Victory over the whole Kingdom of *Poland*, over the whole Electorate of *Saxony*, and indeed over all *Europe*.

I HAVE mention'd before how the Confederated Nobility, call'd the aſſembly at *Lublin*, had rejected the Invitations of King *Staniſlaus*, and how they met afterwards at *Sendomir*, and how even after the King of *Sweden's* return into *Poland*, they yet kept together, and took an Oath to ſtand by one another; tho' at the ſame time they would not come into the Meaſures, which the *Czar* would have brought them to, *viz.* to Chooſe a third King of *Poland*.

NOTHING is more certain than that this Confederacy were the Life of King *Auguſtus* Cauſe at laſt, for they all a long kept a Correſpondence with him, and waited only an Opportunity to reſtore him to the Crown; nor were they without very rational proſpects of bringing it about, even from the firſt time, that they ſaw the King of *Sweden* purſue ſuch wild Chimerick Projects as dethroning the *Czar*, marching into *Muſcovy*, and afterwards into *Urkania*; but eſpecially after they found that the *Czar*, at the Head, but of a Part of his Army had defeated General *Lewenhaupt*, and ſuch an Army of Soldiers as he had with him, who were thought to be invincible, and that all the Ammunition, and Military Proviſions, which were carrying to the King of *Sweden*, were fallen into the Hands of the *Ruſſians*; theſe things not only put the Confederated Nobility in Heart; but they actually purſued the Deſign of bringing back King *Auguſtus*, let his Engagements ſubmit-

ted

ted to, when under Violence, and Oppoſition of the King of *Sweden* be what they would.

'On the other Hand it was eaſie to ſee for ſome 'time before the Battle of *Pultowa*, that King '*Auguſtus*, had form'd new Deſigns, and was ta-'king Meaſures for another Attempt upon *Po-'land*, he found that notwithſtanding the King of '*Sweden's* advance into *Poland*, he made no great 'influence on the *Poles*; that the Nobility had an 'univerſal hatred to King *Staniſlaus*; he found 'alſo, that altho' the *Czar* puſh'd at a new Electi-'on, yet he could not bring the *Poles* to conſent to 'it; but that they manifeſted an exceeding Af-'fection to his Perſon, and a great deſire to ſee him 'once again at the Head of his Armies in *Poland*; 'the *Czar* alſo found he ſhould never bring the '*Poles* to fall into a Conjunction with him, but 'that the Intereſt of King *Auguſtus* reviv'd, and 'that he could not with all his Art, no not by 'threatening to abandon them to the *Swedes*, bring 'them to publiſh an *Interegnum*, much leſs to 'hear of a new Election; but that they owned 'to him, that they knew as King *Auguſtus* was 'driven by violence to give up the Crown, ſo 'he would not be backward to take the firſt op-'portunity to re-aſſume it. Theſe Conſiderati-'ons brought the *Czar* and King *Auguſtus* alſo to 'a ſecret Correſpondence, and even before the 'Battle of *Leſno*, where Count *Lewenhaupt* was 'beaten; King *Auguſtus*, who all the World ex-'pected would have retrench'd his Expences, and 'leſſen'd his Troops to recover his Loſſes, on a ſud-'den lifted Men throughout all his Dominions, 'and among all the Princes of his Houſe, till he 'had ſuch an Army as all well knew the Revenues 'of his own Country could not maintain, tho'

'it

‘ it had been in the time of his greateſt Proſperi-
‘ ty; for he had rais'd above 30000 Men, where-
‘ of at leaſt 16000 were Horſe; a Force which
‘ it was apparent, was with ſome extraordinary
‘ Enterpriſe in View: Certain it was, he could
‘ not foreſee the Defeat of the King of *Sweden*,
‘ neither could he expect with all the Forces,
‘ which it was in his power to raiſe, to be able to
‘ fight the *Swediſh* Forces; ſo that if he had not
‘ had ſome ſecret Aſſurances, he could never have
‘ been ſo weak to have ventured a ſecond At-
‘ tempt, after the firſt had been ſo fatal to him:
‘ It is true, when by the frequent going, and re-
‘ turning of Courriers to and from the *Czar* of
‘ *Muſcovy*, and King *Auguſtus*, and from publick
‘ Conferences held with the Miniſter of the *Czar*
‘ at *Dreſden*, ſome umbrage was taken, that he
‘ was forming new Deſigns in Concert with the
‘ *Czar* againſt the *Swediſh* Intereſt, he endeavour'd
‘ to take off thoſe Apprehenſions by publickly
‘ declaring there was no Deſigns of that kind on
‘ Foot; ordering his Miniſter at the Court of *Ber-*
‘ *lin* to ſignifie to his *Pruſian* Majeſty, that the
‘ Reaſon of thoſe Conferences, and Diſpatches,
‘ were only to ſettle ſome mutual Pretenſions
‘ between him, and the *Czar*; particularly, as to
‘ *Patkull's* Papers, and Writings belonging to his
‘ *Czariſh* Majeſty, which were in the Hands of
‘ a *Muſcovite* Commiſſary, who died at *Dreſden*:
‘ Theſe were the Anſwers given upon thoſe Occa-
‘ ſions; but we found not long afterwards that
‘ this firſt was only to amuze the Courts of *Eu-*
‘ *rope*, till his Deſigns were ripe for Execution;
‘ for no ſooner was Count *Lewenhaupt* defeated
‘ at *Leſno*, as has been ſaid, and the *Swediſh*
‘ Communication with *Poland* cut off, the *Czar*

‘ ſend-

'ſending Word to King *Auguſtus*, that he had the 'King of *Sweden* at an Advantage, and that he 'would anſwer for giving a good Account of him. 'I ſay, no ſooner were theſe Appearances of Suc-'ceſs in his View, but King *Auguſtus* began to 'diſcover himſelf; the great and open Concourſe 'of the *Poliſh* Nobility to his Court, the fre-'quent Expreſſes ſent to *Cracow*, where the No-'bility in his Intereſt were Aſſembled; the viſi-'ble Concert of Meaſures with the Crown Ge-'neral, and the *Poliſh* Army, and ſeveral other 'Circumſtances made it no longer doubted, but 'that he had reſolv'd to return into *Poland*; but 'as ſoon as he had receiv'd by Expreſs from the 'Czar, on Account of the Battle of *Pultowa*, and 'of the entire defeat of the *Swediſh* Army, as 'you have heard, with the Flight of his *Swediſh* 'Majeſty to the *Turkiſh* Dominions; he then 'threw off the Mask, and made his Deſigns no 'longer a Secret.

BUT this went farther immediately, for now the *Poliſh* Nobility throng'd to *Dreſden*, to make their Court to the King, and to tender their Service to him, and a little after this came a ſolemn Deputation from the Crown Army, and from the Confederate Nobility at *Sendomir*, to invite him to return to his People, and to take upon him again the Government; promiſing all the Obedience and Fidelity of Loyal Subjects, and to ſet him upon the Throne again, and maintain him thereon againſt all his Enemies whatſoever.

UPON all theſe Encouragements he could do no leſs than conſent, ſo he receiv'd the *Poliſh* Deputation, acquainted them with his Reſolution to return into *Poland*, and at the ſame time ſent an Ambaſſador to the Czar of *Muſcovy*, to Congratulate him upon the

the News of his Victory, and to acquaint him with his new Measures, desiring his Concurrence, and Assistance, which was only matter of Form, all that Part having been concerted, and concluded between them long before his Preparations.

It is time now to look back to his *Czarish* Majesty's Proceedings after the great Battle at *Pultowa*; the first thing was to send a strong Body of Troops over the *Boristhenes*, to push the flying Enemy; this Party pick'd up some straglers, but the chief Service was to hurry the King of *Swedland* forward, who hearing of those Troops in his Rear, would be sure not to return towards *Poland*, which was the only thing that the *Czar* was unwilling should happen.

Some of the stragling *Swedes*, who escaped from the Battle, fell into the Hands of a *Muscovite* Officer, who was posted on the Frontier of *Polodia*, who attack'd them, and after a short, but bloody Engagement, the *Swedes*, of whom about 120 were kill'd, surrendered, and were made Prisoners, being about 250 Men; but as for about 800 *Cossacks*, the *Russian* General looking on them as Rebels, and Traytors, would give them no Quarter, but they were all cut in Pieces.

The *Palatine* of *Kiou* was the only Man that stood firm for King *Stanislaus*, even after he had receiv'd News of the Loss at *Pultowa*, and after the Retreat of the said King *Stanislaus*, and of General *Crassau*, as above; but as his Forces were small, he was fallen upon by a Deteachment from the *Russian* Army and entirely defeated, and fled afterward to the King of *Sweden* at *Bender*.

This was that *Palatine* of *Kiou*, who brought the *Cham* of the *Tartars* and the King of *Sweden*

together, and ſo wrought with the *Cham*, and thro' his means with that *Turkiſh* Emperor, that he brought the *Czar* into the fatal War with the *Turks*, in which he had that Misfortune to purchaſe Peace with the Loſs of that important Fortreſs of *Aſoph*, and there-with of all that proſpect the *Czar* had of Commerce, and Conqueſt on the Side of the *Black-Sea*, of which ſo much has been ſaid in the beginning of this Hiſtory, and of which we ſhall have more to ſay very quickly.

It might take up ſome time here to look into *Muſcovy*, and take ſome Notice of the rejoycings there, upon the News of this Victory and the Triumph of the *Czar* at his return to *Muſcow*, his Capital City; but I ſhall Couch it all in this ſhort Abridgement at preſent, *(viz.)* that it was ſuch as it is impoſſible to deſcribe.

The *Muſcovites* were not a little in pain at firſt, on the approach of ſuch a Prince, and ſuch an Army, as Fame had repreſented the King of *Sweden* and his Army to be; and at the Apprehenſions of that very Prince approaching them, who had ſo terribly defeated them at the Battle of *Narva*; and to have an Account that this Prince was beaten, and that in ſuch a manner, as ſcarce ever Army was beaten before, *viz.* ſo that none at all of ſo great a Power ſhould eſcape, except ſuch a trifling Number as is mentioned to have gone away with that King; this muſt be ſurpriſing (to be ſure) to them, ſince it was ſo to all the World.

But the Triumph of their Prince exceeded all the reſt, and indeed his *Czariſh* Majeſty had as much Reaſon to Triumph as ever any *Roman* Conſul, or *Roman* Emperor had for the greateſt Victory they ever won; for the *Romans* exceeded

in

in Military Knowledge, and the Experience of Wars of all the Nations of the World; but here was a Prince, and even a Nation, who were, as it might be ſaid, but as of Yeſterday in War, yet victorious over the braveſt and moſt experienc'd Soldiers then thought to be in the World: In a Word, it was a Victory that the World thought impoſſible; the Scholars beating their Maſters! the *Ruſſians* beating the *Swedes*, was like the *Gauls* beating the *Romans*; which was the Wonder of the World.

As the Glory of the Victory was great, ſo, the *Czar* being willing his Subjects ſhould ſee what their Monarch had fought ſo boldly for, and to ſhow familliarly to them the Affair of War, he let them ſee the Trophies which he brought, and what had been purchaſed at the Expence of their Blood. This glorious Triumph was made the 21ſt of *December*, 1701, and is here ſet down at large, from the moſt Authentick Account.

On the 11th, his *Czariſh* Majeſty, attended by Admiral *Aparxin*, and ſeveral of the Nobility, arriv'd at a Country Seat, call'd *Kolemſki*, which is about five *Engliſh* Miles diſtant from *Moſcow*, Prince *Menzikoff* went thither on the 14th, and on the 16th, the whole Court took up their Lodgings in one of the Suburbs which is ſeparated from the Town by the River *Moſcow*; his *Czariſh* Majeſty had appointed to receive the Compliments of all the Foreign Miniſters on the 17th, but a great Fire happening to break out in the Neighbourhood, the *Britiſh* Envoy was oblig'd to defer his Viſit 'till the Day following; at which Time the *Czar* receiv'd him with great Diſtinction, at Prince *Menzikoff*'s Appartment,

and was pleas'd to confer with him ſeveral Hours. Monſieur *Juel*, Envoy from the King of *Denmark* to that Court, together with Monſieur *Grand*, his Predeceſſor, had Audience of his Majeſty, in a private manner. But it being inconvenient the Court ſhould ſtay in a Place where there were ſo litle Accommodation, his Majeſty gave Orders that the Publick Entry ſhould be made on the 21ſt, altho' the Preparations which were making for that Solemnity were not compleated, and the Triumphal Arches, of which they had erected ſeven, were not perfectly finiſh'd; the neceſſary Inſtructions being accordingly given, the Proceſſion was perform'd on the 21ſt, in the following Manner.

The Seminiowski *Regiment led the Way, who were followed by the Cannon, Colours, and Officers that were taken in the Battle againſt General* Lewenhaupt; *theſe were cloſed by a Company of* Preobraſenski *Guards; the* Swediſh *Remains, of the Battles of* Pultowa, *and* Perewoloſch *marched in the next Place, the Non-commiſſion'd Officers of this Body led the Way, next to them the Enſigns and ſecond Lieutenants, in the third Place came the Lieutenants, and next to them the Captain Lieutenants, after whom the Captains of both Foot and Horſe; theſe were followed by the Officers and other Attendants of the Train of Artillery, who preceeded the Ordinance; after which were carry'd the Kettle-Drums, and Colours; then march'd the Majors, Lieutenant Colonels, Colonels, and General Adjutans, and were ſucceeded by the King of* Sweden's *Houſhold, and Equipage, together with the Litter and Bed that he uſed in the Day of Battle; after which came the chief Officers, each marching ſingle, in this Order; Monſieur* Poſſe *Colonel*

General

General of the Guards, Major General Hamilton, *Major General* Stakelbergh, *Major General* Roſe, *Major General* Craſs, *Major General* Caxcits, *Major General* Schelippenback, *General* Lewenhaupt, *Field Mareſchal* Rheinſchild; *the whole being cloſed by Count* Piper, *the King of* Sweden's *firſt Miniſter of State; then his* Czariſh *Majeſty on a ſtately Horſe, which had been preſented to him by King* Auguſtus, *with his Sword drawn, which was formerly a preſent from King* Auguſtus *to the King of* Sweden: *He followed the Priſoners, at the Head of the* Preobraſenſki *Guards, having Prince* Menzikoff *on his Right, and Prince* Dolgoruki *on his Left; in this Order they made their Proceſſion through the City, and his Majeſty was received at the firſt Triumphal-Arch, by the Magiſtrates, at the ſecond, by Prince* Gayari *Governour of the Town; at the third, by the Nobility; at the fourth, by the principal Merchants; at the fifth, by the Clergy; at the ſixth, by the Empreſſes Dowager, and the Princes of the Blood; and at the laſt, by the Burghers: The foreign Miniſters had ſeparate Houſes allotted them for their Ceremony, and his Majeſty made a ſhort ſtand at the reſpective Places where they ſtood: The Cannon was fired ſeveral times round the Town during the Solemnity, and all poſſible Demonſtrations of Joy, were expreſs'd on that Occaſion: About Eight or nine Thouſand Soldiers that were taken Priſoners, were brought into the Town on the Day preceeding; but the Officers belonging to the King of* Sweden's *Foot Guards, having not arriv'd from* Kiow, *ſoon enough to appear in the* Czar's *Triumphant Entry, they were publickly conducted into that City, on the 27th, with the ſame Solemnity, as the other Priſoners, had before marched, on the firſt Inſtant.*

His *Czariſh* Majeſty treated all the chief Perſons of Quality, and the foreign Miniſters at a publick Dinner; in the Evening ſumptuous Fire Works, on which were ſeveral Inſcriptions, and Repreſentations, was prepar'd and went off with great Exactneſs: The chief Machines were, a *Phaeton* ſtruck with a Thunder-Bolt; and another Figure, in alluſion to a late Medal Struck in *Sweden*, two Pillars were firſt lighted, which ſupported imperial Crowns, and were adorn'd with great Variety of blue, green, and pale Flames; when they had burnt ſome Time, a Lion mov'd forward, on whoſe Approach, the firſt Pillar broke ſhort at the Pedeſtal, but as he advanc'd near the ſecond, a Spread-Eagle repreſenting his Majeſty's Arms, launch'd a Rocket, which blew the Lions Head and Neck off, and the Pillar remained firm to the laſt.

His *Czariſh* Majeſty, however, made but a ſhort Stay at *Moſcow*, he knew as well how to improve, as how to gain a Victory; having therefore driven his two capital Enemies, the King of *Sweden*, and the Palatine of *Kiow* into the *Turkiſh* Dominions, ſecur'd the Frontiers as well of *Poland*, as of *Moſcovy*, from their returning, by poſting a ſtrong Body of Horſe, on the Frontiers of the former, about *Lemberg* and *Kiovia*; and another on that Side of the *Ukrain*, on the Bank of the *Boriſthenes*, with Orders to them both, to Scour the Countries ſo effectually, that no Foreign Troops might enter. *I ſay*, His *Czariſh* Majeſty having thus ſecur'd the King of *Sweden*, from returning into *Poland* or *Muſcovy*; he order'd his Troops to File off to the *North*, and by eaſy Marches

Marches to come to *Smolenſko*, under the Leading of Prince *Czeremetoff*, and General *Baur*.

FROM thence, one Body of them marched into *Lithuania*, and about 28000 of them, were directed to wait the Orders of King *Auguſtus*, who was now, in Concert with the *Czar* returning in to *Poland* as above; as ſoon as they heard his *Poliſh* Majeſty had paſs'd the *Oder*, they were to advance to the Banks of the *Viſtula*, on the other Side of *Warſaw*, to be ready to go wherever the King of *Poland* ſhould lead them.

HIS *Czariſh* Majeſty had now a clear Country before him, and having before reduc'd all the Inland Part of the Province of *Livonia*, taken *Narva*, reduc'd *Ingermanland*, razed *Scanſterny* on the *Neva*, built the Fortreſs of *Croonſlot*, and began to build the Royal City of *Petersburg*; he reſolv'd now, to attack the Coaſt Towns of *Livonia*, which were very Strong, and had in them numerous Garriſons of *Swediſh* Soldiers, who were ſure to make a long and vigorous Defence; at the ſame time, his *Czariſh* Majeſty reſolv'd, to extend his Conqueſt on the North of *Ingermanland*, into *Finland*, and the Hereditary Dominions of *Sweden*.

IN Conſequence of theſe Reſolutions, his *Czariſh* Majeſty ordered a Body of an Army to march from the Side of *Pleſkow* and *Novogrod* into *Finland*, and attack the ſtrong City of *Wybourgh*, the beſt Port in all that Part of the Country, while another Army at the ſame time march'd thro' *Lithuania* into *Livonia*, and beſieg'd the ſtrong City of *Riga*.

THIS laſt was an Undertaking of great Importance, for the City of *Riga* was a terrible Place, ſtrong by ſituation, and that ſituation improv'd

with the utmoſt Art; it had a numerous Artillery, a ſtrong Fort, or rather Fortreſs commanding the Entrance to it by Sea, call'd the *Dunamuder ſcans*, being indeed a Royal Citadel, exquiſitely Fortified, and almoſt inacceſſible; it was reported that there was in the City and the *Shcans* a Garriſon of 10000 Men, including the Burghers, who did Duty as Soldiers, commanded by General *Stromfeld*, an experienced Officer, and a Man from whom the World expected all that became a Man of Honour, and of the utmoſt Bravery.

But all this was far from Diſcouraging the *Czar* from the attempt; he knew the importance of the Enterpriſe, and that now was the critical Juncture, in which it was to be Undertaken, with a proſpect of Succeſs; the Affairs of *Sweden* being in ſuch Confuſion, that he was very ſure to meet with no Interruption from without, his Majeſty therefore reſolv'd on the Seige.

This Siege was begun by Field Marſhal *Ceremettoff*, but was after ſome time ſtop'd, and afterwards carried on only by a Bombardment and Blockade, in order to ſave the effuſion of Blood; it was certain that there was time enough before them to reduce the Garriſon to Extremity, no Relief being likely to come to the Place by Sea, and none poſſible to be brought by Land; at the beginning of this Blockade a moſt lamentable Diſaſter befel the Beſieg'd, in which the Beſiegers had no hand at all; for the 22d of *January* the Labratory where the Engineers made their Fireworks, and fill'd their Bombs, which was built in the Rear of the Baſtions, adjoyning to one of the Magazines belonging to the Garriſon took fire by accident, and the fire reaching one of the Shells it burſt, and in an inſtant the whole Houſe, with

the

the Magazine, adjoyning, blew up into the Air with a Blaſt that ſhoke the whole City, and made even the Earth as far as the *Ruſſian* Camp tremble: There was, 800 Barrels of Gunpowder in the Magazine, beſides what was in the Labratory; and beſides the Shells which were fill'd; the Conſternation in the City was inexpreſſible, not a a Houſe but ſuffer'd, and the whole Place look'd like a City in Ruins; of the Garriſon the Barracks being near the Place, 600 Men were entirely loſt, including the Guard of the Baſtion; the Baſtion it ſelf was entirely ruined, and the great Hoſpital, in which was 1200 ſick or wounded Soldiers, beſides the Officers of the Houſe attending them was blown up, and not a Soul of them all left a live; ſo that in the whole, near 2000 People were deſtroyed, beſides ſuch as were wounded in other Parts of the Town.

THE Governor under the greateſt ſurpriſe of Mind, as well as influenced by the Blaſt being on the Parade of the Place, giving orders for a Sally fell down as one dead; and when by proper Applications he recovered himſelf, he could not hear, no not the Noiſe of a Drum; he had no Notion for a great while, but that a Mine had been Sprung by the Enemy under the Baſtion, and that they would immediately Storm the Breach.

THE force of the Powder had not only blown up the Baſtion, but it had made a Breach in the Body of the Place nine or ten Yards wide, ſo that even the Horſe might have come in; the reſt of the Officers, while things were in this Extremity, being under no ſuch great Concern, and Conſequently leſs ſurpris'd, than the Governour, reſolv'd ſooner what was to be done, and beating to Arms, rais'd the whole Garriſon to defend

the

the Place if they ſhould be attack'd; then they caus'd all the Horſe Dung and Litter, which could be had to be brought to the Place, and made up the Breach in the Baſtion as well as time could permit, ſetting three Rows of Palliſſadoes before the Breach, and making a large Coupre or Retrenchment behind it; ſo that tho' the *Ruſſians*, had they been aware of the Blow, might have made an Advantage of it; yet ſuch was the Diligence of the Garriſon, that they made it up, as above, the ſame Night that the Diſſaſter happen'd; nor could *Muſcovite* Generals make any advantage of it.

THE Blockade of this Place held till the latter End of *July*, 1710, when General *Stromfield*, the Governor was oblig'd to Capitulate, the Garriſon being reduc'd by Hunger, and hard Service, and by the fire of the Bombs, together with the Diſſaſter above-mention'd, to leſs than 2000 ſound Men; the *Ruſſian* Velt Marſhal gave them honourable Conditions, as well for the Garriſon, as to the Burghers and Inhabitants, Courts of Juſtice, and Nobility, to whom all their Priviledges, Judicatories, and civil Rights were continu'd and preſerved; as to the Garriſon, they were allowed all Soldierly Honours, and to be conducted to *Revel*, upon Condition nevertheleſs, that they ſhould Embark there, and return to *Stockholm*.

GENERAL *Baur*, who as I have noted before, ſerv'd under the Velt Marſhal *Cezeremet* at this Seige was immediately after the ſurrender of *Riga*, detach'd with a good Body of Troops, to attack *Peruan*, which he reduc'd in about 6 Weeks, being taken the 19th of *September*.

DURING the Blockade of *Riga*, General, or Admiral *Apraxin*, who for the time commanded the Land Army, beſieged *Wybourgh* in *Finland*, as above.

above. The Governor had Conditions granted him alſo upon the Capitulation; but the Admiral thought fit after the Surrender to detain the Garriſon, by way of Repriſal, till ſatisfaction was obtain'd for ſeveral Breaches of the Rules of War, which the King of *Sweden* in the time of his Proſperity had practis'd upon his *Czariſh* Majeſty's Subjects: As *firſt*, detaining a Ship ſent by his *Czariſh* Majeſty's order into *Sweden* with a Flag of Truce, to propoſe ſome Regulations of Paſſes and Rules for viſiting the Ships of Neutral Nations, which Ship contrary to the Law of Nations was never reſtor'd. (2.) Detaining the *Ruſſian* Reſident at *Stockholm*, at the breaking out of the War, tho' the *Swediſh* Reſident at *Muſcow* was ſuffer'd to go Home, without any manner of Reſtraint. (3.) Becauſe the Subjects of *Saxony*, who went into *Sweden*, and liv'd there in the time of Peace, on the meer Affairs of Commerce, and behaving quietly and peaceably, had notwithſtanding their Effects ſeiz'd and confiſcated.

GENERAL *Apraxin* found in *Wybourg*, part of the Magazine for the whole Province of *Finland*. The particulars are as follows,

An Inventory of the Artillery, Arms, and Ammunition found in Wybourg.

'EIGHT Mortars, Four-Bombs, from 40 to 80 'Pound weight; 2 Hauwitezers of 16 Pounders, 3 Braſs Cannon of 9 Pound Ball, and 95 of Iron, from 3 Pound to 24 Pound Ball, 8644 Granadoes, from 3 Pound to 30, 17540 Bullets, from 3 to 40 Pound, 1816 Cartridges, for from 3 to 24 Pounders, 638 Quintals of Powder, 16 of Brimſtone and Salt Petre, 3 of Match, and 2

of

' of Copper, 1660 new Muſquets, and 1950 uſed,
' 1700 new Carbines, 189 damaged, *&c.* There
' were likewiſe found in the Town 58 Colours,
' and one Standard.

THE City and Port of *Revel*, the Iſle of *Oſel*, the Town of *Arensburg*, and *Kexholm* in *Finland*, were all taken this Campaign; a Year almoſt, as glorious to the *Czar* as the laſt: In theſe Places the *Muſcovites* found great Quantities of Cannon, and Ammunition, as alſo ſmall Arms, and Hand Granadoes in abundance.

THE whole Province of *Livonia* was now reduced, except the *Dunamunderſchans*, which Heaven gave into his *Czariſh* Majeſty's hands ſoon after, his own way, that is, by another Blaſt of Powder. The *Czar* of *Muſcovy*, having by this time compleated the Conqueſt of *Livonia*, and conſequently Triumph'd over the *Swedes* in thoſe Parts of the World; his Majeſty, to gain the Affection of the People promis'd them, not only the continuation of their Priviledges, but likewiſe to diſcharge them from ſeveral heavy Burthens they complain'd of under the Regency of the *Swedes*. He alſo publiſh'd a Proclamation to encourage Trade, and Navigation, and permitted the Exportation of all the Goods of the Country, except Timber fit for building of Ships, which he had occaſion for himſelf, being reſolv'd to have in a ſhort time a conſiderable Navy in the *Baltick*. Foreign Ships which were come into the Harbours of *Livonia* ſince the Conqueſt thereof, have been receiv'd with all poſſible Civility; and in ſhort, the *Muſcovites* neglected nothing to render their Government acceptable to Foreigners as well as to the Natives.

WE muſt now look a little back to the King of *Poland*, and to the Powers with whom the *Czar* of *Muſcovy* had neceſſarily to do in this War; I have taken notice that his *Poliſh* Majeſty having been invited by the Confederated Nobility, and encourag'd by his *Czariſh* Majeſty, and eſpecially upon the Victory at *Pultowa*, to re-aſſume the Crown of *Poland*, had declar'd his Reſolution to do ſo, and was march'd for *Warſaw*, with 800 Horſe, having paſs'd the Order the 24th of *Auguſt*, 1709.

IT remains to take notice that his *Poliſh* Majeſty, at his Entrance into *Poland* publiſh'd a full *Circular Letter* of the Reaſons, both of his having Abdicated, and of his Return, which has ſo much in it of his former Concert of Meaſures with his *Czariſh* Majeſty, and ſo much juſt Acknowledgement of his Obligation to the *Czar*, that when we ſhall find him forgetting thoſe Obligations a ſecond time, we ſhall have occaſion to look back upon this *Circular Letter*, as a great Satisfaction, in order to make a Judgement of the Juſtice of his Proceedings. The *Circular Letter*, is as follows;

We *Auguſtus* II, by the Grace of God, King of *Poland*, Great Duke of *Lithuania*, &c.

TO All, and every One, this may concern, and in particular, to the moſt Venerable, the Venerable in Jeſus Chriſt; the moſt Illuſtrious, Magnificent, and Generous Senators, and Officers of the Nobility, and to all the Inhabitants of the Kingdom of Poland, *and the great Dutchy of* Lithuania, *of what ſoever Condition they be: We make known what follows, you may have eaſily underſtood from our Proceedings, tho'*

we

we did not declare it; that altho' through a hard but unavoidable Neceſſity, we were obliged to abſent our ſelves from you with the Body, yet you always remain'd in our Hearts: However, ſeeing that God, who has been mov'd with Compaſſion on one Part, for our Sufferings and Misfortunes; and provok'd on the other, by the exceſſive Pride of our Enemies; begins to promiſe more favourable Days to the Kingdom of Poland; *and ſeeing on the other Hand, that in maintaining the Confederation of* Sendomir, *in all its Parts, you have uſed your utmoſt Endeavours, for preſerving the Republick in the ſame Condition in which we left it, according to the Example of true and faithful* Polanders; *who have on all Occaſions, expreſs'd their Loyalty to their Kings. And laſtly, Seeing that after an Heroical Patience, and ſo long a Tryal, you are continually exhorting us, to return and Reſume the Government of the Kingdom of* Poland. *We on our Parts being no leſs deſirous than you, or any Member of the Republick, to expreſs our Paternal Affection and Fidelity, being ſo indiſpencibly obliged thereunto, by the* Pacta Conventa; *that according to the expreſs Terms thereof, it is not left in our Power, altho' we ſhould have a Mind to it, to renounce a Crown which was ſo lawfully put upon our Head: Inſomuch, that whatſoever has been done contrary thereunto, is to be look'd upon as null and void, as you have declar'd, in the Diets of* Leopold *and* Lublin: *Therefore we are return'd into* Poland, *to aſſert and defend the Honour of the Crown; and we declare, by theſe Preſents, that as we have therein no other Aim, than chiefly to maintain the holy orthodox Faith, defend the ancient Rights and Privileges of the Nation, and preſerve the Bounds of the Kingdom; of all which, we are ready to give full Aſſurances, in the next Aſſembly or Council, by confirming*

ing the Pacta Conventa, *as to the Points aforeſaid, according to the deſire of the States: Therefore, We earneſtly invite all ſuch, as are faithful to us, and adhere to our Majeſty, either Burghers or Military Men, to aſſiſt us; and in this, we think to give them Proofs of our paternal Gratitude; at the ſame time, we offer our Clemency, and paternal Affection, to all thoſe, who before we left the Kingdom, or ſince, have quitted our Party upon any Pretence whatſoever; repreſenting unto them, that unleſs they are willing, through a deſperate Attempt, to expoſe the Publick to a general Subverſion, they have no Reaſon to decline this Act of Indemnity; being willing to forget their Offences, and promiſing to receive them into our Favour and Protection. Furthermore, We aſſure the States of the Republick, that in the Paſſage and Quartering of our Troops, we will keep them under an exact Diſcipline, and will have all poſſible Regard to the Eſtates of the Clergy and others, as long as the War will continue; and after the Concluſion thereof, which we pray God to haſten, we promiſe, upon our Royal Word, to ſend them, without delay, out of the Kingdom; being willing, wholly to conform ourſelves therein, to the Intentions of the Republick. We Command all Officers, Civil and Military, and others, to cauſe theſe Preſents to be read and publiſhed, in all Places.*

Given, *Auguſt* 1,
1709. Sign'd,

AUGUSTUS, Rex.

THIS

THIS *Circular Letter* was publiſh'd by King *Auguſtus*, at the Head of his Army as ſoon as he enter'd *Poland*, and it was annex'd to a long *Manifeſto*, and to a like *Circular Letter* to the Nobility and Clergy of *Lithuania* inviting them to come and joyn him at *Warſaw*, offering to receive them, and promiſing his Amniſty, or Pardon, even to thoſe who had joyn'd King *Staniſlaus*, and acted againſt him.

THE *Poles* embraced this latter part, with almoſt an univerſal Conſent, and the King of *Poland* was received with all the Careſſes, and all the Tokens of Zeal and Affection imaginable; as to the particulars, ſuch as the vaſt Concourſe of the Nobility to him at *Warſaw*, and the Harangues, Speeches, Compliments, and Promiſes, *&c.* made to him, by thoſe that attended his Court at *Warſaw*, they relate more particularly to the Hiſtory of King *Auguſtus*, and I therefore refer the Reader to other Writers of them; only obſerving that in the Courſe even of his Hiſtory, we may perhaps ſee of how little importance, Vows and Proteſtations of Sincerity, Loyalty, and Fidelity are in this Age, in thoſe Parts of the World.

BUT leaving theſe things, it follows of Courſe now to carry our Hiſtory farther from his *Czariſh* Majeſty's ſhare of acting than before, and go as far as *Denmark* to find another Allie in this War, in whoſe Territories, we ſhall quickly find his Majeſty obliged to act, as well in Perſon as by his Armies and Navies, and to make a yet more conſiderable Figure in the War, than ever he did before.

IT has been mention'd in the beginning of this Work, how far the King of *Denmark* was an Allie with the King of *Poland*, and with his *Czariſh* Majeſty,

jeſty in the beginning of the War with *Sweden*; how the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* aſſiſting the *Swedes* by Sea, and the Troops of the Houſe of *Lunenburg* aſſiſting the Duke of *Holſtein* by Land, the King of *Denmark* was forced to make a Diſadvantageous Peace with both *Sweden* and *Holſtein*, and have the Mortification to ſee his Conqueſt in *Holſtein* ſnatch'd out of his Hands, to raiſe his Siege of *Toningen*, and to ſee the King of *Sweden* under the Protection of the *Britiſh* and *Dutch* Squadrons Land juſt at his Palace Gate, and Bombard his capital City of *Copenhagen*.

BUT now the Tables were turn'd, the King of *Sweden* was, as it were, out of the World, and the *Czar* the King of *Denmark*'s Allie, and faſt Friend, was Victorious, and very Formidable; now his Majeſty of *Denmark* thought it was a Juncture happily offer'd by Heaven, for him to puſh the *Swedes* in his Turn, and to retrieve the Diſhonour which he had ſuffer'd, and that he had as juſt Reaſon, to Break with the King of *Sweden*, as the King of *Poland* had, whoſe Caſe was many Ways the ſame.

WITH theſe Thoughts, and concerting Matters with his *Czariſh* Majeſty for aſſiſtance, as well by Sea as by Land, he reſolv'd to break with *Sweden* immediately, and according to the King of *Poland*'s Method, his *Daniſh* Majeſty publiſh'd alſo a Manifeſto, of the Reaſons for his Reſolution; this, as being not to our preſent Purpoſe, I omit; and only mention it to Introduce the Story of his *Czariſh* Majeſty's Part in this War, which follow'd after.

THE King of *Denmark* having declar'd War, and brought a conſiderable Army together, reſolv'd to paſs over with them to *Schonen*, a Pro-

vince of *Sweden*, once belonging to *Denmark*, but Conquer'd formerly by the King of *Sweden*, and conceded to *Sweden*, by the Treaty of *Roſchild*.

To bring this Abridgment of the Hiſtory of this War into a narrow Compaſs, it is to be obſerv'd, that the *Swedes* being at firſt ſurpriz'd, to be thus attack'd, were at firſt under great Apprehenſions, but General, Count *Steinbock*, one of the *Swediſh* Officers at the Battle of *Pultowa*, and who made his Eſcape out of that Battle, being appointed to Command the *Swediſh* Army, gave Battle to the *Danes*, under the Walls of *Helſingburgh* in *Schonen*, and entirely defeated their whole Army, taking all their Cannon, Baggage, and Ammunition, and forcing the Remainder of their Army, to embark as well as the could, on board ſome *Dutch* Ships in the *Sound*, and get over into *Jutland*, and to *Eleſnore*, to ſave their Lives; the *Swedes* kill'd in this Battle, about 3000 Men, and took near 4000 Priſoners.

This Victory deliver'd *Sweden* effectually, for a time; but the King of *Denmark*, who burn'd with an impatient Deſire of Revenge, not being equal to his Enemies, enter'd into a Treaty with his *Czariſh* Majeſty, to be ſupply'd with 8000 Men, who were to be Convey'd to *Copenhagen* by Sea.

It now comes in the Event of Things, to take Notice that the *Czar* of *Muſcovy*, having, as has been ſaid, built a Royal City on the *Neva*, and a Fortreſs defending the Port, by which it was effectualy ſecur'd, ſo as to be able to receive and protect any Number of the bigeſt Ships. His Majeſty whoſe Genius for the Sea Service, has been ſufficiently mention'd, reſolv'd to build himſelf

himſelf a Royal Navy; and to that Purpoſe, having now made himſelf Maſter of *Narva*, and *Riga*, *Wyborg*, and *Revel*, and other Places on that Coaſt, he thereby got great Supplies of Seamen, beſides what he hir'd at other places.

In a Word, ſuch Expedition his Majeſty made in building Ships of his own, and employing alſo ſeveral Perſons to buy Ships of great Burthen, in *England* and *Holland*, which he fitted up as Ships of War; that by this Means his *Czariſh* Majeſty began to have a Fleet at Sea, as well as the *Swedes* and *Danes*, tho' not at firſt of ſo great Ships; tho' now he has built ſo many noble, large, beautiful Men of War, that he diſpiſes thoſe bought Ships, which being built generally for Merchants Buſineſs, and not for the War, were not ſo uſeful as thoſe which he built.

For the effectual Furniſhing theſe Ships with experienced Seamen, for managing them, his *Czariſh* Majeſty was not diſmaid with the Impoſſibility; he got Men for Money, in almoſt all Parts of *Europe*: And thus his Men of War appear'd in the *Baltick* in this *Daniſh* War, of which we ſhall ſay more in its Place, ſooner than could have been imagin'd: From theſe Beginnings, his *Czariſh* Majeſty has raiſed himſelf to that formidable Poſture in his Marine Affairs, which we ſee him in at Preſent.

By the Converſing with, and by Direction of the foreign Seamen, which his Majeſty has entertain'd in his Pay, his own Subjects are gradually bred up to the Sea, and are found to be as expert in guiding the Ships, and as bold and daring in Fight, as can be deſir'd of them; and even the Men, following in that, the Genius of their Sovereign, appear pleas'd and delighted with the Service,

and with Maritime Affairs; ſo that now his *Czariſh* Majeſty has many Thouſand able Seamen of his own Subjects, and will in a few Years have as many Thouſand more as he pleaſes.

To furniſh himſelf with Ships he had nothing to do, but to furniſh himſelf with Builders, and Carpenters, having all the Materials for building within himſelf, and able to furniſh all the Nations of the World, beſides: Naval Stores of all kinds are the natural Produce of his Country, and our Eaſt Country Merchants know very well, that even the Royal Navies of great *Britain*, *Holland*, *France* and *Sweden* are furniſh'd with Hemp, Flax, Timber, Plank, Pitch and Tar, from his *Czariſh* Majeſty's Dominions, and as for his Iron, which is the only thing wanting, he has enough in his own Country, if they pleaſe but to dig for it, and of Copper alſo.

His *Czariſh* Majeſty's known Diligence in theſe things is ſuch, and his Application has been follow'd with ſo much Succeſs, that the Liſt of his Fleet, as I have ſeen it in the latter End of the Year 1720, was thus,

36 Ships of the Line, from 50 to 104 Guns each.
28 Fregates, from 12 to 40 Guns each.
20 Brigantines and Sloops, from 4 to 10 Guns each.
360 Gallies for Tranſporting Soldiers.
120 Tranſport-Ships, and Ships employ'd in fetching Timber, and Naval Materials from *Riga* to *Petersburg*.
Beſides hir'd Ships.

If this Liſt be a true One, I refer the Reader to any, or all the Hiſtories in the World to find out

out one Example of any Prince in the World, who from having not one Ship, or one Sea-Port in thoſe Seas, did in ſo ſhort time furniſh out ſuch a Navy, and bring a Nation, who before knew little or nothing of the Sea, and had neither Genius for it, or Notion of it, to be Maſters of the Buſineſs, expert and able Seamen, and equal, if not Superior to all his Neighbours of the *Baltick*.

It was but three Years between his *Czariſh* Majeſty having not one Ship, and a ſtrong Navy, not one Port in thoſe Seas, and be Maſter of ſix of the ſtrongeſt Port Towns in the North, *(viz.) Riga, Pernau, Revel, Narva, Petersburg* and *Wybourg*.

The King of *Denmark*, as I have noted had declared againſt *Sweden*, and had Landed an Army in *Schonen*, but was driven out again by plain Force, and his Army entirely routed, and cut in Peices at the great Battle of *Helſingburg*: This throws him into the Arms of his *Czariſh* Majeſty, who was now become the general Refuge of oppreſs'd Monarchs, his *Czariſh* Majeſty embracing all occaſions to Support the Enemies of *Sweden*, went in Perſon to his Aſſiſtance, where a ſecond Deſcent upon *Schonen*, was reſolved, and his Majeſty carried ſuch a Fleet, and ſuch an Army to aſſiſt in that Work, that had been more than ſufficient to have reduc'd the whole Kingdom of *Sweden*, rather than a Province, which attempt, how it was laid aſide, and why, and what the Conſequences of it were, we may ſee farther that the relating the Story, of which in its turn.

But we muſt now turn our Eyes to the Eaſt and the South, from whence new Enemies were rais'd up by the indefatigable buſtle of the King of *Sweden*, and the *Palatine* of *Kiou*, of whom I took

Notice, that being defeated he fled to *Bender*, after the King of *Sweden*.

THE King of *Sweden* was now come to *Bender*, where the *Baſſa* receiv'd him Civily, but would not go any Length in protecting and ſuccouring him, without Orders; and therefore ſent a *Chioux* Expreſs to *Conſtantinople*, for farther Inſtructions, in the Affair of the King of *Sweden*; the Anſwer to which, was, an expreſs Order to ſhew the King of *Sweden* all poſſible Reſpect, to aſſure him of the Protection of the *Grand Senior*, and to aſſign him a Place to reſide in, near the Town; and to defray his Expence, and the Expence of all his Retinue, out of the Publick Treaſure; ſending at the ſame time, a Meſſenger to the King of *Sweden*, to condole the Neceſſity of his Flight, and to aſſure him of a powerful Protection from the *Grand Signior*; with his Aſſiſtance, as far as he was able to reſtore his Affairs: This was brought at the firſt Enterance of the King of *Sweden* into the *Turk*'s Dominions; but the King of *Sweden* found Means afterwards, to put the whole *Turkiſh* Government into a Ferment, by the Means of the *Cham* of *Tartary*, and the Platine of *Kiow* above-nam'd.

IT ſeems, the Palatine was an Intimate of the *Tartar* Prince, and receiv'd ſignal Favours from him, upon the firſt News of his Misfortunes; and ſome time after, the Palatine took a Journey to the Camp of the *Cham*, to return his Acknowledgement, but principally to ſet on Foot the Conferences, which afterwards produc'd ſuch remarkable Events.

AT this Interview, the Palatine firmly ingaged the *Tartar* Prince, in the King of *Sweden*'s Intereſt; and from that Time forward, they meditated

meditated together, the proper Meaſures for bringing in the Port to the ſame Sentiments, and to break, if poſſible, the Peace between the *Grand Seignior* and the *Czar*, and bring a War upon the *Muſcovites*.

THEY had Room to Inſinuate the exorbitant growing Greatneſs of the *Czar*, upon this Defeat of the King of *Sweden*, the Danger which hung over the Head of the whole *Ottoman* Empire from the encreaſe of Naval Power in the *Black Sea*; the *Czar* building a Royal Navy at *Veronitz*, his Fortifying of *Azoph*, and threatening, even the imperial City of *Conſtantinople* it ſelf.

THIS with ſome other, and more powerful Motives, inflam'd the *Cham* of *Tartary*, who fail'd not to have them repreſented with Advantage to the *Grand Vizier*, Embarking the Baſſa of *Bender* alſo in their Intereſt.

THIS Iſſued in the Palatine of *Kiow*'s going to *Conſtantinople*; ſome told us he was ſent for by the *Grand Vizier*; others, That he was ſent as an Envoy from the King of *Sweden*; others, That he was ſent by the *Cham*, or *Han* of *Tartary*. Be that as it will, 'tis certain that they manag'd their Affairs ſo artfully, that a grand *Divan* was call'd at *Conſtantinople*; the *Grand Seignior*, the *Grand Vizier*, the *Muffty*, and the *Captain Baſſa*, or Admiral, were all brought into it being perſwaded that aſſiſting the *Swede*, and declaring againſt the *Muſcovite*, was abſolutely neceſſary, and this was the only Criſis, when it might be effectually brought to paſs, and when the *Czar* would neceſſarily be reduc'd, and all the Danger apprehended from him, be avoided, and return'd upon himſelf.

It was about the middle of *November*, 1710, when the *Turks* came to a Reſolution, in their great *Givan* at *Conſtantinople*, that it was neceſſary to Break with the *Czar*; immediately the Horſe-Tail, was ſet up at the Gate of the *Vizier*'s Pallace, and the *Ruſſian* Ambaſſador was clapt into Priſon in the ſeven Towers, according to the Cuſtom of the *Turks* in ſuch Caſes.

The *Cham* of *Tartary* was, it ſeems, at this *Divan*, and appearing to concur with the Propoſal of a War, making a long Speech to the Council to move them to it, by ſetting forth the great Growth of the *Czar's* Empire, the Improvement of his Soldiery, and the Naval Preparations which he was making, to attack the Imperial City of *Conſtantinople*, and to Force a Paſſage and Communication with the *Levant*, and with the Emperor, and the *Venetians*, the ancient Enemies of the *Turkiſh* Empire.

This Diſcourſe, together with his ſetting forth the great Opportunity put into their Hands, upon this Junction of the King of *Sweden*, to reduce the Power of the *Czar*, and even, if needful to dethrone him, annimated the *Turks* to that Degree that the War was reſolv'd on with the greateſt Allacrity imaginable, and the Preparations began immediately; for the *Cham* was ſent Back to begin Hoſtilities, and order'd to make Excurſions; the Palatine of *Kiou* had a great Sum of Money given him, for the King of *Sweden*; and that Prince was encourag'd to entertain a Body of Troops, to be able to enter *Poland*, under the Protecton of the Grand Army of the *Turks*, when they ſhould advance to the Frontiers; and Monſieur de *Kiou* had 10000 Dollars given him

him for his own Share, and to ſupport himſelf and Friends.

His *Czariſh* Majeſty was not much alarm'd at this, his Affairs being at that Time in ſo good a poſture, that he was able to appear Equal in the Field to any of his Enemies, or to all of them if they were put together. However, his Majeſty was not backward to make the needful Preparations; and when it appear'd that nothing was to be done by Negotiation, he prepar'd to repel Force by Force, and in the mean Time, cauſed his Troops to march for the Frontiers, to prevent the Ravages and Incurſions of the *Tartars*.

While theſe Things were doing, and that both Sides prepar'd for War, we muſt bring our own Country of *England* into a little *Demellez*, or Broil, with his *Czariſh* Majeſty, in which there is, however, this to be ſaid, that her Majeſty Queen *Anne* being ſenſible, that the Injury was done on the Side of *England*, and that the *Czar* had Juſtice on his Side, nothing was omitted that could reaſonably be done, to give his *Czariſh* Majeſty Satisfaction; the Caſe was about an Affront put on the *Czar*'s Ambaſſadour, by ſome Tradeſmen here, who very raſhly, and without conſidering as they ought to have done, the publick Character he carryed, Arreſted Monſieur *Matteuoff*, the *Ruſſian* Ambaſſador, and inſulted him very rudely, alſo detaining him in Cuſtody for ſome Time.

This we muſt not over-look; the Story is thus, Monſieur *Andrew Matteuoff*, was Embaſſador Reſident to her Majeſty the Queen of *Great Britain*, from the *Czar* of *Muſcovy*: Upon ſome Occaſion or other, he was Arreſted, as above, by ſome private Perſons; who finding his Excellency had had Audience of Leave of the Queen, and was going away;

away; and imagining, or pretending to imagine, he would leave the Kingdom, as it were in Cognito, without paying a few Debts which he ow'd; imploy'd ſome Bayliffs to Arreſt him; the Ambaſſador juſtly ſurpris'd at this Treatment, in Relation to the Laws of Nations; and perhaps not ſo readily ſubmitting to the ſtop, was very roughly handled by thoſe ſort of *Canibals*: Upon which, he made Application for Redreſs to her Majeſty, and her Council, who immediately took Care to confine thoſe Fellows, who had thus, in Contempt of Authority, put this Affront upon him. There were various Stories which flew about, in Reference to the Particulars of Reparation inſiſted on, by his Excellency, which I ſhall not trouble my ſelf to repeat. But in ſhort, his Excellency, at laſt, ſeem'd to be a little ſatisfy'd; and her Majeſty, even after his Departure, order'd her Attorney-General, a little before the Beginning of that *Micaelmas* Term, to proſecute thoſe who had been guilty in that Particular, in the *Queen's-Bench* Court. That this was all that could be done, was certain; but how little the *Ruſſian* Ambaſſador was ſatisfy'd with it, will appear by the following Letters, which paſs'd between Mr. *Henry Boyle*, now Lord *Charleton*, then Secretary of State, and the ſaid Monſieur *Matueoff*, who was retir'd to *Holland*; and by which the whole of the firſt Part of that tedious Story may be fully underſtood; the firſt Letter was from the Ambaſſadour to the Secretary, as follows.

London,

London, July 22, 1708. O. S.

SIR,

'HAVING obſerv'd (ever ſince I had the ho-
'nour of being Ambaſſador extraordinary
'of his (*Czariſh* Majeſty the Emperor of *Great*
'*Ruſſia*, at the Court of *Great Britain*) the ſincere
'and particular Affection which her Majeſty as
'ſhowed to my Maſter, and her earneſt Deſire of
'Maintaining a good Correſpondence between
'the two Crowns of *Great Ruſſia*, and *Great Bri-*
'*tain*; alſo the Queen's Zeal for Juſtice, ſo well
'known throughout the Univerſe: And, Laſtly,
'the ſingular Favour and Benevolence her Ma-
'jeſty has been pleas'd to Confer on me, I have
'all the Reaſon in the World to hope that ſhe will
'vouchſafe to give me a Satisfaction proportio-
'nable to the unparalell'd Affront which was put
'upon me Yeſterday in the Evening, in the
'Street call'd, *Charles-Street.*

'THE matter of Fact ſpeaks of it ſelf, and I
'ſhall only ſay in ſhort, that the Bailiff of that
'City had the Raſhneſs to Arreſt me in my Coach,
'and to carry me a Priſoner to the *Black Raven*,
'a ſcandalous Houſe, without notifying to me the
'Reaſon, and to abuſe me, by thruſting himſelf
'into my Coach, and ſeizing on my Perſon, af-
'ter taking away my Sword, Hat and Cane, as
'it were from a Malefactor; not only contrary
'to the Law of Nations, but even the Right of
'all private Perſons, the immunity of Ambaſſa-
'dors, and their ſacred Priviledges are ſufficient-

'ly

'ly known; and as for the Pretence of Debts 'alledg'd, it is impudently done; for I have 'appointed this very Day for the time of Pay-'ment, and I am ſo far from going away with-'out Diſcharging them, that I have not as yet 'receiv'd any Letter of Recredence, nor Paſſport, 'nor other things Neceſſary for my Departure; 'ſo that this ſhare has been laid for me, purely 'with a Deſign to inſult the Honour of his *Czariſh* 'Majeſty, in the Perſon of his Repreſentative; 'therefore I ſolemnly Proteſt againſt this Vio-'lence offer'd to the Law of Nations, and Demand 'that all thoſe who are guilty of it be hereby pu-'niſhed.

'THE Queen, who is ſo zealous of the Reſpect 'to the Ambaſſadors of Crown'd Heads, and has 'ſo gloriouſly vindicated the Honour of the 'Earl of *Mancheſter* her Ambaſſador at *Venice*, 'and caus'd a rigorous Puniſhment to be inflicted 'on the Officers of the Cuſtom-Houſe; ſome of 'whom were ſet in the Pillory, and others con-'demned to Impriſonment, only for inſulting the 'Gentlemen of his Retinue, cannot but moſt juſt-'ly Revenge the Affront lately put upon me by 'a Corporal Puniſhment.

'COUNT *Zobor*, who was delivered up to the Diſ-'cretion of the King of *Sweden*, for picking a Quar-'rel with his Envoy; likewiſe affords an Inſtance 'of the ſatisfaction I require, as being deſirous of 'nothing with greater Earneſtneſs, than to avoid 'all the ill Conſequences of this Affair: For in 'Caſe the Criminals are conniv'd at under any 'Colour whatſoever, I ſhall be oblig'd to take o-'ther Meaſures, and retire without Recreden-'tials, leaving the whole matter to the Manage-'ment of his *Czariſh* Majeſty my Maſter, as the

'Pro-

'Protector of his injur'd Honour, and his abus'd 'Miniſter,

Sir, I am, &c.

To Monſ. Boyle, *Miniſter and Secretary of State to Her Majeſty of* Great Britain.

Sign'd

A. De MATUEOFF.

Monſ. Mattueoff, *receiving no Anſwer to this Letter ſo ſoon as he expected, he followed it with another in four Days time, as follows,* (viz.)

London, July 26, 1708. O. S.

SIR,

'FOR as much as I have not Receiv'd any Te-'ſtimony of Concern or Regret, neither on 'the Part of the Queen's Majeſty, nor from any 'of her Miniſters ſince *Thurſday* laſt, the 22d In-'ſtant, when I ſent to you in writing my Com-'plaints about the wicked Attempts made upon 'my Character; and in Regard that no Reſentment 'has been in any wiſe ſhewed upon the occaſion 'of that Indignity, in which the Honour of his 'Czariſh Majeſty my Maſter has ſuffered, after an 'unheard of manner; you cannot take it ill that 'I intreat you to get a Paſs-port for me as ſoon 'as poſſible, and without Delay, to the End that 'I may forthwith go out of this Kingdom,

I am, Sir, &c.

Sign'd,

A. De MATUEOFF.

A

A Copy of the Anſwer to the Former from *White-hall*, the 27th of *July*, 1708.

SIR,

ACCORDINGLY, *as I had the Honour to tell your Excellency the firſt time I was with you, after the great Affront that was put upon you, I have us'd my utmoſt Endeavours with all the Zeal I Profeſs for your Excellency's Perſon, and Character, to find out the moſt effectual Means for cauſing a due Reparation to be made you; as ſoon as I arriv'd at* Windſor, *I inform'd the Queen of the Outrage committed againſt your Excellency, and her Majeſty order'd me to aſſure you, that ſhe is extreamly Concern'd upon account of that enormous Procedure, and highly diſpleas'd with Her Subjects who were the Authors of it; and for as much as the Queen has all the Reſpect imaginable for his* Czariſh *Majeſty, whoſe Friendſhip and good Correſpondence have been at all Times, and ever will be moſt Dear and Precious to Her; and in Regard that ſhe has a very peculiar Eſteem for your Excellency's Perſon and Merit, ſhe will omit nothing that lyes in Her Power, to give an ample Satisfaction for the extraordinary Affront which has been put upon your Excellency; and to ſhew her own Reſentments on* Sunday *laſt, an extraordinary Aſſembly of her Majeſty's Privy-Council was call'd at* Windſor, *and ſeven of the Principal Accomplices in that deſperate Attempt were taken up, and committed to Priſon; and the Council is to meet again about that Affair, as ſoon as poſſible, which will be on* Thurſday *next, to Treat in the ſame manner the reſt who ſhall be found guilty of that inſolent Preſumption: And further, the Queen has ordered her Attorney General to draw up an Indictment againſt*

againſt all thoſe Perſons, to the End that they may be Puniſhed after the moſt ſevere and rigorous Manner, that can be according to the Law of this Realm; and I am very ſorry that your Excellency expreſſes ſo much earneſtneſs to Depart, ſince one would be glad that you would ſtay to ſee with what ſtrictneſs Endeavours would be us'd to give you Satisfaction.

AS for my Part, I am extreamly troubled the Occaſion is ſo Bad, and the Subject ſo Diſagreeable, upon which I profeſs my ſelf Devoted to your Service, but as I always took great Delight, when I was otherwiſe employ'd; ſo your Excellency will permit me, even on this unfortunate Account to declare how much I am Concern'd for your Intereſt, and with what Affection and Eſteem,

I am your, *&c.*

Sign'd,

H. BOYLE.

To his Excellency M. DE MATTUECFF, *Ambaſſador Extraordinary of his* Czariſh *Majeſty.*

THE Ambaſſador was ſo far from being ſatisfied with the Letter above, that he immediately demanded his Paſs-port for himſelf, and Family, in a ſhort Letter as follows,

SIR, *London, July*, 27, 1708. O. S.

'PURSUANT to your Word, which I obtain'd 'this Day, I waited from Noon, till about 'Half an Hour after Three a-Clock for the 'Reſolution in Writing about the ſolemn Com-

'plaints

'plaints I to you the 22d wrote Inſtant; but 'for as much as the Buſineſs very much Reſembles 'ſo many former Promiſes, which prov'd Ineffectual in other Affairs, I ſhall leave it to your 'Diſcretion, and only intreat you to ſend me a 'Paſs-port for my ſelf and Family: Sir, I expect 'at leaſt this Favour from your kind Diſpoſition,

Who am, &c.

To Monſieur Boyle, *Miniſter and Secretary of State to to her Majeſty the Queen of* Great Britain.

Sign'd,

A. DE MATUEOEF.

Mr. Secretary Boyle, *tho' very unwilling the Ambaſſador ſhould have gone away without having firſt receiv'd full Satisfaction for the Ill-uſage he had met with, ſent him the following Letter, with the* Paſs-port *enclos'd*.

'I HAVE ſent to your Excellency this Morn-'ing the *Paſs port* you deſir'd, and as for the 'Orders concerning your Moveables, having 'writ about them ſome time ago, I have ſince got 'further Information in the Treaſury, where 'they aſſure me that the Orders are iſſued out; 'and that the Officers of the Cuſtom-Houſe are to 'wait on your Excellency this Morning, to cauſe 'the Equipages to be Tranſported without any 'Moleſtation, and I hope they have already done 'it to your Excellency's Satisfaction.

'I

'I Also give my ſelf the Honour to notifie to 'your Excellency, That an extraordinary Meet-'ing of the Lords of the Queen's Privy Coun-'cil is to be held this Day at Noon, to enquire 'farther into the Circumſtances of that diſmal 'Affair; they have made a ſtrict Search after 'thoſe who were in any wiſe Concern'd therein, 'and have caus'd Ten others to be apprehended; 'ſo that there are at preſent Seventeen Perſons 'confin'd in Priſon, for being concern'd in that 'enormous Action againſt your Excellency, and 'further Orders have been given again to the At-'torney General to Proſecute them with the ut-'moſt Rigour, and to omit nothing that may 'Contribute toward the making to your Excellen-'cy the moſt ſignal Reparation that can be accord-'ing to our Laws.

'I have already had the Honour to aſſure your 'Excellency of the Queen's Sentiments touching 'this Outrage: But I am to Repeat again, that 'Her Majeſty will not forbear by all poſſible 'Means, to ſhew the extraordinary Indignation 'She has conceiv'd, againſt thoſe who have put ſo 'notorious an Affront upon the Ambaſſador of 'Her good Friend, and Allie, his *Czariſh* Majeſty 'your Maſter.

'I cannot conclude without returning Thanks 'to your Excellency for your laſt Letter of Ye-'ſterday, aſſuring you that my Duty, as well as 'Inclination engages me to uſe my utmoſt Efforts, 'in order to procure the moſt ample Satisfaction 'for your Excellency; and that nothing affords 'me greater Delight, than being perſwaded

'that you'l do me the Juſtice to believe, that I 'am with a great Deal of Reſpect, and Af-'fection,

SIR,

To his Excellency, Monſieur De MATEUOFF, *Ambaſſador Extraordinary of his* Czariſh *Majeſty.*

Sign'd

H. BOYLE.

AFTER theſe Letters were written on both Sides, the *Muſcovite* Ambaſſador retir'd to *Holland*; but a new Memorial was ſoon after preſented, on his Part, at the *Britiſh* Court, with a Letter ſent by his *Czariſh* Majeſty himſelf, a Copy of which is here ſubjoin'd.

A Tranſlation of a Letter, written in *Latin*, by His Sacred *Czariſh* Majeſty, to the Moſt Serene Queen of *Great Britain*.

(After both Titles, at large)

WE cannot forbear notifying to your Majeſty, with how great Trouble of Mind and horror, by the humble Remonſtrances of Andrew de Matteuoff, *our Ambaſſador at your Court, Charg'd with ſeveral important Commiſſions; we have receiv'd an unexpected Peice of News,* viz. *That the ſaid Ambaſſador, after having obtain'd an Audience of Leave of your Majeſty, at* London, *the Place of your Reſidence; out of premeditated Malice, and of ſet Purpoſe, (as it*

it appears) was ſet upon in the open Street, by ſeveral Bailiffs, who receiv'd their Commiſſion from a certain Viſcount or Sheriff, and acted like Robbers againſt the Publick Laws of Nations, with an unheard of, and unparallell'd Barbarity: For by Diſperſing his Servants, violently breaking his Coach, taking away his Sword, Cane and Hat, and tearing his Cloaths; put upon him ſuch a notorious Affront, as no civil-liz'd Perſon would preſume to offer to a foreign Miniſter of his Character; nor even to a Commoner, unleſs he would run the Riſque of being Moſt ſeverely puniſh'd: And what moſt of all inhances the Heinouſneſs of the Fact, while our ſaid Ambaſſador, crying out for Help, againſt the Outrage and Robbery, had got together ſome Perſons, who intended to reſcue him out of the Hands of the Pillagers; and when they, for that Purpoſe, had ſtopp'd the Coach, and being deſirous to know the Cauſe, brought him into the next Victualling-Houſe, the audacious Miſcreants, produc'd a Warrant to detain the ſaid Ambaſſador, for the Sum of 501. Sterling, *due from him, to certain Merchants: And when the People, who ran together, began to ſeparate again, upon the Diſcovery of the Matter; they forthwith hurry'd him into a Hackney Coach, taken by Force, and delivered him up to be confin'd in a certain Infamous Houſe, call'd,* the Black Raven; *and altho', our ſaid Ambaſſador, had notify'd this unheard of, and flagitious Outrage, to the Secretary of State, nevertheleſs, he could not be found; and Secretary* Walpole, *only came to the Houſe, not to ſet him at Liberty, (as moſt evidently appears) but to be an Eye Witneſs of this Uſage; the like of which, was never ſeen under the Sun; neither did he offer any Aſſiſtance to our Ambaſſadour, as a Perſon ſkill'd, in the publick Law of Nations, which Protects the Character of an Ambaſſa-*

dor from all manner of Inſults, but went away: So that our ſaid Ambaſſador being deſtitute of all Help, and forſaken, was forced to Redeem himſelf, from the Houſe of Bondage; and after a long Space of Time, to procure his Liberty.

Foraſmuch, then, as our Majeſty is apparently aſſaulted, by this wicked Attempt and Indignity, put upon the Perſon of our Ambaſſadour, ſuch as was never practiſed nor even heard of in the whole World; much leſs among civiliz'd People; not only profaining, but quite ſubverting the Law of Nations. Therefore hoping that your Royal Majeſty will have due Regard, to the grievous Affront offer'd to us, in the Perſon of our Ambaſſador, together with the Infringement of the Law of Nations, occaſion'd primally by the Sheriff, as the Author of the whole Miſchief; inasmuch, as the ſaid Sheriff countenanc'd ſo audacious an attempt, and look'd upon the detaining our Ambaſſadour, as a Trifle. And, ſecondly, by the Bailiff who preſum'd to abuſe our ſaid Ambaſſador in the open Street, after the above-mention'd Manner. And laſtly, by the Merchants, who occaſion'd his Confinement, (as is evident from their malevolent Inſtigation, in order to overthrow the ancient Friendſhip eſtabliſh'd with us and our Empire) wherefore, we being perſwaded, that your Majeſty will eſteem thoſe Perſons no otherwiſe, than as the moſt profligate of Pillagers and Violater of the Law of Nations, proportionable to their Guilt; we intreat your Majeſty to Conſent, for an Example to others, a diligent Search may be made after the reſt of the Accomplices of the Crime, and that a capital Puniſhment according to the rigour of the Law, be inflicted on them all; or at leaſt ſuch a one, as is adequate to the Nature of the Affront, which every Particular Perſon put upon the Ambaſſador.

The

The ſame Ambaſſador, by Vertue of the Inſtructions given him, on this Subject, will more largely explain our Requeſt to your Majeſty, which has been already declar'd, by our Miniſters, to your Majeſty's Reſident in our Court; on thoſe Conſiderations we have Reaſon to hope, from your Majeſty's Juſtice, ſuch a Satisfaction for this Intolerable Outrage; and the rather, in regard that your Majeſty's Honour, and Reputation of all your Subjects of Great Britain, *will by this Means become famous throughout the whole World; and we ſhall be certainly aſſur'd of the Continuance of your Royal Friendſhip, and all Effects of a contrary Opinion, will be entirely remov'd: And leaſt, upon Failure of a Satisfaction worthy of, and equivolant to our injur'd Honour, we be compell'd to obtain it by way of Repriſal; which, indeed, would be very irkſome to us, upon Account of that particular Eſteem, we have for your Majeſty's Friendſhip. Finally, We wiſh your Majeſty Health, and a proſperous Reign.*

Given at our Camp, near the Village of *Sowolewo*, the 17th Day of *September*, *O. S.* in the Year of our Lord, 1708, and the 27th of our Reign, by your affectionate Brother.

Sign'd by his Sacred *Czariſh* Majeſty,

PETER.

Under-neath,

Count *Goloſkin*, *Peter Scapiraff*,
Secretary of the Privy-Council.

To the Ambaſſadors Letter, Mr. Secretary *Boyle* return'd the following Anſwer.

SIR,

'I Did not think Fit to return a Speedy An-
'ſwer, to the two Letters of the 27th of
'*November*, and 4th of *December* laſt, *N. S.* with
'which your Excellency was pleas'd to Honour
'me; becauſe I could not inform you, what Sa-
'tisfacton our Laws would afford, againſt thoſe
'who put that grievous Affront upon your Excel-
'lency's Perſon: But foraſmuch, as I am appre-
'henſive that too long a Silence, may be taken for
'want of due Reſpect for your Excellency; or,
'that I have not been ſufficiently ſolicitous to put
'in Execution, every thing that is incumbent
'upon the Queen's Majeſty, in order to procure
'the promis'd Reparation: I could no longer for-
'bear making Anſwer to your Excellency, to
'aſſure you, that the Reſentment you expreſs of
'the outragious Affront, particularly in your
'Letter, of the 27th of *November* ult. cannot
'be greater, than the Indignation which her Ma-
'jeſty has conceiv'd upon that Account; and I
'doubt not, but Mr. *de Ayrolle*, according to the
'Inſtructions he receiv'd, has already notify'd to
'your Excellency, that the indiſpenſable Forms
'of the Laws of this Kingdom, cannot admit of a
'final Determination of that Affair, till the
'next Seſſions of our Court of Judicature, which
'is ſo well known, and ſo firmly regulated here,
'that in order to puniſh any Malefactor, for the
'moſt enormous Crimes, even Treaſon againſt

'her

‘ her Majeſty's Sacred Perſon; he muſt be brought
‘ to his Tryal, according to uſual Forms eſta-
‘ bliſh'd in this Country: I am perſwaded that
‘ your Excellency's Sagaſity and Equitableneſs,
‘ will diſtinguiſh between the Inſolence and Bru-
‘ tiſhneſs of ſome particular ſenſleſs Men, and the
‘ Marks of a very particular Eſteem and Reſpect,
‘ which you have receiv'd upon all Occaſions,
‘ as well from the Queen, as from Perſons em-
‘ ploy'd in the higheſt Offices of the Govern-
‘ ment: And that your Excellency will be ſo
‘ Juſt, as to believe, that they would not have
‘ failed to give you the moſt ample Satisfaction,
‘ long ago, if the Means of doing it were as rea-
‘ dy at Hand, and Practicable, as the Queen's
‘ inclination is forward to ſatisfy his *Czariſh* Ma-
‘ jeſty thereupon: Therefore I hope your Excel-
‘ lency, will repreſent the State of this Affair,
‘ to his *Czariſh* Majeſty, after the moſt favoura-
‘ ble Manner, aſſuring him, that nothing has been
‘ neglected by, and that nothing for the Future,
‘ ſhall be omitted, which tends to procure all the
‘ Reparation the utmoſt rigour of the funda-
‘ mental Laws of this Kingdom can afford. And
‘ farther, if this be not found ſufficient, and any
‘ thing can be ſuggeſted, that is in the Queen's
‘ Power, whereby ſhe may expreſs her high Diſ-
‘ pleaſure againſt thoſe who committed ſo notori-
‘ ous an inſult, which may contribute to the
‘ maintaining of Amity and good Correſpondence
‘ between her and his *Czariſh* Majeſty, ſhe will
‘ not fail on her Part, to be always ready to do
‘ it; upon that Account, I lately propoſed, by
‘ the Queen's ſpecial Order to the Parliament of
‘ *Great Britain*, that a Bill might be brought in,

‘ for eſtabliſhing, and ſecuring the Privileges of
‘ Ambaſſadors and other foreign Miniſters, as well
‘ to prevent the like Outrages for the future, as to
‘ notify, at the ſame Time, to the whole World,
‘ how far her Majeſty, and the whole *Britiſh* Na-
‘ tion deteſt the Violence that was offer'd to your
‘ Excellency's Perſon and Character; but for as
‘ much, as her Majeſty, is deſirous of nothing
‘ more, than to be in a Capacity of giving
‘ Satisfaction in that Affair; and ſhe is abſo-
‘ lutely diſpoſed to do all that lies in her
‘ Power for that Purpoſe; we are perſwaded,
‘ that his *Czariſh* Majeſty will not forbear ha-
‘ ving ſo juſt a Regard to the Queen's Friend-
‘ ſhip, and the ancient Alliancies, between the
‘ two Crowns, that he will not inſiſt upon her
‘ attempting Impoſſibilities; and that he will
‘ not undertake any thing, which may in any
‘ wiſe be prejudicial to the good Correſpondence
‘ that has been hitherto maintain'd between
‘ both their Majeſty's, and which, as I hope
‘ will continue for ever. I have the Satisfaction
‘ to inform your Excellency, that the Queen
‘ had no ſooner Notice, that two young *Muſ-*
‘ *covite* Princes, the Relations of his *Czariſh* Ma-
‘ jeſty, were arrived in this Kingdom, but ſhe
‘ forthwith gave Orders, for their Reception
‘ and Entertainment, with that particular Di-
‘ ſtinction, and Reſpect, which is due to their
‘ high Birth. As for what Concerns my
‘ ſelf I have, in executing the Queen's Orders
‘ on this Emergency, I ſhall diſcharge my
‘ Duty with a great deal of Delight: And I
‘ can aſſure your Excellency, at that time, that
‘ no Perſon in the World can be more for-

‘ ward

' ward in expreſſing to you upon all Oppor-
' tunities which ſhall offer themſelves, with
' how great Eſteem and Reſpect,

I am,

SIR,

Your Excellency's, &c.

H. BOYLE.

To this Letter the Ambaſſador of *Muſcovy* made Anſwer to this Effect.

SIR,

I HAD the honour to receive your Letter, dated from White-hall, *the* 11*th Inſtant*, O. S. *and I find therein many Declartions and Promiſes for the future, as to what relates to the Reparation to the unparalell'd Aſſault made upon me by the Rabble, which Promiſes are directed to his* Czariſh *Majeſty my Maſter, on the part of the Queen of* Great Britain; *but for the reſt, all that I can obſerve moſt conſiderable, is the Propoſal you have tendered to the Parliament of* Great Britain, *by the Queen's Inſtructions, in order to get a Law enacted for the Security, and Maintenance of the Sacred Privileges of Ambaſſadors, and other foreign Miniſters, reſiding in her Majeſty's Courts; indeed this is a very proper Means to diſſipate the Fears which they were ſeized with, ſince the Inſult that was made on a Miniſter of the firſt Rank, however, give me leave*

leave to tell you farther, that nothing carries leſs Appearance of the Satisfaction which his Czariſh *Majeſty requires, ſince the definitive Reſolution is ſtill wanting, and is referr'd to the particular Laws of the Country, ſo that the Buſineſs is protracted by putting it off from Time to Time, and from one Delay to another: If it were in the Queen's Power to conſult the Parliament about enacting of a new Law, touching the Immunity of foreign Miniſters, and to prevent the Outrages which might be hereafter offer'd to them, could not due Meaſures have been taken at the ſame time, for the Reparation of the paſs'd Affront, which according to your Letter is deteſted by the Queen, and the whole* Britiſh Nation: *Certainly, it is a very eaſy Matter to do it, in Caſe her Majeſty has the leaſt Inclination to hold an amicable Correſpendence with his* Czariſh *Majeſty, as his* Czariſh *Majeſty is diſpoſed to do with her, and to maintain the Law of Nations in its Vigour, as the whole Univerſe does; which ought to be the rather to be expected from the Queen, ſince ſhe has formerly Contributed very much to the Preſervation of the ſame, by firmly demanding of the Republick of* Venice, *for an Affront offer'd to the Earl of* Mancheſter *her Ambaſſador, altho' the Inſult was only made upon his Barks and domeſtick Servants; ſo that the Senate, notwithſtanding the moſt ancient Laws of the Republick, was prevailed upon to follow the Law of Nations, by ſatisfying the Ambaſſador, after the manner he deſir'd and demanded. Sir, You deſire by the ſame Letter, that I ſhould acquaint his* Czariſh *Majeſty with the delay of your Courts of Judicature, which hinders this Affair from being brought to an Iſſue, altho' it might have been very conveniently adjuſted in the Space of ſix Months; ſince which Time the Accident happen'd. But foraſmuch as your Letter*

ter contains nothing definitive, with Reſpect to the Satisfaction. I am extreamly concern'd, that it is not in my Power to comply with your Deſires in that Particular, and I am ſo much the more uncapable of doing it, in regard that I have receiv'd his Czariſh *Majeſty's poſitive Reſolution upon the Buſineſs; as alſo, later Orders, earneſtly to preſs for the Queen's Anſwer to my Maſter's Letter, and a Categorical Determination, whether the Law of Nations, with Reſpect to foreign Powers, will be obſerv'd, or not? Therefore, purſuant to the ſaid Orders, which I have newly receiv'd, I would entreat you, Sir, to honour me with an Anſwer to the above-mention'd Articles, after you have ſhewn the Contents to the Queen; to the End that this Affair may be no longer deferr'd, for the Delay occaſion'd by your Laws, cannot give any manner of ſatisfaction to his* Czariſh *Majeſty. As to the Honours that have been lately done, by the Queen's ſpecial Command, to the two young Noble Men, who are taken for* Muſcovite Princes, *related to his* Czariſh *Majeſty, and are now at* London; *I can aſſure you, that his Majeſty reckons none but the Imperial Hereditary Prince within the Virge of his auguſt Houſe: They are two young Lords of illuſtruous Birth, who have the Honour of being a Kin to him, and are Travelling,* incognito, *to ſee the World. But his* Czariſh *Majeſty does not deſire that they ſhould be defray'd by any Power, they have where withal to bear their own Charges, and if without their Maſter's Orders, they think fit to accept of Lodging, or any thing elſe of that Nature, they are to be accountable for the ſame. It only remains, that I return Thanks for the Kindneſs and Good-Will you profeſs to have for me, of the future Continuance of which you are alſo pleas'd to aſſure me; offering you, my reciprocal Readineſs, to expreſs to you,*

the

the particular Eſteem, and unlimited Affection, where-with,

I am,

SIR, *&c.*

De MATUEOFF.

IN the *February* next, after this, the Perſons were brought to Tryal on an Information in the Queen's Name againſt *Tho. Morton, Iſaac Spiltumb, Andrew Slan, Ed. Young*, and Ten more, for Meeting, Conſulting and Conſpiring to Arreſt the ſaid *Ruſſian* Miniſter, for which they were all, except *Young* found Guilty; the ſpecial Matter of the Privilege of Ambaſſadors being refferr'd by the Jury to the Opinion of the Judges.

BESIDES this Proſecution, a Bill was brought into the next Parliament for preſerving the Privilege of Ambaſſadors, and other publick Miniſters, which was done to prevent the like for the future; but this would not be taken as Satisfaction to the *Czariſh* Miniſter, for what had paſs'd before; but to give him as much Satisfaction as the Caſe would bear, and to give as much weight to the ſaid Proſecution and Act of Parliament as poſſible.

Monſieur D' Ayrole's, *the Queen's Secretary at the* Hague, *wrote to Monſieur* Mattueoff, *as follows.*

The Ambaſſador was then at *Amſterdam.*

MY

MY LORD,

'YESTERDAY in the Evening came in 5 Posts from *England*, whereupon being inform'd 'that your Excellency will not be here till the 'end of the Week, I would not fail to give you 'an Account without delay, according to my 'Promise; and for due Execution of my Orders 'of what has happen'd last in *England*, concern-'ing your Affairs; I therefore acquaint your Ex-'cellency, that on the 14th and 15th of the last 'Month, the Persons engag'd in Arresting your 'Excellency appeared before the Lord Chief Ju-'stice in the Court, which we call the *Queen's-'Bench*; her Majesty's two Secretaries of State, 'the Lord *Sunderland* and Mr. *Boyle* being pre-'sent there, with a great Number of other Per-'sons of Note, who were no less desirous of 'seeing the Criminals brought to condign Pu-'nishment, then they were concern'd at the In-'sult offer'd to your Excellency. The Indict-'ment was laid against *Thomas Morten*, and 'other Creditors of your Excellency; as 'also against one *Benson*, an Attorney em-'ployed in taking out the executory Orders 'for Arresting your Excellency, and the two 'Bailiffs who actually Arrested you; the Par-'ties being heard, after a long and considera-'ble Plea, made by the Queen's Attorney Gene-'neral, Sollicitor General, and other Persons 'learn'd in the Law, acting for her Majesty; the 'Jury consisting of Gentlemen of Distinction, 'and plentiful Estates in the Country; more 'especially Chosen on that Occasion, declared 'the Persons mention'd in the Indictment, ex-

'cept

'cept one *Young*, againſt whom no Evidence ap-
'pear'd, to be convicted of having Comploted and
'Conſpired together to Arreſt your Excellencies
'Perſon, notwithſtanding they knew the ſame to
'be inveſted with the Character of an Ambaſſa-
'dor; as alſo having by that Means occaſion'd a
'Miſ-underſtanding betwixt the Queen and his
'*Czariſh* Majeſty, and of having aſſaulted, ar-
'reſted, impriſoned, and abus'd the ſaid Perſon of
'your Excellency; the Jury having thus given in
'your Verdict, and the Caſe being ſo Extraordi-
'nary, of very great importance, altogether New,
'and without Preſident in our Courts of *England*,
'the Lord Chief Juſtice could not take upon him
'to determine it, but referr'd the Point relating
'to the Privileges of Ambaſſadors; that is to ſay,
'how far the Laws of the Realm may reach for
'the Puniſhing of thoſe who violate them to a
'Scrutiny, which is to be made the next Term
'before him, aſſiſted by the other Judges of
'the Kingdom: This is the preſent State of
'the Buſineſs, it is not abſolutely decided,
'but the indicted Perſons are found guilty of
'the Fact, and Puniſhment will be ſolemnly
'debated before all the Judges of the King-
'dom, the Caſe having never before been
'known in our Law; therefore if you pleaſe
''tis Requiſite that your Excellency have a
'little more Patience to ſee the final deter-
'mination of this Proceſs, and content your ſelf
'in waiting with your wonted Prudence, and Mo-
'deration for the iſſue of the Queen's efforts in
'proſecuting the Criminals, ſince her Majeſty has
'omitted nothing on her Part for that purpoſe, for
'if our Formalities of Injuſtice appear'd long and
'tedious; 'tis what cannot in any wiſe be reme-

'died,

'died, it being part of our Conſtitution, to which 'every individual Perſon in the Kingdom is ob-'lig'd to ſubmit; I have already had the honour 'to Treat with your Excellency ſo often upon 'this Subject, that I hope you are ſenſible there-'of, and of the Queen's moſt ſincere Intentions to 'do every thing that lies in her Majeſty's power 'for repairing the injury done to your Perſon, 'and Character, I doubt not but the whole will 'terminate in the common Satisfaction, I am with 'profound reſpect,

My Lord,

Your Excellencies, &c.

Sign'd,

J. D'AYROLLE.

To this the Ambaſſador made a ſhort Reply, intimating, that the other Letter was not ſatisfactory; on which Mr. Secretary *Boyle*, being willing, if poſſible, to give him full Satisfaction, wrote as Follows.

SIR,

SIR,

'FOR as much as Mr. *D' Ayrole*, has had Orders from time to time, to notifie to your Excellency, what has happen'd with Reſpect to the Trial of thoſe Perſons, who put the Outragious Affront upon your Excellency; I look'd upon it as needleſs to trouble your Excellency with any Letters about that Affair; but ſince I perceive by the Honour of your laſt, that you preſs for an Anſwer to his *Czariſh* Majeſty's Letter, with a great deal of earneſtneſs, I can no longer exempt my ſelf from acquainting your Excellency, that the Queen on her Side is very deſirous of being in a capacity to Anſwer the ſaid Letter, after ſuch a manner as is Requiſite; but for as much as the Tryal cannot be brought to a Concluſion, by Reaſon of the indiſpenable Formalities of our Laws; it is evident that an Anſwer muſt needs be imperfect before a final Determination of this Caſe; this is the only Reaſon, for which it has been judged expedient to defer the Anſwer, and I doubt not but your Excellency will do ſo much Juſtice to the Queen, as to make convenient Excuſes thereupon, to the End that his *Czariſh* Majeſty may be certified, that this ſtop put to the Buſineſs, does not proceed from any affected procraſtination, but from an inſuperable Neceſſity, and I ought to aſſure your Excellency, that when the ſaid Cauſe comes to be determined, her Majeſty will not fail to Anſwer his *Czariſh* Majeſty's Letters, in ſuch Terms as that he will clearly perceive the Queen is Solicitous of nothing more, then to give the moſt ample Satisfaction which can

'be

'be made for the ſaid Indignity; I likewiſe do 'my ſelf the Honour to inform your Excellency, 'that the Bill for maintaining the Privileges of 'Ambaſſadors is ready to paſs into the Houſe of 'Lords; ſo that in a ſhort time the Queen will 'give the Royal Aſſent thereto, and thus your 'Excellency will ſee how much the *Britiſh* Nation 'is concern'd at what has ſo unfortunately befal-'len you, ſince it is therein expreſs'd at large, that 'the ſaid Outrage was the only Motive which in-'duc'd them to make ſuch an Act; and further, I 'cannot forbear acquainting your Excellency, that 'for as much as the 2 *Muſcovite* Princes have lately 'ſignified that this Buſineſs obliges them to paſs 'over into *Holland*; the Queen who has conferred 'extraordinary Favours upon them, by Reaſon 'of the Honour they had in being nearly related 'to the *Auguſt* Houſe of his *Czariſh* Majeſty, has 'given them to underſtand, that they are at full 'Liberty to ſet out on their Voyage, when, and 'in what manner they ſhall Judge moſt expedi-'ent; and that her Majeſty will endeavour to 'make their Departure as agreeable, as ſhe has 'hitherto made their Reſidence in theſe Parts 'eaſy, and delightful: I have often aſſur'd your 'Excellency of my particular Inclination to your 'Service, that it were needleſs to add any thing 'more, but a Repetition of the Eſteem and Re-'ſpect with which I have the Honour to be.

Your Excellencies, *&c.*

Sign'd

H. Boyle.

BUT all this would not pacify the *Ruſſian* Miniſter, as may appear by the following Reply of Monſieur *Matteuoff*.

SIR,

I *Have defer'd 'till now, the returning an Anſwer to the Letter with which you honoured me, dated 29th of* March, O. S. *becauſe, my Lord, Duke of* Marlborough, *and the Secretary of the Queen of* Great Britain, *Mr.* d' Ayroll, *had ſeveral Times aſſur'd me, they were ready to bring to paſs the juſt Reparation, that his* Czariſh *Majeſty, my Maſter, requires of the unheard of Inſult made upon me, and the Satisfaction due to my Honour, and the great Damages I have ſuſtain'd; I waited for the Iſſue thereof, with ſo much the greater Complacency, in regard, that by your Letter, you confirm'd to me the ſame Aſſurance, of the ſincere Intention, and particular Care taken for that Purpoſe. But, for as much, as the Letters from* England, *of the 17th. Inſtant,* O. S. *do not expreſs, that from the 11th, which was the Beginning of the* Term, *to the ſaid 13th Day any Progreſs has been made in the Courts of Judicature, in order to obtain the Sentence which ought to be pronounced againſt thoſe Wretches, who aſſaulted me; nor even that the Affair has been debated; it appears to me, that the Application of the Court, does not concur ſo much as the ſincere friendſhip betwixt his* Czariſh *Majeſty and the Queen of* Great Britain *requires, in order to put an End to thoſe Delays, and Means of demuring which have cauſed the Buſineſs to be protracted, for the Space of almoſt a whole Year: And therefore,*

fore, not ſeeing at this very Inſtant, any apparent Effects of the fair Promiſes which have been made to me, and finding my ſelf oblig'd to obey the Orders I receiv'd from his Czariſh *Majeſty; again, once more to demand, whether it be the Queens Pleaſure, to give Satisfaction proportionable to the Outragiouſneſs of the Affront, ſuch as his Majeſty, my Maſter, requires, and to anſwer his Letter; I would alſo intreat you to ſend me an anſwer in Writing, which I impatiently expect, to the End that I may ſend it to the Court, conformable to my Orders. As to the notifying the Act newly made, upon the Occaſion of the late Aſſault, upon my Perſon, for maintaining the Privileges of Ambaſſadors, of which Act Mr.* d' Ayroll *afterwards deliver'd a Copy to me, by your Order, I do my ſelf the Honour to tell you, that it contributes not, in any wiſe, to the Satisfaction now in Debate; becauſe, the ſacred Characters of Ambaſſadors have been in all Ages, accounted inviolable among the* Chriſtian *Powers, before that Declaration; which being but a particular Law, can only ſerve to juſtify the Honour of the Nation, and prevent for the Future, all Inconveniencies which may happen to foreign Miniſters in* Great Britain, *as well as to thoſe of your Crown, in other Courts: 'Tis very much againſt my will, that my Name is Celebrated in ſuch a Manner in your Conſtitution, and that the Example is tranſmitted to Poſterity; whereas, there being nothing Blame worthy in my Conduct, during my Reſidence in* London; *I had Reaſon to hope, I ſhould not be thus expoſed to the deadly Affront, put upon the Character of an Ambaſſador, with which I am inveſted. For the reſt, being perſwaded of your particular Friendſhip, and that you are deſirous to give me farther Marks thereof, upon this Occaſion, I would have you to believe, that I am, as I formerly*

had the Honour to be, with a moſt profound Eſteem, and Affection,

SIR, *&c.*

Sign'd,

De MATUEOFF.

AFTER this Mr. *Matueoff* ſent over a Letter from the *Czar* himſelf, to her *Britanick* Majeſty, wherein he expreſs'd in very Warm, but reſpectful Terms, his Reſentment of the Treatment of his Ambaſſador, and that he expected ſuch Reparation, as was ſuitable to the Indignity he had received.

ALL theſe Writings to, and again, having brought this Affair to no Concluſion, it was reſolved on both Sides, at laſt, that the Queen ſhould ſend a ſolemn Embaſſy to the *Czar* to his Court at *Moſcow*, to make an Acknowledgment for the Affront, and to deſire his *Czariſh* Majeſty to be pacify'd, and to take this, for a Teſtimony of her Majeſty's great Deſire to give him ample Satisfaction upon that Occaſion, and indeed, it was a great Teſtimony of it.

ACCORDINGLY, Mr. *Whitworth* was ſent by her Majeſty to *Moſcow*, what he did, and how this Matter was ended, in a manner very honourably to his *Czariſh* Majeſty, may be ſeen at large, by the following Account of his Reception at *Moſcow*, &c.

A RE-

A RELATION *of what paſt at* Moſcow, *on the 16th of* February, *N. S.* 1710. *the Day his Majeſty,* Peter, *Emperor of* Great Ruſſia, *admitted to publick Audience, his Excellency Mr.* Charles Whitworth, *formerly Envoy Extraordinary of her Majeſty,* Anne *Queen of* Great Britain; *and ſince, veſted with the Character of her Ambaſſador Extraordinary, Commiſſioner and Plenepotentionary, expreſly and purpoſely to make ſolemn Excuſes in her Name, for the inſult done at* London, *the firſt of* Auguſt, *N. S.* 1708. *to his Excellency, Mr.* Andrew Artemonides de Matueoff, *Miniſter of State, Governor of the Dutchy of* Jaroſlaw, *and at that Time, Ambaſſador Extraordinary of his* Czariſh *Majeſty, at the Court of her* Britannick *Majeſty. To which are added, the Articles ſtipulated in the Conference between the Miniſter of the* Czar, *and the ſame Ambaſſador of the Queen.*

THE 8th of *February*, being appointed for the Solemnity, Monſieur *Baſilis de Salticof*, Chief Carver to his *Czariſh* Majeſty, accompany'd by Monſieur *Athanaſius de Dmitreemomonof*, Cup-Bearer, who officiated as Maſter of the Ceremonies, went from the Court in one of his *Czariſh* Majeſty's Coaches, to the Houſe of her *Britanick* Majeſty's Ambaſſador, being follow'd by twenty other Coaches, of the Grandees, and Principal Lords of the Court, ſome, only to make up a Train for Show; and others, for

the Ambaſſador's Secretary and Gentlemen, who were all richly Cloath'd, anſwerable to the Coaches in which they Rode.

BEING come to the Ambaſſadors Houſe, the Carver, and Cup-Bearer, went up to his Appartment, where they declared to his Excellency, the Buſineſs they were come about, and after ſome Moments Converſation, they went into the Coach with the Ambaſſador, who took the Place of Honour; the Chief Carver ſat by his Side, and the Cup Bearer againſt him; the Secretary, and Centlemen of the Embaſſy, went in the Coaches appointed for them, each according to his Rank, and the Train being encreaſed by the Ambaſſador's Coaches, proceeded to the Court.

ARIVING there, the two Regiments of Guards *Preobrazenski* and *Semionaſki*, who were drawn up within the Court, made the Salutes of Honour to the Ambaſſador according to Cuſtom, and remain'd ſtanding in Parade During the whole Audience; making a very fine Shew, the Richneſs of their Cloaths, and the neatneſs of their Arms and Accoutrements ſetting off the comely Men, of which thoſe Regiments are compos'd; the Officers at their Head made the moſt Splendid Appearance that can be imagin'd; and the whole Extent of the Court, as large as 'tis, could hardly afford them Room enough.

Monſieur *de Narichkin*, Gentleman of the Bed-Chamber, to his *Czariſh* Majeſty, received the Ambaſſador at the Foot of the Stair-Caſe, where his Excellency came out of the Coach, and complimented him; Prince *George de Scherbaty*, Counſellor of State perform'd the ſame Honours to him at the Top of the Stair-Caſe; and Monſieur *de Muſſinpuchkin*, Privy-Counſellor, complimented him

him in the Anti-Chamber, and the Ambaſſador was conducted according to the Cerimonial, to the Hall of Audience, where his *Czariſh* Majeſty was ſtanding, uncover'd, under a Canopy, leaning againſt a Table, having an arm'd Chair behind him, the Grandees, and Miniſters of the Court, with the Generals of his Armies ſtanding on each Hand of him.

As ſoon as the Ambaſſador came in Sight of him, he made his firſt Obeiſance, in the Middle of the Hall, his ſecond, and the third when he had aſcended the Eſtrade on which his *Czariſh* Majeſty ſtood; where ſtanding, and with his Hat off, his Excellency made a Speech in *Engliſh*, of which the Secretary read aloud, a Tranſlation in the *German* Tongue, ſign'd with the Ambaſſador's Hand, to the End, the foreign Miniſters, who had been formally Invited to aſſiſt at this Solemnity, might underſtand the Contents of it; and then one of his *Czariſh* Majeſty's Secretaries read it out in the *Ruſſian* Language, for the Information of the Lords and Gentlemen of the Empire; the Speech was as follows,

Moſt High, and moſt Powerful Emperor.

'TIS not without a very ſenſible Grief, 'that I am oblig'd to mention to your 'Majeſty, the Affront which was offer'd to your 'Ambaſſador, in *Great Britain*; and I ſhould be 'much more concern'd at it, were I not furniſh'd 'with expreſs Orders, and full Power, to de-'clare, with how great Diligence, her Majeſty, 'the Queen of *Great Britain*, my moſt gracious 'Miſtreſs, has endeavour'd to give ſufficient 'Satisfaction for it, proportion'd, as well to her

'Equity, as to her Greatneſs of Soul; and ſuch, 'as may ſerve, as an evident Mark of her con-'ſtant Friendſhip, which ſhe has always had for 'your Imperial Majeſty, and which her Ma-'jeſty, is deſirous inviolably to continue to 'you.

'The firſt Advice of that unfortunate Acci-'dent, was no ſooner brought to Court, but the 'Guilty were made ſenſible of her Royal Indig-'nation; they were immediately arreſted; they 'were examin'd before the Queen, in her Coun-'cil; they were impriſon'd, and proſecuted with 'the utmoſt Severity of our Laws: And tho' 'theſe were found not to be extenſive enough, 'yet, they were declared infamous, by the Con-'ſent of the whole Nation, aſſembled in Parlia-'ment, who declar'd to the whole World, by a 'publick Act, how much they abhor'd the Indig-'nity of the Fact, and took neceſſary Precau-'tions to prevent the like Inſolencies for the 'Future. Neither did they ſtop there, for thoſe 'Criminals, were afterwards declared unworthy 'any Favour or Protection, and excluded from 'the General Pardon, which her Majeſty, the 'Queen, cauſed to be publiſh'd, for all her 'Subjects; even, for thoſe, who had in a moſt 'inormous manner, attempted againſt her ſacred 'Perſon; and tho' other Criminals do actually 'Enjoy that Benefit, thoſe are ſtill under her 'Majeſty's high Diſpleaſure.

'And to the End, that her Royal Equity 'and Amity may reach farther, and become the 'more ſhining in the World, her Majeſty, has 'graciouſly been pleas'd to honour me with 'the Charracter of her Ambaſſador Extraordina-'ry, Commiſſary, and Plenipotentiary, and to

'give

'give me the Power, to repreſent her Royal Per-
'ſon, as if her ſelf were here preſent, in the firſt
'Place to teſtify the Sorrow, and the juſt and
'high Abhorrence ſhe has for that raſh Deed per-
'petrated againſt a Publick Miniſter, eſpecially,
'againſt ſuch a one as her Majeſty the Queen, has
'a moſt particular Eſteem for; and afterwards,
'to beg Excuſe for the Defect, and Inſufficiency
'of our ancient Conſtitution, in the Caſe of ſo
'extraordinary a Violation of the Law of Nati-
'ons; for which, the Criminals ſhould with
'Juſtice have been puniſhed with the utmoſt Ri-
'gour, according to your Imperial Majeſty's De-
'ſire: And in the laſt place, to aſſure your Ma-
'jeſty, in the moſt ſincere manner, how much
'her Majeſty, the Queen, is inclin'd to maintain
'the ancient Friendſhip, and good Coreſpondence,
'which for ſo long a Time, have been between
'the two Crowns: Of which your Imperial Ma-
'jeſty, may pleaſe to take further Notice, in this
'her Letter, which is a Teſtimony of the great
'Affection, and high Eſteem, her Majeſty the
'Queen, has for your Imperial Majeſty.

'WHEREFORE, I moſt inſtantly deſire, in the
'Name of her Majeſty, the Queen, that your
'Imperial Majeſty, may vouchſafe to accept the
'aforeſaid Excuſe, with the uſual fraternal Af-
'fection, and not to impute either to her Maje-
'ſty, the Queen, or the *Britiſh* Nation, an Action
'of which, ſome diſorderly Perſons are the Au-
'thors: But that entirely putting the ſame in
'Oblivion, your Imperial Majeſty may again
'generouſly continue you high Affection to the
'Queen, my Miſtreſs, and her Subjects.

'FOR

'FOR my own part, I ſhall eſteem my ſelf 'moſt happy, if I may any way contribute to 'ſo great a Work, ſo advantagious to both the 'Crowns, and ſo neceſſary to the Preſent State 'of *Europe*.

'SEVERAL great Benefits and Marks of Fa-'vour, which I have already receiv'd, during the 'Diſcharge of my former Employment, of which, 'I ſhall ever retain a thankful Remembrance, 'makes me hope for the ſame favourable Recep-'tion, during the Remainder of my Stay here, 'in the Exerciſe of my new Commiſſion, as 'often as I ſhall have the Honour to make any 'new Propoſal to your Imperial Majeſty's 'Court, by Order of my moſt gracious Queen.

'IN the Concluſion, I beg Leave to recommend 'the *Britiſh* Subjects, who live in this Country, 'to your Imperial Majeſty's high Protection, 'with Reſpect to the Free Trade, which their 'Anceſtors began firſt, by the way of *Archangel*, 'with great Expence, and Loſs of abundance of 'Men.

Sign'd,

CHARLES WHITWORTH.

AFTER the Speech was made, and two Tranſlations of it Read, his Excellency the Ambaſſador, deliver'd to his *Czariſh* Majeſty, her Majeſty's, the Queen of *Great Britain*'s Letter, to the Effect following.

After

(After the uſual Titles on both Sides.)

WE have already written to your Imperial Majeſty, to declare to you, the Grief we conceiv'd, for the unhappy Affront which was offer'd to your Ambaſſadour before he left our Court: We have ſince receiv'd the Letter which your Imperial Majeſty wrote to us, and we can aſſure your Imperial Majeſty, that we were touch'd with true Sorrow, when we ſaw how highly you reſented the Violence which had been offer'd to your Imperial Majeſty's own Perſon, in the Character of your Ambaſſador, and we were the more griev'd on this Occaſion, when we reflected on the inſufficiency of our Laws, to give as ample a Satisfaction as we deſire to make, as well for the juſt Senſe, We our Self had, of the Indignity which had been offer'd, as to Convince your Imperial Majeſty, how much we were Inclin'd to make a ſuitable Reparation, for the Injury done ſo good a Friend and Ally; but we muſt confeſs, that at the ſame Time, we had a ſingular Pleaſure, in obſerving your Imperial Majeſty's deſire, to prevent the Miſunderſtanding that might ariſe therefrom; and the great Eſteem you ſhew'd for our Friendſhip; as well as the Care you Expreſs'd, to preſerve and cultivate it by Reciprocal marks of Friendſhip and Affection.

Wherefore, we promiſe our ſelf, from your Goodneſs, that upon the Repreſentations, which, from Time to Time have been made to you, in our Name, by our Envoy Extraordinary, at your Imperial Court, your Imperial Majeſty will be pleaſed, to examine into the Nature of this Affair; where your Imperial Majeſty, will not ſee the leaſt Inclination, to favour the Criminals, nor to ſcreen them from Juſtice. But that there are inſuperable Difficulties, with Reſpect

ſpect to the ancient and fundamental Laws of the Government of our People; which we fear, do not permit ſo ſevere and rigorous a Sentence to be given, as your Imperial Majeſty, at firſt, ſeem'd to expect in this Caſe; and we perſwade our ſelf, that your Imperial Majeſty, who are a Prince Equally famous for Clemency, aud exact Juſtice, will not require us, who are the Gaurdian and Protectreſs of the Laws, to inflict a Puniſhment upon our Subjects, which the Laws do not impower us to do.

Nevertheleſs, we have not been wanting, at the ſame Time, to uſe all the Means, which we judg'd moſt effectual, to perſwade your Majeſty, and the whole World, of the Sincerity of our Intentions, and of our Endeavours in this Affair; and to the End the guilty might be Puniſh'd, ſo far, as the Laws and Conſtitutions of our Kingdoms, which were then in Force, would permit; we gave expreſs, and repeated Orders to our Officers of Juſtice, and to our Miniſters, to proſecute them with the uttermoſt ſeverity.

That Proſecution has been long continu'd with very great Diligence, and nothing has been omitted, to bring it to as ſpeedy a Concluſion as poſſible: But after all. the Matter is ſuch, that we find our ſelf oblig'd, to inform your Imperial Majeſty, that as well, becauſe of the different Pleadings, in Favour of the Criminals, the ſlow, but indiſpenſable Manner of proceeding in a Law Suit of ſo great Importance; as of the Caſe it ſelf, which is of an extraordinary Nature, againſt which, no ſufficient Proviſion is made, in the ancient Statutes of theſe Kingdoms: It has not been in the Power of our Council Learned in the Law yet to obtain a Sentence, nor a final Deciſſion in this Affair.

Wherefore,

Wherefore, conſidering all theſe Inconveniencies, and foreſeeing the Delays which might probably happen, in the ordinary Courſe of Law, and deſiring, at the ſame Time, to give you ſignal Marks of our Sorrow; as alſo, to ſhew you the Indignation of all our Subjects on this Occaſion, we have paſs'd an Act of Parliament made in the moſt ſolemn manner, by the Council, and Aſſembly of our Kingdom of Great Britain, *wherein is made a Declaration as Authentick as poſſible, of the juſt Horror which our Subjects in general have againſt this violent Inſult, and all the Acts and Proceedings which relate to the Arreſt of the Perſon of your imperial Majeſty's Ambaſſadour, are annul'd, and raz'd out of the Regiſters of our Courts of Juſtice; and thoſe who had a Share therein, are branded as infamous Criminals, and obnoxious to the Laws, which were then in Force; and if any Perſon hereafter, durſt commit the like Offence, or any ways violate the Privileges of Ambaſſadors and other foreign Miniſters, they will be lyable to the moſt ſevere Penalties and Puniſhments, which the arbitrary Power of the Judges, ſhall think fit to inflict upon them, and to which no bounds are given, in this new Act; ſo that all Inſults of this Nature, will be prevented for the Future, and the Security, which all Prince's Miniſters ought to enjoy, will be firmly eſtabliſh'd and preſerv'd by this famous Law; And this will remain as a Monument to all Poſterity; as a Defference, which has been ſhewn to your Imperial Majeſty: And all the Miniſters, which ſhall come for the Future, will be indebted for this extraordinary Act for their Protection, to the particular Conſideration which we, and our People have had for your Imperial Majeſty's Honour: Therefore, your Imperial Majeſty cannot but ſee, that we have uſed our utmoſt Endeavours in proſecuting the Criminals, and in*

cauſing

cauſing them to be puniſhed, tho' not with the Succeſs we could have wiſhed; and ſince we have procur'd an Act to be made by the Repreſentative of all our Subjects of Great Britain, *as well for Reparation of what has been done, as to prevent the like Inſolence for the Future, we inſtantly pray your Imperial Majeſty, to accept of all that we have done on our Side, as the moſt we could do here, for your Satisfaction; whereby your Imperial Majeſty will give us the ſtrongeſt Proof that can be of your Affection towards us, and you may be aſſured that we ſhall not fail on our Side to do all that lies in our Power, on all Occaſions, to ſhew you our Gratitude, by our firm Friendſhip and Eſteem.*

And to the End, that nothing may be omitted, which is in our Power, to do farther, by way of ſuitable Reparation, we thought fit to make Choice of ſome worthy and able Perſon to declare to your Imperial Majeſty, in the moſt publick and ſolemn Manner the Indignation we conceiv'd at the Affront offer'd, and our Concern that it is not in our Power to cauſe the Criminals to be puniſh'd according to their Deſerts: And as our truſty and well beloved, Mr. Charles Whitworth, *has merited our Royal Approbation, by his Ability and Experience in all the Affairs which have been entruſted with him, as alſo, by his good Conduct at your Imperial Majeſty's Court, for ſeveral Years paſt; we have therefore given him a ſpecial Power and Commiſſion, to repreſent our Perſon, as our Ambaſſadour Extraordinary for this End, and deſire you to give entire Credit to all that he ſhall ſay to you in our Royal Name, as if we were Preſent, to do it in Perſon. We will only add, as a Mark of our Eſteem, for your Ambaſſadour himſelf, who ſuffer'd this Inſult, that as we were ſenſible of his Perſonal Virtues, and great*

great Qualities, during his Reſidence at our Court; ſo we were more particularly concern'd, that ſuch an Injury ſhould be offer'd to a Gentleman of ſo great Merit and Conſideration; being, beſides, the Ambaſſadour of ſo great a Prince, and ſo good an Allie. And ſo praying, that the Diſpencer of all good Things, will vouchſafe to Power forth his heavenly Benedictions, upon the Perſon and Kingdoms of your Imperial Majeſty, we recommend you to his holy Protection.

Your Imperial Majeſty's,

Moſt Affectionate Siſter,

Given at our Palace, at Windſor, *the — Day of* Auguſt, 1709.

ANNE R.

His *Czariſh* Majeſty, having receiv'd this Letter from the Hands of the Ambaſſador, deliver'd it to the Count *de Galoffkin*, great Chamberlain of his Empire, and was pleas'd to make the following Anſwer in his own Tongue.

'IT was but requiſite, that her Majeſty, the 'Queen, ſhould have given us Satisfaction, 'by puniſhing the Criminals, conformably to our 'Demands, in the moſt rigorous Manner, as is 'the Cuſtom in ſuch Caſes through out the Uni-'verſe: But ſeeing her Majeſty has ordered you

'to

'to make Excuſes, in the Quality of her Am-
'baſſador Extraordinary conferr'd upon you, ex-
'preſly for this Purpoſe, and to remonſtrate that
'her Majeſty could not inflict ſuch a Puniſh-
'ment upon them, becauſe of the Defect in that
'Particular, of the former eſtabliſh'd Conſtitu-
'tions of her Kingdom, and that with the una-
'nimous Conſent of the Parliament, her Maje-
'ſty has cauſed a New Act to be paſſed, to ſerve
'as a Law therein for the Future, we accept
'all this, for a Proof of the Affection, her Ma-
'jeſty has for us, and for ſufficient Satisfaction;
'and we will give Orders to our Miniſters, to
'ſettle entirely this Affair with you in a Con-
'ference.

His *Czariſh* Majeſty having conluded his Anſwer, his Excellency, the Ambaſſador, retired backwards out of the Hall, making three Obeiſances, in the ſame Manner as when he came in, and was conducted back to his Houſe, with the ſame Ceremony, and with the ſame Train, accompany'd by the Carver and the Cup-Bearer, the Firſt of which, treated him three Days ſucceſſively, by expreſs Orders of his *Czariſh* Majeſty, with the greateſt Plenty, Delicacy, and Magnificence, the Officers of his *Czariſh* Majeſty's Houſhold ſerving at the Table.

On the 9th. *O. S.* The Ambaſſador came to the Houſe of his Excellency, the Count *de Goloffkin*, Great Chamberlain of the Empire, and there had a Conference with him, and other Miniſters of his *Czariſh* Majeſty, in which this troubleſome Affair was terminated, to the mutual Satisfaction of the two Powers, the Differences which had been occaſion'd by ſo ill an Accident, were

were Compos'd, and the ancient Friendſhip, and good Correſpondence between the two Crowns renew'd, on the Condition, that the following Articles, which were ſtipulated, ſhould be perform'd; the Ambaſſador of her *Britanick Majeſty*, Engaging to procure the Execution of the laſt but one.

THAT his Czariſh *Majeſty Emperor of* Great Ruſſia, *will ſend Orders to Monſieur* de Matueoff *his Ambaſſador, and Plenipotentiary, at the* Hague; *to notify, proviſionally, by a Letter to her Majeſty, the Queen of* Great Britain, *that Mr.* Charles Whitworth, *being veſted with the Character, of her Ambaſſador Extraordinary, and Plenipotentiary, expreſly, and purpoſely to make Excuſes, on occaſion of the Affront, in Queſtion has perform'd that Commiſſion; and that his Majeſty, having regard to the Inſtances of her Majeſty, the Queen, has been pleaſed to accept the ſaid Excuſes, made in her Name, for Satisfaction of the outrage done at* London, *to the Ambaſſador of his* Czariſh *Majeſty; with an Intention, thereby to ſhew, the high Value he puts upon the Friendſhip of her* Britanick *Majeſty, and on the Continuance of that Friendſhip, and in Hope of the like Return on her Part, in Occaſions wherein his* Czariſh *Majeſty may be concern'd: And that in Conſequence hereof, his* Czariſh *Majeſty is willing to forgive the criminal Proceedings of the Authors and Accomplicies of the ſaid Affront; and deſires her Majeſty, the Queen, to be pleaſed to order them to be diſcharg'd from the Proceſs iſſued againſt them, and from the Sentence pronounced, and the Penalties to which they were condemned for to the ſaid Inſult.*

His Czariſh *Majeſty having a juſt regard, to the faithful and ſignal Services which his ſaid Ambaſſador, who was inſulted, has perform'd; and in a gracious Remembrance of the laudable Zeal of his deceaſed Father, his Excellency, Monſieur* Artemon Sergiewicz de Matueoff, *firſt Miniſter and Boyar in the Reign of his* Czariſh *Majeſty's Father, and Grand-father of glorious Memory, who in exhorting Rebels to their Obedience, Crowned his faithful and important Services with his Blood, ſhed by Mutiniers: He cannot but (in token of his good Will towards him) after his own Satisfaction, regard the particular Satisfaction of his Miniſter, namely, the Reparation of his Honour, and that of his Family, by the Expedient of a Letter from her Majeſty, the Queen, and the Reimburſement of all the Coſts and Damages, which he has been obliged to be at, and to ſuffer on Account of the ſaid Affront.*

His Czariſh *Majeſty, will give Orders to his ſaid Ambaſſador, to demand his Letter of Re-credence, which he refuſed to accept when he left* London, *as well as the uſual Preſent, and the Tatch which her Majeſty cauſed to be offer'd to him; and this, becauſe of the aforeſaid Affront.*

All that is above ſpecify'd, being Executed, his Czariſh *Majeſty will acquaint her Majeſty, the Queen, that he is content with the aforeſaid Satisfaction, by a Letter, which ſhall be deliver'd to the Ambaſſador, Mr.* Whitworth.

THUS ended this Affair, in which, ſome People thought the Queen ſtoop'd to low to the *Czar*; as if the *Czar* had not been a Prince of ſuch Fame and Power, as merited ſo much Conſideration; but the Queen and her Council knew better what Figure the *Czar* made in the World, and

and of what Uſe the Commerce of *Great Britain* to the *Ruſſian* Dominions was of; and beſides this, her Majeſty very well knew, alſo, that Juſtice requir'd it, as ſhe would expect her Miniſters abroad ſhould be well uſed, by the Princes and Powers, her Neighbours; and as ſhe expected other Princes and Nations ſhould act by her, if her Miniſters receiv'd any Affront from the Rables and Clamours of the People.

We are now to return to the Affair of the *Turks*, the *Czar* was really, very loath to fall out with the *Turks*. But, as he found his Enemy, the King of *Sweden*, and the Palatine of *Kiow*, had the Aſcendant there, and would kindle a Flame whether he would or no, he made the neceſſary Preparations for his own Defence.

However, heat the ſame time wrote Letters, and ſent Ambaſſadors to the Grand Seignior, if poſſible, to prevent a Rupture, and publiſh'd ſeveral Declarations, offering to refer any Differences that might happen between the Grand Seignior and himſelf, to the Arbitration of other Princes; and the *Turks* at the ſame Time, ſending an Aga, as a Miniſter to *Vienna*, to prevent the Emperor taking Umbrage at his Breach with the *Czar*, His *Czariſh* Majeſty tranſmitted one of his Declarations to *Vienna*, that it might be communicated to the ſaid *Turkiſh* Miniſter, upon his Arrival there; this Declaration ſhewing a Readineſs in the *Czar*, to preſerve the Publick Peace; is of very great Conſequence in this Caſe, to clear the Character of the *Czar*, from the Scandal of Breach of Treaty, which was pretended to be charg'd upon him, the *Turks* being manifeſtly the Aggreſſors.

WHEREAS, we have receiv'd certain Information, from divers Places, that the Ottoman *Port endeavours to juſtify the Violation of Peace, by a War; already declared againſt us, and actually begun, by the Irruption of the* Tartars *into our Territories: And for that Purpoſe, charge us with ſeveral groundleſs Matters, by which, they pretend they were forc'd to come to a Rupture; and amongſt others, as if we were not inclin'd to continue in Peace with them, but had actually reſolved to begin a War: As alſo, that contrary to the Peace concluded with the* Ottoman's *we had erected ſeveral new Fortifications, on our Frontiers; ſuffer'd our Troops to Enter the* Turkiſh *Dominions; and that we would not give them Leave to Convoy the King of* Sweden *in Safety, back to his own Territories. We have thought it neceſſary to declare here openly, that we never had the leaſt Intention, to break in any Manner whatſoever, the Peace concluded between us and the* Ottoman *Port, and to enter into a War with the* Turks; *but the ſame has been hitherto, religiouſly, and inviolably obſerved by us; the Fortifications erected by us, are likewiſe, in no Reſpect, againſt the Treaty, but upon our own Territories; which partly belong'd to us of Old, and partly was yielded to us by the Treaty, and the Limits marked out by the Commiſſaries on both Sides, which have been fixed many Years ago: And it is therefore to be wonder'd, that the* Port *would take Occaſion to complain thereof, at this Juncture; our Troops never enter'd on the* Turkiſh *Dominions, but remain'd only upon the Frontiers; and altho', they did ſome Time ago, according to the Laws of War, purſue their Enemy into the* Turkiſh *Territories, and ſeized them therein; which, however, was done in ſuch Places, where there*

there were, no Inhabitants; yet all this as well as other Matters, were fully ſetled and adjuſted, in the Confirmation of Peace, renew'd laſt Year; whereby the Port *did likewiſe ſtipulate with our Ambaſſador, that they ſhould Convoy the King of* Sweden, *with* 500 Turks, *thro'* Poland, *and that we ſhould Guard him by our Officers from the Frontiers; to which, we not only conſented, but alſo, promiſed to procure the like Conſent, from the King and Republick of* Poland: *But this being not accepted by the* Port, *on the Account of ſeveral Pretences, we did at laſt, in two of our Letters to the Sultan, and by our Ambaſſador, and Privy-Councellor* Tolſhoy, *at* Conſtantinople, *declare that we would ſuffer the King of* Sweden *to paſs through* Poland *free, and unmoleſted, into his own Dominions; and to that End, permit him a Guard of* 5000 Turks, *to ſend him ſafe thro'* Poland; *whereby our peaceable Temper ſufficiently appears, and that on our Part, we have contributed all, what might prevent all manner of Diſturbance, and maintain a good Correſpondence, and Neighbourly Friendſhip with the* Ottoman *Port, and that all the World may be ſenſible thereof, we confirm here, with our former Declaration an Offer, before a tedious War be commenc'd, to accommodate Matters with the* Port, *and to live in a neighbourly Amity with her, as formerly: And notwithſtanding, in order to provide for our Precaution and Security; (after we have been informed from all Parts, of a Rupture, and that the War is actually declared againſt us at* Conſtantinople, *and our Ambaſſador carried Priſoner to the* Seven Towers), *we have cauſed our Troops to march to the* Turkiſh *Frontiers: They ſhall, however, not undertake any Hoſtilities, provided the* Turks *live on their Part,*

peaceably; put a Stop to all Preparations of War, and ſet our Ambaſſador with all his Retinue, at Liberty; and we will, as ſoon as we are ſufficiently aſſured of theſe Things, by the Ottoman *Port; Order our Forces to with draw from the Frontiers, and facilitate as much as in us lies, a friendly Accommodation: So we willingly accept, and herewith deſire the Mediation of his Imperial Majeſty, her Majeſty the Queen of* Great Britain, *and their High Mightineſſes the States General. But in Caſe the* Port, *without any Occaſion given her by us, ſhould perſiſt in her Reſolution to break the Peace with us, and begin the War againſt us; we declare before God, and all the World, that we are excuſable, and not guilty of all the Blood that may be ſpilt on this Occaſion; and we have an entire Confidence in God, that he will aſſiſt our juſt Cauſe, and proſper our Arms with Victory, againſt an Enemy who breaks Treaties; and who but a Year ago, by ſo many Oaths and Promiſes, confirm'd, and renew'd the Peace with us.*

Moſcow, Feb. 28.
1711. PETER.

AFTER this, the War being actually begun by the *Turks*, his *Czariſh* Majeſty publiſhed another Declaration, which was ſent to all the Miniſters of Chriſtian Powers at *Conſtantinople*, in order to have them inſiſt as Occaſion offer'd, with the *Turkiſh* Miniſters, upon the Terms offer'd therein, as follows.

'TIMES have produced Revolutions, Peace
'and War have alternately ſucceeded
'in the World; and Mankind in every Age,
'has been toſs'd with ſtrange Viciſſitudes: But
'the preſent Profidiouſneſs of the *Ottomans*,
'is ſuch, as Antiquity can ſcarſe Paralel, and
'the modern Ages deſervedly abhor.

'NO doubt, but the Common Report of this,
'has reached moſt Peoples Ears; Be it therefore,
'manifeſtly Known to all, how *Achmet*, the
'now Reigning Sultan of the *Turks*, has impi-
'ouſly, frivolouſly, and without the leaſt, juſt
'Occaſion, violated, and broken the 30 Years
'Peace, concluded between his ſacred *Czariſh* Ma-
'jeſty, and his Predeceſſor, Sultan *Muſtapha*,
'tho' renew'd by himſelf, this very laſt Year,
'1710, and ratify'd by a ſolemn Oath, in the
'Preſence of the moſt high God of Heaven;
'which he afterwards confirm'd, as well in his
'Letters which he writ to his ſaid *Czariſh* Maje-
'ſty, as in the Deed of publick Renovation;
'and yet, in the Month of *November*, the very
'ſame Year, e're the Sun had compleated its
'annual Courſe, he declared War publickly, at
'*Conſtantinople*; and contrary to the Law of
'Nations, caſt his *Czariſh* Majeſty's Ambaſſador,
'and Privy-Councellor, Monſieur *Tolſtoy*, and
'his whole Family, into the Priſon called the
'*Edicul*, after having firſt affronted him in a
'moſt ignominious Manner, and ſeized upon
'his Goods.

'IT is true, he has not herein degenerated
'from his Fore-fathers; for being born an
'Enemy to the Name of CHRIST, he never Ar-
'ticles with an Intention to obſerve the ſacred

'Laws of Peace; but as a Man void of all 'Honour, does it only, that he may afterwards, with greater Security, attack, and utterly overwhelm thoſe that rely upon the religious Sanctions of publick Treaties.

'The Hiſtorians of former Ages, and eſpecially that moſt excellent Patriarch of *Jeruſalem*, St. *Nectaris* teſtifies, that the *Ottomans*, from their very Beginnings, made it their chief Study, to watch Quarrels and Diſagreements, that at any Time happen'd between any *Chriſtian* Princes, and States; and that as often as they found Occaſion, they never ſtuck at any Stipulations of Peace, or ſolemn Oaths; and that thus, the Offspring of Thieves and Robbers, did in a few Years, ſubdue to their own Dominions, ſo many ancient and renowned *Chriſtian* Kingdoms and Provinces, together with a great many holy and venerable Places; and at laſt became the moſt powerful, and formidable People.

'The poor oppreſs'd *Grecians*, *Valachians*, *Bulgarians*, and *Servians*, groan ſtill under Yoke, and their Miſery ſhews by woful Experience, how little a Value do thoſe Barbarians ſet upon publick Treaties. Nor has the Kingdom of *Hungary* experienced leſs to its great Detriment.

'The *Ruſſian* Monarchy, ſtill bears in Mind, the Deſtruction with which it was threaten'd, in the Year, 1677, when in the Reign of the Czar, *Theodore Alexowits*, Emperor of all *Ruſſia*, of pious and glorious Memory; the perfidious *Turk*, being in Hopes that the leſſer *Ruſſia*, ſhould become a Prey to his Ambition, thro' the Treachery of *Poroſzen*, General of the

'*Coſſacks*,

'*Coſſacks*, beyond the *Boriſthenes*, broke the Peace, 'and with a vaſt and dreadful Army, invaded 'the *Ukrain*, and tho' he had been already in-'form'd that the ſaid Traytor, had ſubmitted to 'his *Czariſh* Majeſty's Mercy, and the *Higirin*, 'the Place of his chief Reſidence, was actually 'Garriſon'd, by his ſaid Majeſty's Forces: Yet 'finding that the noble Firmneſs of the *Ruſſian* 'Troops, did hinder him from penetrating far-'ther into the *Ukrain*, he bent all the Fury, 'which he deſign'd to make the whole Province 'feel, againſt the City, which he in Vain be-'ſieg'd, tho' but ſlightly fortify'd, inſomuch, 'that the *Ruſſians* themſelves, would have aban-'doned and demoliſh'd it, but that the Exegency 'of the War requir'd their keeping it for that 'Time: So, that after a prodigious Loſs of Men, 'he was forc'd to retire to his own Teritories, 'loaded with Shame and Ignominy, and to beg 'Peace of his *Czariſh* Majeſty, which was con-'cluded in 1681.

'THE memorable Slaughter, made of theſe 'Peace Breakers at *Vienna* in *Auſtria*, in 1683, 'and the wonderful Progreſs of the *Chriſtian* 'Arms afterwards, are ſtill freſh in every Bo-'dy's Memory; nor is it needful to mention, 'the Inſolence, with which they then broke in, 'to beſiege that Metropolis.

'IT is recorded in the Archieves of *Chriſtian* 'Princes, the having ſeriouſly fore-ſeen the cun-'ning Deſigns, which the *Barbarians* form'd, of 'ſwallowing up their ſeveral Dominions, one by 'one; they enter'd into a holy and mutual 'League: To wit, his *Czariſh* Majeſty, the Em-'peror of the *Romans*, the *Roman* Empire, 'his *Poliſh* Majeſty, the Republick of *Poland*,

'and

'and *Venice*, and the Pope of *Rome*; and their
'*Czarean* Majesties, *John Alexowitz*, of pious
'Memory, and *Peter Alexowitz*, who now happily
'Reigns, being likewise invited, for the common
'Safety of *Christianity*; and induced both by the
'continual Irruptions of the *Turks* and *Tartars*
'into their Territories, and their Hostilities
'and Incursions into the Dominions of other
'*Christian* Princes; join'd first in a perpetual
'Peace, and a perpetual League, offensive and
'defensive, with his Royal Majesty the King of
'*Poland*, in 1696; and the Following Year 1697,
'in a triennial Alliance, with his *Czarish* Maje-
'sty, the Emperor of the *Romans*, and the Re-
'publick of *Venice*, mutually Engaging them-
'selves, to deliver the Kingdoms of *Hungary*,
'*Sclavonia*, *Dalmatia*, and the *Morea*; together
'with the Cities of *Tanua*, (commonly called *A-
'zoph*) and *Casifurmen*, from the Tyranny of the
'Infidels: Nor could this Design well fail of the
'wish'd Success, if by continuing the War, a few
'Years longer, as his *Czarish* Majesty would have
'had it. The Enemy, who was already reduc'd
'to great Straits; had been brought so low, as
'not to have it in their Power, but at the Peril
'of their unavoidable Downfal, ever to annoy
'the *Christian* World any where again.

'But to our great Sorrow, these irreconcile-
'ble *Barbarians*, did at the Congress of *Carlowitz*,
'partly by Perswasions, and partly by Artifice,
'induce the High Confederates to enter into a
'Treaty with them; made Room for Intrigues,
'sow'd the Darnel of Discord, and withdrew
'all the above-mention'd Potentates from his
'*Czarish* Majesty's Alliance, and at last conclud-
'ed a 25 Years Peace, exclusive of him; no

'other

'other Remedy being left, Monſieur *Worniori*, 'his ſaid Majeſty's Ambaſſador, but to adjuſt a 'Truce for two Years, on the 3d of *July*, 1700; 'which was ſoon followed, by 30 Years Peace, 'concluded at *Conſtantinople*, between his *Czariſh* 'Majeſty, and the late Sultan *Muſtapha*, by his 'ſaid Majeſty's Envoys, Monſieurs *Ucranſtow*. 'and *Heredajow*: But enough of Things done 'ſo long ago, let us come to Matters near 'Hand, which require a more diligent Exami-'nation.

'His *Czariſh* Majeſty did ſo religiouſly ob-'ſerve the Articles of this Treaty; and tho' be-'fore it was ratify'd, the Sultan of the *Budziack* 'Tartars, did offer to ſubject himſelf, and his 'People, to his moſt powerful Scepter; the 'Propoſal was rejected, becauſe nothing ſhould 'be done, that might have the leaſt Appearance 'of Contravention; nor did the *Turkiſh* Subject, '*Kubjick Murza* ſucceed better afterwards, when 'he came to *Azoph*, with a conſiderable Body 'of *Cubak Tartars*, to offer alſo Homage.

'And his ſaid Majeſty being alſo reſolv'd, to 'obſerve the Peace, ſtill with more Exactneſs, 'after it was ratify'd by his Ambaſſador Extra-'ordinary, and Plenipotentiary, Prince *Deme-'trius Galickzin*; he enjoyn'd all his Governors in 'the Frontier Towns, the General of the *Zaporavi-'an Tartars*, who was one of his Subjects, and all 'other Commanders of his Troops, as well Na-'tives as Foreigners, under moſt ſevere Penalties, 'that they ſhould not preſume to diſturb the 'Peace, and good neighbourly Friendſhip, by 'any Incurſions, into the Teritories, either of 'the *Turks*, or *Tartars*.

'And

'And his *Czariſh* Majeſty carry'd the punctual Obſervation of the Articles of this Treaty, 'to that Height; that whereas, ſome of the '*Zaporavian Tartars*, did in the Tear 1701, Rob 'ſome *Grecians*, who were coming to the *Ukrain* 'with Merchandize, and that the Sultan of the '*Turks* demanded the Damage to be made good; his '*Czariſh* Majeſty knowing it was to no Purpoſe, to 'expect any Repa ation from the Robers, order'd 'that the ſaid *Grecians* ſhould be indemnify'd out 'of his own Treaſury, and that 100000 Dollars 'of an Ounce Weight, ſhould be paid to them.

'On the other Hand, notwithſtanding this, 'Peace was confirm'd by both the Sultans own 'Letters, and his ſolemn Oath, the *Turks* and '*Tartars* did continually, and by all manner of 'Ways, injure his *Czariſh* Majeſty's Subjects, killing ſome, carrying others into Captivity; and 'taking away their Horſes, and other Cattle; as 'the following Inſtances, faithfully extracted out 'of the Regiſters, do clearly mark out, as well 'the Crime, as the Time when it was Committed.

'In the Neighbourhood of *Azoph*, upon the 'Sea Coaſt, near the Towns of the *Coſſacks*,

In the Year	Kill'd	Wounded	Slaves	Cattle
1700	2	0	147	72 Horſes
- - -	0	0	000	40 Camels
1701	6	1	91	936 Horſes
1702	6	2	125	906 Ditto
1703	2	0	60	73 Ditto
1704	0	3	3	1300 Ditto
1705	12	27	368	3518 ſmall Cat.
1706	14	15	39	274 Horſes
1707	1	1	74	504 Ditto
1708	2	0	151	73 Ditto
In all	45	49	1058	7596

His

'His *Czariſh* Majeſty's Ambaſſador at *Conſtantinople*, made his Complaint of theſe Outrages; 'but to no purpoſe: For neither were the Damages made good, nor any Stop put to thoſe 'Depredations; tho' on his Majeſty's Side, the '*Turks* receiv'd Satisfaction, even to their moſt 'frivolous pretentions.

'Who would have doubted, but that after the 'above-mention'd Inſtances of his *Czariſh* Majeſty's true Friendſhip, in rejecting ſo many Homages offer'd him, he ſhould at leaſt have met 'with a ſuitable Return on the like Occaſion; 'but it was quite otherwiſe.

'The *Turks* in the Year 1708, did not only 'give Shelter and Aſſiſtance to the fugitive Rebel *Coſſacks*, *Nearaſſaw*, and his Adherents; 'but permitted the *Tartars* to join with them, 'and make Inroads into his *Czariſh* Majeſty Territories.

'Nor did they act with more Candor, in the 'Year 1709, in *Reference*, to the Remains of 'the *Swediſh* Forces, after the glorious and memorable Battle of *Pultoua*: For the King himſelf, with as many of the Officers, and Soldiers 'of his routed Army, as did eſcape the Conqueror's Sword, and his *Czariſh* Majeſty's Betrayor the baſe *Mazeppa*, with his Adherents, 'retiring into the *Turkiſh* Dominions, where protected there: And tho' by the Law of Nations, 'and War, his *Czariſh* Majeſty's Troops might 'have purſued them, yet they receiv'd Orders 'by no Means to approach *Oczacow*, where 'the Enemy and the aforeſaid Rebels were, but 'on the Contrary, to come back again to their 'own Territories. And whereas his *Czariſh* Majeſty did firſt by his Ambaſſador, and after-

'wards,

'wards, by three different Letters, which he 'writ to the Sultan, demanded that he would 'not protect his Enemy; but that without far-'ther Delay, he would make him depart his 'Dominions, and deliver up the Rebels: Neither 'was he comply'd with, nor any Anſwer return'd 'to his Letters in a great while: But rather 'Leave granted to the Enemy, and the Rebels 'to invade his Majeſty's Dominions; which they 'did in conjunction with the *Valachians* and *Tar-'tars*, ſurprizing in the Night-time, the Town 'of *Jabarhick*, and carrying away the Com-'mander, with whatever belong'd to him.

'AFTERWARDS, in the Year 1710, they car-'ry'd off all the Inhabitants of *Jargowitz* and '*Nemback*, with all their Subſtance; kill'd a 'Captain and ſeveral Soldiers, of *Uman Coſſacks*; 'carry'd away another, with 150 private Centi-'nals; they plundered a great Company of Car-'riers, that were coming with Salt from *Mo-'locnaw*, carrying away moſt of the Men, and 'all the Horſes; they alſo robb'd the Waggons 'deſign'd for carrying the Baggage of the Army, 'at a Place call'd *Cammen Laton*, carrying off 'moſt of the Waggons, and all the Beaſts of 'Carriage, and plunder'd the Town of *Comenſea*, 'in the Diſtrict of *Czigirin*.

'NO Redreſs was ever made for any of theſe 'Damages, nor any ſatisfactory Anſwer given, 'to the many Complaints made of ſuch hoſtile 'Invaſions, but the Matter ſtill put off, with 'frivolous Excuſes.

'THE *Ottomans* at laſt, being reſolv'd to carry 'their wicked Deſigns, under the Maſque of 'Peace, their chief Miniſter, the Viſier *Ali Baſha*, 'propoſed to his *Czariſh* Majeſty's Ambaſſador,

'that

'that if his Majesty would consent, to confirm 'the thirty Years Peace concluded between him 'and the present Sultan's Brother, and give his 'positive Word, that he was firmly resolv'd, to 'observe it; he promised, that the Sultan then 'would not only ratify it, but that also, the 'King of *Sweden*'s departure out of his Domini-'ons should be agreed upon.

'HEREUPON, his *Czarish* Majesty was pleased 'to send full Powers to his Ambassador for that 'Purpose, and writ to the Sultan himself about 'it; upon which the Sultan of the *Turks*, did so-'lemnly confirm the Peace with his Majesty, 'in *December* 1709, and bound himself by Oath, 'calling the great God of Heaven, to witness, '(as shall appear by the Copy hereto annexed) 'that he would Religiously observe the Laws of 'it, and the Ratifications were afterwards mutu-'ally exchang'd.

'As to what concerns the King of *Sweden*, it 'was agreed with the chief Minister *Ali Basha*, '1. 500 *Turks* should be permitted to accompa-'ny him thro' *Poland* into his own Country; and 'that for his greater Security, from being insult-'ed by any of his *Czarish* Majesty's Troops, one 'of his Majesty's Officers, and some of the *Rus-'sian* Garrisons would receive him upon the Fron-'tiers, and conduct him safe thither, but that in 'Reference to the Rebel *Cossacks*, they should be 'all expell'd the *Turkish* Dominions.

'HIS *Czarish* Majesty gave Consent to this 'Agreement, and order'd Letters to be writ 'thereupon to his Ambassador; But the *Turk*, 'far from putting the Articles thereof in Execu-'tion, did neither dismiss the King of *Sweden*, 'nor expel the Rebels; But rather gave way to

'several

'ſeveral ill Deſigns, which were carrying on 'againſt his *Cariſh* Majeſty.

'UPON Notice of theſe Artifices, his *Czariſh* 'Majeſty reſolv'd to write a Letter to the Sul-'tan, (the Copy of which is hereunto annex'd, 'and mark'd with an A); wherein he was pleaſed 'to declare to him, that he conſented that the 'Number of the *Turks* deſign'd to accompany 'the King of *Sweden*, ſhould be augmented to '3000; ſending Orders at the ſame Time, to 'his Ambaſſador, that they ſhould be made up '5000.

'BUT it was to no Purpoſe to expect any 'Anſwer to this Point: On the contrary, the 'Report began ro encreaſe, that the *Turks* began 'to incline their Thoughts to War.

'WHEREUPON his *Czariſh* Majeſty order'd a 'ſecond Letter to be written to the Sultan, on 'the 18th -- 29th of *October* 1710, (as appears 'by the Copy hereunto annex'd, and mark'd B) 'and diſpatch'd an Envoy Extraordinary on pur-'poſe with it. But inſtead of an Anſwer, Word 'was brought to him, that his Envoy, contrary 'to the Law of Nations, was ſeiz'd and put 'into a Dungeon, where he Lies to this very 'Day.

'Couriers at length began to arrive from all 'Parts, with Advice, that the Sultan at the In-'ſtigation of the Han of *Tartary*, had actuallay 'declar'd War at *Conſtantinople* againſt his *Czariſh* 'Majeſty, without any Conſcience, and only 'with a bear Pretence, that his *Czariſh* Majeſty 'had given ſome Motives thereunto, as forced 'him to break the Peace; which is but a ridicu-'lous ſaying; for thoſe very Motives pretended, 'were all decided by the laſt Peace. They

further

'further brought Word that his Majeſty's Ambaſ-
'ſador, after ſeveral baſe Affronts put upon
'him, was impriſon'd; the warlike Preparations
'were making throughout the whole *Turkiſh*
'Empire; the Troops were drawing together
'about *Bender*, and the Expedition was notify'd
'to all the *Turkiſh* Generals (commonly call'd
'*Baſhas*) with Orders to raiſe Soldiers.

'THESE Proceedings were more than enough,
'to expoſe the perfidiouſneſs of the Sultan; how-
'ever, his *Czariſh* Majeſty, to convince the whole
'World, that the Breach of the Peace, and the
'Effuſion of Humain Blood, which of Neceſſity
'muſt follow, ought not to be laid to his Charge,
'but to the Sultans; did after all, tho' to little
'Purpoſe, order another Letter to be writ to him
'in his Name, dated at *Petersburg*, the 6th, 17th,
'of *January* laſt, of the ſame Tenure with the
'Copy (here unto alſo annex'd, and mark'd with
'C. (*viz.*) that if the ſaid Sultan did not acquaint
'him out of Hand with his poſitive Reſolutions,
'of renewing, and ſtrictly obſerving the Treaty
'of Peace; he would look upon it as a real Breach
'of it; nor would he ſuffer himſelf to be amus'd,
'or circumvented by any Craft; but would
'(with God's aſſiſtance) begin Warlike Prepara-
'tions with all Expedition, in order to oppoſe him
'early both by Sea and Land.

'Now let the honeſt and impartial Part of
'the World examine the ſeveral Heads of the
'*Turkiſh* Declaration of War, ſo falſely and ſo
'awkardly patch'd together, and publiſh'd
'every where, as alſo, the Crimes they charge
'us with.

'THE *Ottomans* give out, that they began this 'War purely to aſſiſt the Rebel *Lezeinſky*, whom 'they look upon to be the right King of *Poland*, 'and to deliver the Republick from his *Czariſh* 'Majeſty's Troops, and that they do this at the 'Requeſt of the ſaid Republick, preſcribed there-'to (*viz.*) the depriv'd Palatine of *Kiow Polocky*, 'and *Poniatowſky*, but who in every Fact, are Be-'trayers of their native Country; and likewiſe, 'becauſe his ſaid *Czariſh* Majeſty had refuſed at 'the *Turks* Requeſt, to withdraw his Troops out 'of the Kingdom, and to relinquiſh his Royal 'Confederate *Auguſtus* the Second, King of *Po-'land*.

'WHO is the Man will ſay, that this was a 'Thing fit to be done; or that ſuch a Demand 'was juſt; whereas the whole Republick of *Po-'land*, and the grand Dutchy of *Lituania*, do own 'his Royal Majeſty *Auguſtus* the Second, for their 'lawful King, and the ſaid King and Kingdom, 'continue in Alliance with his *Czariſh* Majeſty, 'by Vertue of which, the ſaid Troops are oblig-'ed to continue in *Poland*, as Auxiliaries; and 'that the King and Senate, are under a Neceſſi-'ty of keeping them there: For it is as clear as 'the Sun at Noon, that their Common Enemy, 'the King of *Sweden*, and the *Poliſh* Rebels are 'protected by the Sultan, for no other End but 'that through their Means, a bloody War might 'be again kindled in the *Ruſſian* and *Poliſh* Domi-'nions: Beſides if his *Czariſh* Majeſty had with-'drawn his ſaid Troops, the Conſequence would 'be; that the *Turks* introducing the King of '*Sweden* into *Poland* on one Side, and *Lezeinſky* 'entring on the other, after they had ravaged 'the whole Kingdom at their Pleaſure, would

'unite

'unite their Forces, and fall upon his *Czariſh* 'Majeſty, and ſo create worſe Diſorders than 'the former: This is the Reaſon why his *Czariſh* 'Majeſty refuſed to comply with the *Turkiſh* 'Arrogance, or by relinquiſhing his Confedera-'cy, to expoſe *Poland* as a Pray to the *Barba-'rians.*

'WHY was not the King of *Sweden* all this 'while diſmiſs'd out of *Turkey*, by ſome of the 'ways propoſed by his *Czariſh* Majeſty, either by 'Sea or Land, or even with a ſelect Guard, or 'by ſome other better Way; laying aſide all 'thoſe far fetch'd, and Frivilous Pretences, which 'are made uſe of; and then his *Czariſh* Majeſty 'would immediately have withdrawn all his 'Troops out of *Poland*, and out of the fortify'd 'Towns of the Republick, which for their Com-'mon Security he is at Preſent oblig'd to Gar-'riſon, until the Danger be over.

'THE *Turks* complain beſides in their Declara-'tion of War, that his *Czariſh* Majeſty had built 'ſome Forts, within the Boundaries of the *Otto-'man* Dominions; but this Pretence is manifeſtly 'falſe: For his *Czariſh* Majeſty cauſed no Forts 'to be Built any where, but in thoſe Places that 'were incorporated with his Empire, and expreſ-'ly adjudg'd to belong to it, as well by the 'Treaty of Peace, as by the Agreement ad-'juſted on aſſertaining the Boundaries on the 'Side of *Tana*, vulgarly call'd *Azoph*, between 'Monſieur *Tolſtoy* Governor of the ſaid City, 'and *Haſan* Baſha, in 1704: And in the *Ukrain*, 'between Monſieur *Ukrainſtow*, and *Kaſi Mehe-'met* Baſha, in the Year 1705.

'AND as for what the *Turks* object, in the 'ſame Declaration about his *Czariſh* Majeſty's 'Troops breaking into their Territories, in pur-'ſuit of the fugative *Swedes*, where they killed 'ſome and enſlav'd others; the *Muſcovites* did 'this according to the Manner and Cuſtom of 'War; with which the *Turks* did not find Fault, 'when the Thing was afterwards rightly ex-'plain'd to them; beſides, that this Affair, was 'entirely adjudg'd, and for ever to be huſh'd by 'the laſt renewing of the Peace.

'BUT as far as we dive into the true Deſign 'of the *Turks*, it appears to be, firſt, To force 'by previous Aggreſſions, his *Czariſh* Majeſty's 'Troops, who by Virtue of the Alliance with 'his Royal Majeſty King *Auguſtus*, and the Re-'publick of *Poland* as is already mention'd, re-'main the Kingdom as Auxiliaries, to return out 'of it. Next, to introduce the King of *Sweden* 'thither; afterwards, to raiſe a Sedition; then 'drive the aforeſaid Lawful King again from 'his Throne; and laſt of all to obtrude with 'Fire and Sword, the Rebel *Staniſlaus Lezeinſky*, 'whom the King of *Sweden* did by Violence ſet 'up, and ſo, not only Subject the Kingdom to 'the barbarous Yoke of the *Ottomans*, by a 'Free Tribute of three Millions of Gold Ducats 'Yearly, to be paid by the Republick, but alſo, 'the ſeveral Provinces being for ever diſmem-'bred from it, ſhould together with the ſtrong 'Fortreſs of *Caminick*, be yielded up to the In-'fidels, according to the Promiſes made by the 'King of *Sweden*, and the late Palatine of *Kiow* '*Poſtoki*, and *Poniatowſki* in *Lezeniſky's* Name; 'beſides, what by the Artifice of their Confede-'rates, what by means of the *Swediſh* Forces, and

'thoſe

'thoſe of *Lezeinſky*, now lurking in *Pomerania*, 'they would raiſe a Storm in the *Roman* Empire, 'and kindle a War there; which done, to carry 'on the War againſt his *Czariſh* Majeſty, in 'conjunction with their Confederates, and by 'the perfidious Means of the *Mazeppian* Rebels, 'and *Blavian* Coſſacks, to foment Sedition within 'his Majeſty's Empire; and thus to put in Ex-'ecution thoſe moſt pernicious and abominable 'Deſigns which they have premeditated as 'well againſt his *Czariſh* Majeſty, and the 'King of *Poland*, as againſt the whole *Chriſtian* 'World.

'THAT therefore, the Juſtice of his *Czariſh* 'Majeſty's Cauſe, may clearly appear to all 'the honeſt Part of the World, that he never 'ſince the firſt Minute of the Truce of *Carlo-witz*, and the Concluſion of the 30 Years Peace, 'which the Sultan of the *Turks* has now baſely 'broke to this very Hour, gave him any Occaſi-'on for ſuch a Breach, but did holily and reli-'giouſly obſerve the ſame, notwithſtanding 'the great and many Attempts made to the Con-'trary, on the Part of the *Turks*, what by ho-'ſtile Irruptions in his Dominions; and what by 'protecting his rebel Subjects, and giving Shelter 'to his Enemy, he has the Contrary been graci-'ouſly Pleas'd to command this moſt wicked 'Breach of the *Turks* to be expoſed to all Mens 'View.

'LET every Body now conſider the Inclinati-'on which his *Czariſh* Majeſty has ſhew'd all along 'for Peace: Then diſcuſs the juſt and Moderate 'Steps he made in the whole Series of this Af-'fair, and judge whether there was the leaſt Oc-'caſion given on his Majeſty's Side, for break-

'ing of the Peace, and whether after the previ-
'ous Marks which he gave of his good Intentions,
'he could abſtain from declaring War in his
'Turn, againſt the profidious and perpetual
'Enemy of *Chriſtanity:* And finally, let him
'conclude, that this particular War was forced
'upon his *Czariſh* Majeſty contrary to the Faith
'of Treaties, and the Sacred Tye of publick
'Oaths; who thereupon with God Almighty's
'Aſſiſtance, has reſolv'd in his own Defence, to
'order his Army, to March to his Frontiers
'againſt his perfidious Enemy, the Sultan of the
'*Turks*, and all his Confederates and Abettors:
'And to follow it himſelf in Perſon, very ſoon,
'and committing upon his bended Knee, the
'Juſtice of his Cauſe, to the ſame great God's
'Judgment, thus betakes himſelf to Arms.

AT the ſame time the *Czar* wrote a Letter to the Grand Seignior himſelf, to remove the Objection about the conveying the King of *Sweden* into his own Territories, offering to give him free Paſſage through the *Muſcovite* and *Poliſh* Dominions, with a ſufficient Guard for the Safety of his Perſon, or to allow the *Turks* to convoy him with a certain Number of Troops. The Letter is as follows.

WE wrote twice to your Highneſs, namely, firſt, *the* 28*th of* July, *and* ſecondly, *the* 29*th of* October, *of the laſt Year, that according to intercepted Letters, and by the long Abode of the King of* Sweden *in your Territories, it was to be fear'd, that that Prince and his Adherents, with the* Coſſacks,

ſacks, *Rebels to us, and to the King of* Poland, *our Ally; would by Means of the tryaterous Palatine of* Kiow, *and others, who finding Refuge in your Territories, endeavours to engage your Highneſs in a War; for which Reaſon we deſir'd that your Highneſs would Cauſe his* Swediſh *Majeſty forthwith to depart your Territories, and return into his own; offering him a free Paſſage through our Armies, under a a Guard of* 4000 Tartars, *and* 5000 Turks, *in caſe your Highneſs ſhould think it proper, for his greater Security: This is what our Ambaſſador was charged to propoſe to you; and his* Poliſh *Majeſty having likewiſe conſented to it, we were bound to anſwer for the ſaid free Paſſage.*

Moreover, We declared, that in caſe your Highneſs would grant a more numerous Guard to the King of Sweden, *and conduct him into* Poland *by force of Arms, This would be look'd upon by us, and by his* Poliſh *Majeſty, that your Highneſs had a mind to break the Peace of* Carlowitz, *and that we ſhould be oblig'd to oppoſe the ſame to the utmoſt of our Power, by Virtue of the Alliance, whereby we are mutually bound to aſſiſt each other.*

We are not the violators of that Peace, but would religiouſly obſerve it on our Part, to prevent the Effuſion of Human Blood; God will ſurely revenge it upon the Fomentor of the War, and Violator of the moſt Solemn Treaties: And ſhould the King of Sweden *offer to return into his Dominions by any other Way than has been propoſed to him, under Colour of greater Security, we ſhall look upon that Proceeding as an open Violation of the Peace.*

We have not yet received any Anſwer from your Highneſs, to our former Letters, nor from our Ambaſſador, to let us know whether he deliver'd them to your Highneſs, and whether he had any Anſwer

or not: But on the Contrary, we have received certain Advice, from ſeveral Places, that our Ambaſſador has been arreſted, that the War againſt us has been reſolv'd upon at Conſtantinople, *and Orders are given for forming an Army at* Bender; *and that the* Tartars *who are ready to conduct the King of* Sweden, *are order'd to enter* Poland *by Force of Arms; wherefore we thought fit to write this Letter to your Highneſs, to exhort you once more to anſwer our former Letters, and to let us know whether you intend to obſerve the Treaty prolong'd with us laſt Year, for* 30 *Years, confirm'd with ſeveral Oaths, made before the Judge of all our Actions, or to violate it, without the leaſt Occaſion on our Part given.*

We alſo declare, that in caſe we receive no Anſwer touching your Intention to preſerve the Peace, and that your Highneſs continues your Military Preparations, to conduct the King of Sweden *through* Poland, *with a powerful Army, we ſhall look upon this as an open Violation of the Truce; and calling God to our Aſſiſtance, ſhall provide for our own Safety, and endeavour to repulſe our Enemies with the Army we have ſent upon the Frontier.*

In the mean while, if the Rupture of the Peace be attended with the Effuſion of Human Blood, we declare, before God and Man, that it will not be our Fault, but that we ſhall be forc'd to it. We likewiſe take God to Witneſs, that it was never our Intention to break the Truce, but to obſerve it religiouſly as we promiſed, wherefore, without Truſting in any vain Immagination, but only in the ſupreme Judge, we hope, he will defend us againſt all Diſturbers of the Peace and Violators of Oaths.

We

We expect therefore, an Anſwer to theſe Preſents, and in caſe none comes, we ſhall look upon it, as a Breach of the Peace: But if we ſee by your Highneſſes Anſwer, that your Intention is to let us alone, and inviolably to maintain the Peace with us, (the King of Sweden *being ſent back, without its being in any wiſe infringed) all our Umbrage will Ceaſe.*

And as our Army is advancing towards the Frontiers, without committing any Act of Hoſtility, the Rupture cannot be attributed to us; the leſs becauſe, if the Satisfaction that is requir'd be given us, our Troops ſhall forthwith withdraw from your Neighbourhood, and we will inviolably maintain the Truce, with your Highneſs: We wiſh your Highneſs perfect Health.

Given at *Petersburgh*, the 16th of *January*, 1711.

Sign'd,

PETER.

ALL theſe Things put together, will convince any indifferent Perſon, that the *Czar* was no ways acceſſary to this War; but that on the Contrary, his Majeſty uſed all juſt Means conſiſtent with his Honour, to keep the Peace, ſo newly entred into, and ſo ſolemnly ſworn between himſelf and the *Turks*. But it could not be, the *Turks* prepair'd for War, with all imaginable Diligence; the King of *Sweden* began to grow formidable again at *Bender*, having gotten near 20000 Men together, very good Troops, moſt of them *Swedes* and *Poles*, and now the Grand Army of

of the *Turks* which had encamped at *Adrinople* ſome Time, began to advance.

THE *Czar* had a good Army of excellent Troops, and he had order'd the Horſe for ſome Time to rendezvous about *Lemberg*, where his *Czariſh* Majeſty came ſoon after in Perſon, and advanc'd with them to the Frontiers; they conſiſted in about 40000 Horſe, and a great Body of the Horſe remain'd about *Jaſſy*, to ſecure the Communication.

WITH this Army, when joyn'd by the Infantry, the *Czar* advanced; and having an intimate Correſpondence with the Hoſpodar of *Moldavia*, he made Conditions with him, to furniſh his Army with Bread, and other Proviſions, and to give him Paſſage and Re-paſſage thro' the Country.

SOME have ſaid the Hoſpodar kept a ſecret Correſpondence with the Grand Vizier, all the while; and did this on purpoſe to betray the *Czar*, but this was grounded on a Miſtake; the Hoſpodar perform'd his Agreement as long as he was able to do it without ruining himſelf, and all his Affairs; but drew off, when he ſaw the *Turkiſh* Army was ſo much ſuperior to the *Czar*, that he apprehended a Blow, and that he ſhould fall into the Hands of the *Turks*; then indeed, it was to be expected he would act with more Caution.

ON the other Hand, 'tis ſaid, the Hoſpodar did perform his Part effectually, as to furniſhing what Proviſions the *Czar* requir'd, and that nothing was deficient, but that the Hoſpodar never condition'd to furniſh Troops, or to draw his Sword in the Quarrel.

BUT

BUT to let that paſs, his *Czariſh* Majeſty ſet out from *Jaroſlaw*, the 10th of *June*, 1710, where Matters were concerted between the King of *Poland* and himſelf, for mutual Aſſiſtance in this War, after which the King of *Poland* went away into *Saxony*, to ſettle his Affairs in *Germany*; and the *Czar* went from thence to *Lemberg*, as above, then the Army; that is to ſay, the Cavalry, were order'd to advance to the *Dneiſter*: His Majeſty joyn'd them near *Kaminieck* and march'd, keeping the River on his Right, till he came to *Raſkow*, on the *Dneiſter*, where he was joyn'd by the four Regiments of his Guards, or Houſhold Troops; the reſt of the Infantry coming up in a few Days more, by the Way of *Bracklaw* and *Czarkaſſy*; ſome paſſing by *Kiovia*, and ſome by *Pultowa*, a Place made famous by the late Overthrow of the King of *Sweden*.

WHEN the whole Army was brought together, they reckon'd them to be 35000 Foot, and 40000 Horſe, all choice Troops, eſpecially the Infantry: 3000 *Turks* poſted overagainſt *Raſkow*, in order to diſpute their Paſſage Over the *Neiſter*, abandon'd their poſt upon the coming up of 2000 *Muſcovite* Grenadiers, who had paſs'd in the Night in ſome ſmall Boats, at about a League diſtance, and out of their Sight.

AS ſoon as the *Turks* were fled, two Bridges being laid upon the River, and a ſmall Entrenchment at the End of each Bridge, to ſecure the Paſſage, the whole Army paſſed over with their Artillery and Baggage.

FROM the *Neiſter*, the Army advanced to the *Pruth*, and the *Czar* went in Perſon with 5000 Dragoons to *Jaſſy*, the Capital of *Moldavia*; to

to Converſe with the Hoſpodar, and to ſecure ſufficient Magaziens of *Proviſions* which that Country and *Wallachia*, being very fruitful, were very well able to Furniſh: Here the *Czar* ſtaying too long, gave the *Turks*, who where then as far off as the *Danube*, Time to come up, for the Vizier hearing that the *Czar* was paſt the *Neiſter*, made long Marches, fearing the *Ruſſians* ſhould reach to the Banks of the *Danube* before him, and conſequently ſhould prevent or diſpute his Paſſage, and perhaps have given him a Blow, if he had attempted it.

The Vizier was decamp'd from *Adrianople* according to the beſt Advices, when the *Czar* came to the Banks of the *Neiſter*; but had ſent a great Body of his Infantry that they might paſs the Straights of the Mountain *Hemus*, which runs in a Chain, from the Shore of the *Venetian* Gulph, thro' *Macedonia* and *Thrace*, to the *Euxine* Sea; but as ſoon as the Vizier had an Account, that the *Czar* had advanc'd, he put himſelf in full March with the Horſe, and came to the *Danube*, the 24th of *June*.

HAD not his *Czariſh* Majeſty been delay'd at *Jaſſy* too long, but had paſs'd the *Pruth* at that City, and march'd on directly to the *Danube*, he had certainly carry'd the Point, and the Vizier had been kept at Bay, at the paſſing that River; for he would not have ventur'd to have paſs'd the *Danube*, which is a prodigious great River at *Siliſtria*, *a little above which he went over*, and the Stream fierce and Rapid: *I ſay*, he would not have ventur'd to paſs that River, in the Teeth of the *Ruſſian* Army; or, if he had, he would have run a great Riſque of being defeated.

It was without doubt, either a Miſtake, or a Misfortune, that his *Czariſh* Majeſty's Army ſhould Halt upon the *Pruth*, and let the *Turks* paſs the *Danube*; and his *Czariſh* Majeſty ſaw it, when it was too late; for had the Banks of the *Danube* been ſecured, the King of *Sweden* muſt have ſhifted his Quarters, and have quitted *Bender*, with as much Precipitation, almoſt, as he did *Pultowa*, and perhaps would have found it more difficult to have made his Eſcape.

Nor would the Forces of the *Tartars* have been ſo troubleſome, if the Grand Army of the *Turks* had been kept off; for tho' they call'd the *Tartars* 50000 yet the *Ruſſians* would have fac'd about, and have made them ſhift off, as faſt as they came: But when the *Turks* lay at the *Danube* before, and the *Ruſſians* had their Hands full of them in their Front, it was eaſy for a Body of *Tartars* to do Miſchief in the Rear.

'Tis to no Purpoſe to enlarge upon what might have been done, it is our Part to give the Hiſtory of what was really done; and the *Czar* having loſt 12 Days Time at *Jaſſy*, the Banks of the *Pruth*, the Grand Army of the *Turks* paſs'd the *Danube* undiſturb'd, and advanc'd a-pace.

While the *Turks* and the *Ruſſians* were then facing one another, the *Tartars* by their Inroads Harraſs'd the *Ruſſian* Army, took many Horſes, and killed a great many People, and at laſt, effectually cut off their Proviſions, ſunk or burnt all the Boats they had on the *Purth*, and in a Word, being very numerous, they did the *Ruſſians* a World of Miſchief.

THIS brought them to a Battle, for the *Turks* advancing to the *Pruth*, and the *Ruſſians* ſeeing themſelves almoſt reduced to an Extremity, reſolv'd to wait their coming and Fight them; the Myſtery of this Engagement, and of the ſudden Peace which was the Conſequence of it is not fully known in the World, and perhaps never may.

THE Sum of the Story, is this; the *Turks* advancing, and appearing very numerous, the *Czar* cauſed his Men to entrench, believing the Enemy would attack them; as, indeed, they did the next Day; the Entrenchment which they attack'd, was Guarded by 12 Battallions of *Muſcovite* Infantry, and about 3000 Granediers; who all together ply'd their Time ſo well, and lay'd ſo many of the Enemy dead upon the Spot; that the *Janizaries* after a furious Attack, which laſted four Hours, the Baſha's bringing on freſh Men, as the others were beaten off, were finally repulſed with great Slaughter; a Body of Dragoons, who were poſted to Support the Defendants, falling out alſo upon them in their Retreat.

THAT Night the Intrenchments were enlarg'd, and 10000 Foot, ſupported by Dragoons, were poſted to defend them; the Enemy came on again to the Aſſault, with 20000 *Janizaries*, ſupported by a great Body of Horſe; the *Ruſſian* Army ſtood in Order of Battle in two Lines, in their Camp, which was alſo entrench'd; the Fight was obſtinate, and very bloody; the Fury of the *Turks* not being to be reſiſted, without great Loſs on the *Ruſſian's* Part alſo: However, the *Turks* were again Beaten off; and in theſe two Days, it was ſaid, that the *Turks* loſt 12000 of their beſt Men.

HOWEVER,

HOWEVER, as the *Turks* ſtill prepar'd to renew their Efforts, as if reſolv'd to carry the Entrenchments, whatever it Coſt; and his *Czariſh* Majeſty finding the *Tartars* which harraz'd him, continually in the Rear, had 10000 Foot ſent them from the Viziers Army, and that he ſhould be in Danger of being quite Surrounded by two vaſt Armies of near 100000 Men each; and which was worſe, that his Convoys were cut off by the *Tartars*, he reſolv'd to Retreat; which, however, was done in ſuch Order, and with ſuch daring Boldneſs of Courage, in Sight of the Enemy, that when the *Turkiſh* Cavalry, pretended to purſue them, the Foot fairly faced about, threw down their *Chevaux de Frieze*, and pour'd in their Volleys upon the *Turks*, and then Retreated.

HOWEVER, this retreating fateagu'd the Army to the laſt Degree, and the *Tartars* ſurprizing a great many of the *Czar's* Horſes, added to the Misfortune, ſeveral Regiments of Horſe being entirely diſmounted: So the *Czar* finding a convenient Situation to Encamp and Entrench, halted again.

HERE the Vizier came up with the whole *Turkiſh* Army, but durſt not attack the *Ruſſian* Camp, the Front being defended by a Moraſs; the Right Wing, by a winding Branch of the River *Pruth*; and the Left, by a Hill, which the *Muſcovite* Infantry had entrenched: The Vizier ſeeing this, brings up his Cannon, and Cannonaded them in their Camp, with 50 Pieces of heavy Artillery; and their Camp lying expoſed to this Battery, there was no hindring it; at the ſame Time, they ſeem'd entirely to be ſhut in, by the winding of the River *Pruth*, and the Enemy,

nemy; ſo that in ſhort, the Generals began to look one upon another, as Men deſperate, and at a Loſs what to do.

The Colonels, and inferiour Officers, were for drawing out the Army, and giving the *Turks* Battle, and the Common Soldiers cry'd out to be led againſt the Enemy, that they might dye with their Swords in their Hands, and ſell their Lives as dear as they could, rather than be torn in Pieces with the Cannon, and periſh in the Camp for Want of Proviſions: But his *Czariſh* Majeſty, who alone was not diſmaid at the Circumſtances he was in, quikly reſolv'd what to do, and order'd a Trumpet with three Officers, to the Vizier, writing a Letter to the Vizier himſelf.

The Effect of this Meſſage, *what ever the Propoſal was*, anſwer'd ſo well what his *Czariſh* Majeſty deſir'd, that it produc'd a Treaty; and tho' it muſt be confeſs'd, that the Circumſtances of the *Ruſſian* Army then were ſuch that a Defeat was inevitable, except by a deſperate Bravery they could have broke thro' the whole *Turkiſh* Army, which being ſo deſtitute of Horſes, was next to impoſſible; yet, as they were all reſolv'd to dye with their Emperor, and to ſell their Lives like Men of Honour; the Vizier, who knew it, muſt have cauſed a moſt bloody Action, and perhaps might have been ruinous to him alſo, thought fit to conſider what Propoſals were made and whether the Demands he might make, might not only ſave the preſent Effuſion of Blood, but a future Expence both of Blood and Treaſure to the whole *Ottoman* Empire.

Upon this Foot, he Demanded the City of *Aſoph*, which was indeed, a Purchaſe, which a whole Campaign, and a good Army could not have procur'd them; (*ſome ſay*, his *Czariſh* Majeſty offer'd the City of *Aſoph*) he demanded alſo 1200000 Dollars in Money; the firſt, he called, the Agreement of Peace; and the ſecond, he called, the Ranſom of the Army; who, he ſuppoſed, to be all as good as his Priſoners, and conſequently Slaves, ready to be ſold at Market; which indeed, as Things ſtood, was almoſt the Caſe.

The bringing ſuch a Treaty to Concluſion, in ſuch an Exigency, was a Maſter-Piece of the *Czar*'s own conducting; for on the other Hand, the King of *Sweden* did his utmoſt to prevent it, nay, even he reproach'd the Vizier in the Head of his Army, complaining that he ſhould give up the Grand Seignior Enemy, when he was in his Hand, and that in one Day the *Czar* muſt be his Priſoner, and all his Army; and even threatening to repreſent it to the Grand Seignior, as to be ſure he afterwards did.

I ſay, it was a Maſter-Piece indeed, for the Vizier, by what Means is yet unknown, and perhaps will ever be ſo, continued firm, and repreſented the Advantages of Peace on the Terms propoſed, particularly the reſtoring of *Aſoph*, a Place, the Loſs of which, had been a hear Breaking to the *Turkiſh* Court: *I ſay*, he repreſented this ſo effectually to the Port, that the Sultan confirmed the Treaty, and ratify'd it with great Satisfaction, notwithſtanding all the Repreſentations of ſome of his Courtiers, who were againſt it.

As for the King of *Sweden*, and the Han of *Tartary*, they fail'd not, to give a quite different Account of the Thing, repreſenting the Vizier as Confederate with the *Czar*, to betray his Maſter, the Grand Seignior's Intereſt; and that he had taken a great Sum of Money to let the *Czar* eſcape out of his Hands, when he might with Eaſe have carry'd him away in Triumph, and have deliver'd him up, at the Gate of the Seven Towers in *Conſtantinople*.

THIS they aggravated to that Degree afterwards, and told their Tale ſo ſpecioufly, that the Grand Seignior was quite turn'd about in his Judgment of the Thing, and reſented it to the Ruin of the *Grand Vizier*, who was ſtrangled ſoon after, by Order of his Maſter, for making the Treaty, which he himſelf had approv'd.

BY this Treaty, (the Peace being made) the *Czar* of *Muſcovy*, and his whole Army, march'd ſafe and quietly, to the Bank of the *Dneiſter*, and ſo by eaſy Marches, into the *Ukraine*, with all their Cannon and Baggage; and thus ended this ſhort War, wherein tho' the *Czar* indeed loſt the Honour of the Field, yet he gain'd this great Point; namely, that the *Turks* abandon'd the Intereſt of the King of *Sweden*; which was all indeed, that the War was made for; and which if they would have done before, the *Czar* would never have took the Field at all: The Loſs the *Czar* ſuſtain'd in this Battle, was not much leſs than 10000 Men, and a prodigious Number of Horſes, ſome ſaid 30000, but no Artillery, or Trophies.

HIS *Czariſh* Majeſty having thus gotten over the main Article, the War with the *Turks*; little of Moment paſs'd for ſome time, the King of

Poland

Poland was wholly taken up in ſettling himſelf in his newly reſtored Kingdom; and the *Czar* giving his Troops a whole *Winters* Reſt, had leiſure to recrute and refreſh them, and in particular to fill them up with Forreigners, *Germans*, *Scots*, *Livonians*, *Poles*, nay, even with the *Swedes* themſelves, for whole Companies of the *Swedes*, who ſurrendered at *Pultowa*, and were taken in Battle there, and other Places, finding no other End of their Misfortunes, Liſted in the *Czar*'s Service, and were generally employ'd on the Side of *Cyrkaſſia*, and *Ukrania*, and ſuch remote Parts of his Dominions.

THE Articles of Peace, thus agreed upon, by the *Turks* and the *Czar* of *Muſcovy*, however they may be thought hard, and worded diſhonourably for his *Czariſh* Majeſty, the Juſtice due to an impartial Hiſtory, requires they ſhould be recorded, as follows.

The grand Reaſon of this authentick WRITING is, That by the Grace of God, the victorious *Muſſelman*'s Army, having by ſurrounding and ſhutting up the *Czar* of *Muſcovy*, with his whole Army, in the Neighbourhood of the River of *Pruth*, brought him into Sraights; he himſelf deſir'd Peace, and on the Inſtance of the ſaid *Czar*, the Treaty and Articles were ſettled and concluded, in the following Manner.

I. *THAT he ſhall reſtore the Fortreſs of* Azoph, *in the Condition wherein he formerly took it, with its Territories and Diſtricts.*

II. *That* Taiganrog, Kamenki, *and the new Fort on the further Side of the River* Kaman, *ſhall be totally demoliſh'd, the Cannon and Ammunition of War in the Fortreſs* Kamenki (*or* Kaminick) *to be left therein, to the Illuſtrious Port, and no new Fort to be ever built in the ſame Place.*

III. *That the* Czar *ſhall not concern himſelf with the* Polacks, *nor with the* Coſſacks, *their Dependants, named,* Barabaſci *and* Porcali; *nor with the Dependants of the moſt ſucceſsful* Han Daubet Gherai; *but ſhall leave them in their former Condition, and withdraw all his Forces out of thoſe Countries.*

IV. *That Merchants may come by Land into the well guarded Dominions, with their Merchandize; but no Perſon ſhall be admitted to reſide at the Illuſtrious* Port, *in the Quality of Ambaſſador.*

V. *That all* Muſſelmen, *who formerly, or in this War have been taken, and are Slaves in the Hands of the* Muſcovites, *ſhall be Reſtored to Liberty.*

VI. *That*

VI. *That the King of* Sweden, *having taken Sanctuary under the Wings of the powerful Protection of the illuſtrious Port, ſhall have free and ſafe Paſſage without being in any manner hindred or ſtopp'd by the* Muſcovites; *and in caſe they can come to a good Underſtanding together, and have a Mind to make Peace, it may in Conſequence be treated between them.*

VII. *And for the future, no Damage or Injury ſhall be done by the Port to the* Muſcovites; *in like Manner, theſe laſt ſhall do no Wrong to the former, or their Subjects or Dependants*

'WHEREFORE, the immence Goodneſs of my 'moſt powerful and gracious Emperor, and 'Lord, is beſought, to be pleas'd, to ratify the 'foregoing Articles, and to overlook the paſt ill 'Behaviour of the *Czar*.

'THUS, and in the forementioned Manner, by 'Vertue of the full Power to me given, is this pre'ſent Treaty made and deliver'd; we ſhall there'fore confer about the Hoſtages given by the ſaid 'Czar, for Performance of the Articles contain'd 'in the ſaid Inſtrument; likewiſe, the Treaty 'of Peace nam'd *Temeruki* ſhall be mutually Ex'changed; after which his Army ſhall march off 'free, and the direct way to their own Country, 'without any Hindrance, either by the Victorious 'Army, or by the *Tartars*, and others; the fore'going Articles, ſhall of Courſe be executed, and 'the Capitulation mutually Exchang'd; after 'which we will immediately give Liberty to the 'Two Hoſtages that are in the victorious Army, 'namely, the Chiefeſt among the Nobility of 'the Nation of the *Meſſiah*, his Privy Chancel'lor, Baron *Peter Schaphirof*, and the Grandſon 'of *Czerement Michael Boriz* (whoſe Ends be

'Happy) after every Point ſhall have been per-
'form'd; in Teſtimony of what is agreed, this
'preſent Writing, Sign'd in the aforeſaid Camp,
'the 6th of the Month *Gemaiel Achir*, of the
'*Heghira*, 1123, (or, the 21ſt of *July*, 1711.)

We ſhall now bring our Hiſtory into a more compact Method of Relation; for as hitherto, the ſeveral ally'd Powers of *Muſcovy*, *Denmark*, and *Poland*, have acted ſingle, and in ſeperate Parts of the World, So that we have been oblig'd to trace their Proceedings from one Part of the World to another, and give the Story a-part; we ſhall now find them joyn all three together in puſhing the *Swedes* as their Common Enemy, in order to thruſt them quite out of *Germany*, and diſpoſſeſs them of all their Dominions, on this Side of the *Baltick* Sea.

It has been already noted, how King *Auguſtus*, after the Defeat of the *Swedes* at the great Battle of *Pultowa*, had reaſſum'd the Crown of *Poland*; 'tis no part of my Buſineſs to relate his Proceedings there; or the Manner in which he went on to Eſtabliſh himſelf on that Throne, other than as the *Czar* of *Muſcovy*, whoſe Story we are upon, was Concern'd in it, that part belongs more particularly to the Hiſtory of King *Auguſtus*, and his Affairs in *Poland*.

But now we ſhall find the *Czar*, King *Auguſtus*, and the King of *Denmark*, all in a Body acting together in concert, and all in one Place, *viz.* in *Pomerania*, in order to puſh the *Swedes* out of that Country; which, in ſhort, was the Center of all their Force, and by which Country all their Reinforcements from *Sweden* arriv'd; And here General *Craſſau*, with a Body of Troops, had

had hover'd over the Frontiers for ſome time, threatening *Saxony* with another Invaſion, and perhaps had made good their Menaces they gave out, had not the Power and Princes of the Grand Alliance's form'd, what they call'd, a neutral Army to prevent it.

THIS the *Swedes* reſented in the higheſt Manner poſſible, and fail'd not to teſtify their Reſentment, in Seizing the Ships belonging to the ſaid Confederates in the *Baltick*, and refuſing to allow them the Liberty of Trade to the Towns of *Livonia*, taken from them by the *Czar*, as particularly *Riga*, *Pernau*, *Revel*, and *Narva*, as alſo *Wyburgh*, and even to *Dantzick*.

THINGS ſtanding thus, the Allies above-nam'd, reſolv'd to reduce the Provinces of *Pomerania*, and the *Iſle of Rugen*, as the only Footing the *Swedes* had on this Side the *Baltick*, except the City and Port of *Wiſmar*, which they afterward found Means to reduce alſo.

THE King of *Poland* began this Part of the War, as the Perſon who was more nearly concern'd, and having publiſh'd a large Manifeſto of his Reaſons for it; the *Czar* came in rather as an Auxiliary than otherwiſe tho' his *Czariſh* Majeſty's Quarrel at the *Swedes*, was equally concern'd with any of them; this Manifeſto ſtating the Caſe of the whole War, I am oblig'd to mention, becauſe the *Czar* is nearly concern'd in the Conſequences, tho' not in the Reaſon of that part of the Quarrel.

HOW great a Regard the moſt Serene King of Poland *has ever had ſince the Beginning of this War, to the Friendſhip of the moſt Serene* Allies *in the War againſt* France; *and what he has done upon that Conſideration, muſt be ſufficiently known to all the World; how alſo, and often poſtponing his own Advantage; he has neglected no Occaſion to expreſs his Inclination and Readineſs to promote their Intereſt, of which, certainly, his Majeſty gave an undeniable Inſtance, in the Year* 1709, *when the* Swediſh *Troops under General* Craſſau *retir'd from* Poland *into* Pomerania; *it was doubtleſs his* Poliſh *Majeſty's Intereſt, to fall upon his Enemies at that Time, and give them no time to re-eſtabliſh their Forces, in order to diſturb again the Kingdom of* Poland, *or invade the Hereditary Dominions of his ſacred Majeſty, or at leaſt to keep them in continual Apprehenſions of an Irruption: Theſe were ſufficient Reaſons to induce his Majeſty to the Enterprize, and he had Forces enough to execute it; For, beſides the Army of* Poland *and* Lithuania, *the Auxiliary Troops of* Muſcovy, *under General* Goltz, *were at Hand, his Majeſty might very well have followed the Example given him by the King of* Sweden *himſelf, in the Year* 1706, *and have purſu'd and attack'd the* Swedes *in* Pomerania; *but notwithſtanding this appear'd highly neceſſary for his own Security, he forbore it of his own accord, at the deſire of the High Allies, making War againſt* France, *he ſo wiſely, and prudently directed that Affair, that upon Condition of a certain and ſufficient Guaranty, which was to be given by the ſaid* Allies; *for the Security of the confederated Princes in the* North, *they alter'd their Reſolution to purſue the Troops under General* Craſſau; *in the Province aforeſaid. The* Czar *of* Muſcovy, *and the Republick of* Poland, *caus'd immediately*

mediately after, their Miniſter at Ratisbon *and the* Hague, *to ſignify, as they did likewiſe themſelves, by Letters, their good Intentions, for the Confederates againſt* France; *adding, however, a Clauſe, or Condition, that not only the* Saxon *Territories, but alſo the Kingdom of* Poland, *and the* Daniſh *Provinces, afterwards mention'd in the publick Acts of the* Nutrality, *ſhould be abſolutely ſecur'd againſt all Invaſion on the part of the* Swedes, *by the Guaranty of the High* Allies, *againſt* France; *for it would have been highly unjuſt in any, to have procured a free and ſafe Flight and Retreat for the Enemies aboveſaid, and to have refus'd at the ſame time to prevent the Danger that might be apprehended from them.*

This being approv'd, Treaties were ſet on Foot, and concerted for that Neutrallity at the Hague *and* Ratisbon *in the uſual manner, and the moſt Serene* Allies, *look'd upon that Affair, at that time, almoſt as the Safety and Preſervation of the Empire, and as if the Fate of the whole Common Cauſe depended thereupon; the* Confederates *in the* North, *having the ſame Notions, accepted the Neutrality, and by means thereof, bound themſelves in ſome manner with the* Allies *againſt* France; *and it was reſolved, that if any ſhould act contrary to this Agreement, that the other, ſhould unite their Forces againſt the Infringer of the ſaid Neutrality. The moſt Serene King of* Poland *obſerved religiouſly what had been concerted and agreed to, by the* Allies *on both ſides; expecting and confiding, that the King of* Sweden *would agree, and conform himſelf to that Convention, according to the obligatory Declaration of the Royal* Senate *of* Stockholm, *delivered in a ſolemn manner in Writing at the* Hague; *but contrary to the Opinion and Expectation of all, the King*

Sweden

Sweden *was of a different Opinion, and manifeſted the ſame by Word and Deed, as it is ſufficiently known to the World; he endeavour'd at firſt, to amuſe the moſt Serene* Allies *in ſeveral ways, and ſet on Foot a Treaty with them for putting into their Service* 8000 *Men, to be detach'd from the Troops under general* Craſſau *in* Pomerania; *but when* Great Britain, *and the* States, *had conſented to every Thing that had been deſired of them, and the Treaty was look'd upon as concluded, he forbid the Senate of* Stockholm *to part with any Forces for the Service of the* Allies.

I. *Not contented therewith, he augmented his Army in* Pomerania, *above one half of the Number the ſame was at firſt, by new Levies.*

II. *He cauſed a conſiderable Number of Men, to be brought over, at ſeveral Times, from* Sweden, *into* Pomerania, *ſometimes* 500 *Men, and at other times* 800.

III. *He cauſed ſeveral* Daniſh *Ships belonging to the Provinces included in the Neutrality, to be chaſed by his Men of War, and uſed in a hoſtile manner, breaking thereby the Neutrallity aforeſaid.*

IV. *After having concluded an Alliance with the* Ottoman *Port, the Hereditary Enemy of the* Chriſtian *Name, which cannot be excuſed; he did not ſcruple do declare at the* Hague, *and at the Diet of* Ratisbon, *by a ſolemn Writing dated from* Bender, *the* 30*th of* November, 1710; *that he rejected the Neutrallity aforeſaid, and would not be oblig'd to the ſame; and the Baron* de Stralenheim, *his Envoy at the Imperial Court, had already proteſted againſt it, the* 11*th of* Auguſt *the ſaid Year; he uſed there-*

in

in a harſh Stile, attended with Menaces, hardly to be endur'd, as that the Convention for the ſaid Neutrality was partial (tho' it was for his Advantage, if he would conſider the Thing Right:) that he reſerv'd to himſelf an unlimited Liberty, to employ his Forces againſt whomſoever, and in ſuch Times, and Places, as he ſhould think fit, according to the Laws and Cuſtoms of War; if any one offer'd to hinder him from purſuing his declared Enemy with his Arms, he could not but conſider him as an Aggreſſer, and declare him for ſuch: Which amounts in Effect, not only to a Declaration of War againſt the Confederated Princes in the North *in general, and againſt the moſt Serene King of* Poland, *in particular, and a Signification that he will attack him in the* Poliſh *Dominions, and in his Electorate, or, whereſoever he ſhould think fit; but may be look'd upon alſo, as a Declaration of War againſt the* Allies, *now in War againſt* France; *and an intimation that he will carry on the ſame on all Sides, by the help of his Confederates the* Turks *and* Tartars: *This the King of* Sweden *has expreſs'd in plain Terms, in his Manifeſto dated from* Bender, 28*th of* January, *of this preſent Year* 1711. *which the Palatine of* Kiow *diſperſed in* Poland, *attended with an Army of* Barbarians *and* Infidels, *and which was directly intended againſt the King of* Poland, *wherein he declar'd he has made an Alliance with the* Turks *and* Tartars, *for that Purpoſe; But theſe Threats will not hinder the moſt Serene* Allies, *againſt* France, *from adhearing to the Meaſures concerted, for maintaining the Neutrality, aforeſaid.*

V. To

V. *To what has been already ſaid, it muſt be added, that the Rebel* Smigielski, *was lately ſent from the* Swediſh Pomerania *with a Manifeſto of Count* Lezinski *(who not only continues in the Country, but is maintain'd therein) and with ſome Troops has made an Irruption into the Country to exhort the* Poles *to Rebellion, and has actually committed Hoſtilities againſt the Troops of the King of* Poland, *and when they were Purſuing him, he retired again into the* Swediſh *Province aforeſaid, where he is entertain'd, and ſupply'd with Neceſſaries, by which Actions, this Neutrality has been again infringed by the* Swedes: *Therefore the moſt Serene King of* Poland, *is not only grounded in Juſtice, but beſides, lies under a preſſing Neceſſity, to make uſe of all lawful Means, for eradicating this Evil, and preventing thoſe Dangers in their very Source.*

There is no Reaſon to believe, that when the moſt Serene Allies *againſt* France, *induced the moſt Serene King of* Poland, *and his* Allies, *to accept, out of Regard to them, a Neutrality ſo advantagious to the King of* Sweden, *tho' he had rejected it with Scorn, ever pretend that this Compliance and Readineſs of his* Poliſh *Majeſty, ſhould turn to the Ruin of the Kingdom of* Poland, *and other Provinces belonging to him; tho' this has, in a great Meaſure, already happen'd; ſeeing that out of Fear of an Invaſion on the Part of the ſaid* Swediſh *Forces in* Pomerania *many Subjects of his Majeſty have abandon'd their Country, whereby the Credit of the Merchants amongſt Forreigners, and trade in general, has receiv'd great Prejudice: beſides this Damage, the Expences for raiſing new Forces, and equiping them, their*

marches,

Marches, and Maintenance, with the raiſing of the Militia throughout the whole Electorate of Saxony, *have not only put the moſt Serene King of* Poland *to great Charges, and involv'd him in great Difficulties, but have alſo leſſen'd very much his Revenues, and occaſion'd many other Loſſes.*

Furthermore, it would be altogether unreaſonable, that the King of Sweden, *who has already receiv'd this Benefit of the Convention of the Neutrality tho' irreverently rejected by him, in that no Body has purſu'd the Forces of* Craſſau *into* Pomerania, *ſhould continue to enjoy the ſaid Neutrality, to the Prejudice of the King of* Poland, *and his* Allies, *in the* North; *for no Body can be inſenſible that the* Turkiſh *War is founded on the Augmentation of the* Swediſh *Army in* Pomerania, *and the future Invaſion by the ſame, of* Poland *or* Saxony.

The State of Affairs being ſuch, and the World being perſwaded that the King of Sweden *has ſo explain'd his Mind by Words and Deeds, that nothing further is to be expected from him; and that on the other Hand, it appears, after other violent Means of that King, which were ſcarce ever heard of before, from a* Chriſtian *Prince: That the Security of the moſt Serene King of* Poland, *and his Dominions depends on the Diſperſion of the* Swediſh *Army in* Pomerania; *it follows that the moſt Serene* Allies *againſt* France, *are oblig'd to aſſiſt him with their Forces, according to the Tenor of the Convention, and as the Preſervation and Tranquility of the Holy* Roman *Empire, and the happy Succeſs of the Common Cauſe depend, in a great Meaſure on this Point; the moſt Serene King of* Poland *expected that the moſt Serene* Allies *againſt* France, *would have ſent their Forces, deſign'd for maintaining the ſaid Neutrality, to be employ'd under his Command, as being the Party offended,*

offended, and in Danger; but as they have not been able hitherto, to execute their good Intentions, as the Delays of the March of their Troops they had promiſed, and other Difficulties ſufficiently ſhew; the moſt Serene King aforeſaid, thinks himſelf Neceſſitated to take without delay, ſuch Meaſures as are neceſſary for his Affairs, and for preventing the Inconveniencies, and Damages afore-mention'd, and their Conſequences; on the other Hand, the faithful States of the Kingdom of Poland, will be no longer uncertain, as wiſhing to ſee the Tranquility of their Country ſettled upon a firm Bottom.

But the Reaſons alledg'd here, for the Preſervation of Poland and Saxony, are not the only Motives that induce his Poliſh Majeſty to make uſe of the lawful Means aforeſaid; but the Tranquility of the holy Roman Empire, whereof the Preſervation is chiefly committed to his Care, at this preſent time as Vicar thereof, beſides the Dignity of Director of the Circle of Upper Saxony, does chiefly require this from him; eſpecially, ſeeing it is known that the King of Sweden has lately made an Alliance with the King of France, the Tenor of which, could not be kept a Secret, but that the Allies had notice of it: Beſides, it is likewiſe known, that the Swedes in Pomerania wait only that the Elector of Bavaria may execute his Projects on the Upper Rhine, againſt the Holy Roman Empire, there being no doubt but they would lay hold of that Opportunity to invade Saxony, and the Provinces of Germany, rather than thoſe of Poland: From whence it appears, how neceſſary it is to uſe proper Means in Time, that thro' the Diſperſion of the Swediſh Army in Pomerania, that Tranquility of the Holy Roman Empire, may be ſettled, and preſerv'd, that the dangerous Machinations, afore-ſaid, may be prevented, and that the Fire hid

under

under thoſe treacherous Aſhes, may be Extinguiſh'd therefore no Body can blame the Deſign of the moſt Serene King of Poland, *to provide for his Security, and diſcharge his* Office *with the Forces God has given him, and the Aſſiſtance of his* Allies; *Its further more declared, on the Part of the moſt Serene King of* Poland, *that he has no other Intention and Deſign, but to procure the Security of the Holy* Roman *Empire, and his own; and that he is induced to it that the moſt Serene* Allies *againſt* France, *will ſee that the moſt Serene* Allies *in the* North, *have made ſuch Diſpoſitions, and taken ſuch Meaſures, that they will more readily concur therein, and perform what they are oblig'd to, by their Agreement; and this happy* Band of Union *among themſelves, which is hitherto continued may remain in-diſoluble to their Common Advantage.*

Tho' the King of *Poland* began this Part of the War, in declaring the Intentions of the Allies, yet the King of *Denmark* firſt enter'd the Country, that Prince perhaps glad to leave his own Dominions, and his Capital City where the Plague rag'd, at that Time, moſt violently, enter'd the *Swediſh Pomerania* with his Army, the 8th of *Auguſt*, 1711. And without any Reſiſtance, that was conſiderable, advanced to the Neigbourhood of *Stralſound.*

But this was too great an undertaking for the King of *Denmark*'s Army who were not full 20000 Men, without the King of Poland; however in *September*, the *Saxons* arriv'd, to the Number of 12000 Men, and the two Armys being thus joyn'd, they inveſted *Stralſund*: But *Stralſund* ſtrong by Situation, and well fortify'd, was too knotty a Piece of Work, even for both the Kings united;

offended, and in Danger; but as they have not been able hitherto, to execute their good Intentions, as the Delays of the March of their Troops they had promiſed, and other Difficulties ſufficiently ſhew; the moſt Serene King aforeſaid, thinks himſelf Neceſſitated to take without delay, ſuch Meaſures as are neceſſary for his Affairs, and for preventing the Inconveniencies, and Damages afore-mention'd, and their Conſequences; on the other Hand, the faithful States of the Kingdom of Poland, *will be no longer uncertain, as wiſhing to ſee the Tranquility of their Country ſettled upon a firm Bottom.*

But the Reaſons alledg'd here, for the Preſervation of Poland *and* Saxony, *are not the only Motives that induce his* Poliſh *Majeſty to make uſe of the lawful Means aforeſaid; but the Tranquility of the holy* Roman *Empire, whereof the Preſervation is chiefly committed to his Care, at this preſent time as* Vicar *thereof, beſides the Dignity of Director of the Circle of* Upper Saxony, *does chiefly require this from him; eſpecially, ſeeing it is known that the King of* Sweden *has lately made an Alliance with the King of* France, *the Tenor of which, could not be kept a Secret, but that the* Allies *had notice of it: Beſides, it is likewiſe known, that the* Swedes *in* Pomerania *wait only that the Elector of* Bavaria *may execute his Projects on the* Upper Rhine, *againſt the Holy* Roman *Empire, there being no doubt but they would lay hold of that Opportunity to invade* Saxony, *and the Provinces of* Germany, *rather than thoſe of* Poland: *From whence it appears, how neceſſary it is to uſe proper Means in Time, that thro' the Diſperſion of the* Swediſh *Army in* Pomerania, *that Tranquility of the Holy* Roman *Empire, may be ſettled, and preſerv'd, that the dangerous Machinations, afore-ſaid, may be prevented, and that the Fire hid*

under

under those treacherous Ashes, may be Extinguish'd therefore no Body can blame the Design of the most Serene King of Poland, *to provide for his Security, and discharge his* Office *with the Forces God has given him, and the Assistance of his* Allies; *Its further more declared, on the Part of the most Serene King of* Poland, *that he has no other Intention and Design, but to procure the Security of the Holy* Roman *Empire, and his own; and that he is induced to it that the most Serene* Allies *against* France, *will see that the most Serene* Allies *in the* North, *have made such Dispositions, and taken such Measures, that they will more readily concur therein, and perform what they are oblig'd to, by their Agreement; and this happy* Band of UNION *among themselves, which is hitherto continued may remain in-dissoluble to their Common Advantage.*

THO' the King of *Poland* began this Part of the War, in declaring the Intentions of the Allies, yet the King of *Denmark* first enter'd the Country, that Prince perhaps glad to leave his own Dominions, and his Capital City where the Plague rag'd, at that Time, most violently, enter'd the *Swedish Pomerania* with his Army, the 8th of *August*, 1711. And without any Resistance, that was considerable, advanced to the Neigbourhood of *Stralsound*.

BUT this was too great an undertaking for the King of *Denmark*'s Army who were not full 20000 Men, without the King of Poland; however in *September*, the *Saxons* arriv'd, to the Number of 12000 Men, and the two Armys being thus joyn'd, they invested *Stralsund*: But *Stralsund* strong by Situation, and well fortify'd, was too knotty a Piece of Work, even for both the Kings united;

united; for they found, that there was no Inveſting it effectually, unleſs the *Iſle of Rugen*, which lies over-againſt it, ſhould be firſt reduc'd; to prevent this, the *Swedes* had in that Iſland, and in the City, an Army of old Soldiers, Stronger in Foot, than both the King's Armies put together, tho' not equal to them in Horſe; they likewiſe found, that the *Swedes* Daily relieved the Town, by Sea, as they thought convenient; having a Squadron of Men of War, and Frigats, always in the Harbour; theſe Difficulties oblig'd them at laſt to raiſe the Siege, without ſo much as carrying on any effectual Attack, or, ſo much as offering to Storm any of the Out-works. But it muſt be enquir'd a little how they ſpent their Time.

It was the End of *October* before the *Saxon* Artillery arriv'd in the Camp, as for the *Danes*, they brought no heavy Cannon along with them, but had ſome afterwards, when it was too late.

However, for a great while they amuſed the World with their Reſolutions to attack the *Iſle of Rugen*, and the *Danes* who underſtand Sea Affairs better than the *Saxons*, contriv'd to make great Rafts of Timber, on which to tranſport their Horſe; but the Arrival of ſome *Swediſh* Fregats who lay at a Diſtance, and batter'd thoſe Rafts, and threw Bombs upon them, ſhew'd the King of *Poland* that the tranſporting their Cavalry in that manner, would be impracticable.

In the mean time, 12 *Swedes* Men of War arriv'd on the Back of the Iſland, and Landed ſome Troops, and ſent 3 Ships about to *Stralſund*, laden with Ammunition for the Garriſon, and two more large Ships laden with Corn, which were

were *Daniſh* Ships, that were bringing of Corn to the *Daniſh* Army, which was in great want of it, but they fell into the Hands of the *Swedes*, and the beſieged had the Satisfaction of eating the Bread which was furniſh'd for the Beſiegers.

THE *Swediſh* Captain gave out, that a large Embarkation of Troops and other Neceſſaries, was preparing at *Carelſcroon*, and would ſail in a few Days; this News diſcourag'd the Beſiegers, and in a Word, Proviſions alſo growing very ſcarce, in an exhauſted Country, and the Seaſon advancing, the Troops ſeparated, and gave over the Enterprize for that Year. But I ſhould have mention'd, that before this, a ſtrong Detatchment of 15000 *Muſcovites*, in 12 Regiments, all Infantry, arrived in the Camp; and a ſtrong Squadron of *Daniſh* Men of War, came to the Back of the *Iſland of Rugen*, pretending to ſupport the Allies in attacking of the Town but it was too late.

HIS *Czariſh* Majeſty was all this while Carrying on his Intereſts of one kind or another, on the Frontiers of *Tartary*, by Negotiations with the *Turks*, on the Subject of Peace, of which, in its Place.

HE arriv'd the 24th of *October* at *Torgau* on the *Elb*, where the Marriage of his eldeſt and only Son was ſolemniz'd with the Princeſs of *Wolfembuttel*; an happy Match, of an unhappy Son!

THIS Marriage had been concerted for ſome Time, but was not conſummated till the latter End of the Year; the View that the *Czar* had in this Match, was very well lay'd, for as his *Czariſh* Majeſty always aim'd at the getting a Footing, by ſome Means or other, in the Empire of *Germany*, he did not queſtion but by this Alliance, ſome Pretentions might in Time ariſe, to give him

Room to intermedle on that Side, as afterwards he try'd again in the Dutchy of *Mecklemberg*, but both without Succeſs, as ſhall appear in its Place.

But to return to the Siege of *Straelſund*, the *Muſcovite* Infantry having joyn'd the Confederate Army, and the *Daniſh* and *Saxon* Artillery being all arriv'd, and a *Daniſh* Squadron of Men of War ſuperiour to the *Swediſh*, the World expected they would go on with Succeſs; but we ſhall ſee this Part reſerv'd for a further Exerciſe of their Patience.

The *Danes* indeed, out did themſelves on this Occaſion, at Sea; for their Fleet conſiſted, if we may believe the Liſt they publiſh'd, of 36 Men of War of the Line of Battle, from 50 Guns the leaſt, to 110 Guns the higheſt, and eight Fregats; but we ſhall never ſee them fit out ſuch a Fleet again, neither were theſe all at Sea together; nor were thoſe that were out fully mann'd for an Engagement: However, the *Swedes* had no Fleet able to look theſe in the Face, ſo that their Affairs, had they managed them rightly, were in a fair way, and the *Swedes* muſt have yielded up the Town. Their Troops were as follows.

Danes —	57 Squadrons of Horſe, making		5000
	22 Battallions — 13200	} Foot	16800
	4 large Bat. Militia 3600		
Saxons - -	46 Squadrons —— Horſe		4600
	15 Battalions —— Foot		7500
Muſcovites	12 Regiments of Infantry making		
	30 Battallions —— Foot		15000
			48900

Some

Some Accounts ſay the *Muſcovite* Troops conſiſted of ——— } Foot — 10000
and Dragoons 5000

THIS was a great Army, had they been well apply'd, and well ſupply'd, but the Seaſon of the Year was too far gone; they had uſed the Country ill at their firſt coming, eſpecially the *Danes*, ſo that if the poor People who would have ſupply'd them, had neither Corn nor Forrage left them to bring to the Camp; in a Word, the Country was Exhauſted, and the *Swedes* at the Beginning ſcour'd the Seas ſo, that nothing could come that Way; for the *Danes* Fleet came too late, and when 'twas to no Purpoſe to open Trenches, the whether being Cold, and begining to freez; this made their Soldiers dye and deſert for meer Want, and the Severity of the Weather and ſervice; ſo that the *Danes* Foot were reduc'd to a Handful, the Cavalry was ruin'd and the Horſe ſtarv'd; and in a Word, the *Danes* did not march off above 9000 effective Men, *as we were told*, out of 21800 they brought with them as above.

AS for the *Ruſſian* Troops they came late, but they brought ſome Stores with them, which aſſiſted them, and yet they ſuffer'd very much too, and were extremly fateigu'd with long Marches.

BUT to return to the Siege, as the Difficulties and Hardſhips the Troops indured were great, ſo their Councils were divided; the ableſt Generals were of Opinion, to raiſe the Siege, hold the Place block'd up during the *Winter*, and Attack it early in the Spring with 60000 Men; others were for carrying it on, whatever it coſt:

and to that Purpoſe to ſend for more Troops, and both the Kings were really loath to break up the Siege, eſpecially, while the *Daniſh* Fleet was ſo ſtrong, and the *Swediſh* Fleet durſt not appear.

But a new Piece of Advice alter'd their Meaſures, the King of *Denmark* had Advice that the *Swedes* prepar'd a great Fleet of Tranſports at *Carelſcroon*, with a Convoy of 28 Capital Men of War, and that they Shipp'd 18000 Men, on Board this Fleet, under the Command of Count *Stienboch*, a Name terrible to the *Danes*; this brought the King immediately to conſider, how naked he had left his Capital City, the Army and Fleet being all here; and that if the *Swedes* ſhould go directly to *Copenhagen*, they would ruin him at once, while he was puſhing a foreign Project.

With this Apprehenſion, which was very juſt in it ſelf; the *Daniſh* Fleet was ſent back to the Coaſt of *Denmark*, except ſome Fregates left to Cruiſe before the *Iſle of Rugen*, and the Strait at *Straelſund*, to prevent Succours being brought to the Garriſon.

But the *Swedes*, who ſhew'd themſelves, on this Occaſion, appear'd in the Beginning of *December*, upon the Back of *Rugen*, where the Tranſports immediately Landed about 8000 Men with a great Quantity of Ammunition, a Train of Artillery, and Store of Proviſions for the Beſieged, and immediately ſtood back again for the Coaſt of *Sweden*, to fetch more Troops, which, however they did not bring at that Time.

In

In this Posture, Things stood till the End of *December*, when the two Kings finding they should but ruin their Armies, and perhaps fail in their Enterprize at last, resolv'd to break up the Siege; and accordingly the Troops decamp'd the 17th of *January*; and we shall find this difficult Work reserv'd for the powerful Assistance, and Councils of the *Czar* in Person.

About the Beginning of *November* this Year, the Hereditary Prince of *Mouscovy*, with his new Bride, the Princess of *Wolfembuttle*, set out from her Father the Dukes Court, on their return to *Petersburgh*; the *Czar* at the same time came to meet them at *Koningsberg* in the *Royal Prussia*, the 19th, where he was magnificently treated by the Duke of *Holstien Sonderburgh* Governor of *Prussia*, who went to receive him at *Fredericksburg*, on the Frontiers of that Dutchy; they all return'd to *Petersburgh* in *December*, where the Princess (*afterwards unhappy!*) was treated by the *Czar* himself, with great Affection aud Tenderness: But we shall say more of this Affair hereafter, perhaps in a Treatise by it self.

While these things were in agitation, the *Turks* began to discover some uneasiness at the *Russians* not having perform'd the Articles of the late Peace, particularly that, about the Surrender of *Asoph*, and the withdrawing the *Russian* Troops out of *Poland*; the *Czar* had, indeed, desired to have the King of *Sweden*'s Passage settled first, for his Return to his own Dominions; but the *Turks* were positive, and insisted that the manner of his Return was not any Part of the Condition, upon which the evacuating of *Asoph* was stipulated.

After many Debates on either Side, the *Czar* not having the leaſt Apprehenſions of the manner of his Return, one Way or other, reſolv'd to perform his Part of the Treaty; and accordingly order'd all the additional Works at *Aſoph* to be demoliſh'd, and the royal Fort over-againſt it with the magnificent Bridge, the moſt beautiful Building in that Part of the World, to be all blown up in the Air, and the Town to be put in the ſame Poſture at was before, and then gave it up to three Baſſa's, who were ſent with ſome Troops from *Conſtantinople* to receive it; at the ſame time, his *Czariſh* Majeſty declared to the Court of the Grand Seignior, that he would oppoſe the *Turks* by Force, if they offer'd to ſend back the King of *Sweden*, either through his Dominions, or through the King of *Poland*'s Conntry with an Army, or with more than 5000 Horſe, the Number propoſed; and thus ended that knotty Buſineſs, the only Action of his Life, which the *Czar* had brought to Account of Loſs, where he led his Armies in Perſon, having never been perſonally defeated before.

I muſt now look back again to *Pomerania*, to lay a Foundation of ſome great Actions, which will bring his *Czariſh* Majeſty into the Field on this Side of the World, where he was, perhaps, leaſt expected: The Siege of *Straelſund* was raiſed, as has been obſerv'd, and the two Kings of *Denmark* and *Poland* gone Home, and their Troops put into *Winter* Quarters. In this Interval, the *Swedes* brought over more Troops; and together with thoſe already there, form'd a conſiderable Army and that, ſuch a one, as they threaten'd to invade their Enemies with, on every Side,

and

and particularly, they were greatly alarm'd with the Apprehenſions of them in *Saxony*.

THIS made his *Czariſh* Majeſty, at the preſſing Inſtances of the King of *Denmark* and *Poland*, prepared for an early Campaign, and his *Czariſh* Majeſty reſolv'd to be there alſo in Perſon; accordingly 25000 *Ruſſians*, of the choiceſt of his *Czariſh* Majeſty's Army, began their March ſo early, that they were upon the Frontiers of *Pomerania* by the End of *April*; the *Danes* were longer, becauſe their Naval Preparations ſeem'd to take them up, almoſt entirely; being reſolved to ſupport the next Years Enterprize, with ſuch a Fleet, as that the *Swedes* ſhould not dare to ſhow themſelves at Sea to interrupt them; but we ſhall ſoon ſee the Effect.

THE *Swedes* in the Mean time had Ship'd off ſo many Troops, and ſuch a Prodigious Quantity of Arms and Amunition, that they began to threaten to take the Field with an Army; and yet to leave the Cities of *Stetin* and *Straelſund* with ſufficient Garriſons to defend themſelves in Caſe of an Attack; they had alſo put a ſufficient Number of Troops into *Wiſmar*, which the *Danes* had in vain block'd up, the Year before: The King of *Pruſſia* was pleaſed ſo far to favour this War againſt *Sweden*, that he gave Paſſage to Prince *Menzikoff*, who commanded the *Ruſſian* Army, and to his Troops in their March for *Pomerania*, and the ſaid Prince *Menzikoff*, paſs'd by *Koningsburgh*, the 15th of *April*, 1712.

Europe had now been allarm'd for ſeveral Months with the News that the King of *Sweden* at *Bender*, by his own Intereſt, and by the Solicitation of the Cham of *Tartray*, had prevailed with the Grand Seignior to break again with the Czar of *Muſcovy*,

and to renew the War; and ſo much there was of truth in it, that the *Turks* made ſeveral extravagant Demands, and that with ſome Menaces added to them, which were, (however, inſiſted on) yet very unjuſt, but as his *Czariſh* Majeſty had in the firſt Place, perform'd the laſt Treaty in every Part of it; and more-over, that Ways and Means were found out to bring over the Cham of *Tartary*, from the Intereſt of the King of *Sweden*: A new Treaty was ſet on Foot, at *Conſtantinople*, which was at length finiſh'd, and ſign'd, the principal Articles are as follows.

I. *THAT the* Czar *ſhall be oblig'd within* 30 *Days to withdraw all his Forces out of* Poland, *which ſhall not return thither upon any Pretence whatſoever, unleſs it ſhould happen that the King of* Sweden *being return'd into his Dominions, ſhould joyn with the* Poles *and attack* Muſcovy *on that Side, in which Caſe his* Czariſh *Majeſty ſhall be at Liberty to march again into* Poland with his Troops.

II. *That the* Port *ſhall be allow'd to procure the Return of the King of* Sweden *into his Dominions, by ſuch Ways as the Grand Seignior ſhall think fit, without allowing the* Muſcovites *to fix the Time of his Departure, or his Way; but in caſe that Prince marches through the Territories of* Muſcovy, *the* Turkiſh *Troops that ſhall attend him, ſhall commit no manner of Hoſtilities or Ravages.*

III. *That the* Czar *ſhall remain in Poſſeſſion of* Kiou *and* Ukrania, *with their ancient Limits, but ſhall renounce all his Pretentions to the Country of*

the

the Coſſacks *on this ſide of the* Boriſthenes, *that are not in the Dependance of* Kioſ, *and on a certain Iſland in that River, and that good Orders ſhall be given on both ſides, to prevent the Excurſions of the* Coſſacks *and* Tartars.

IV. *That for the Future, no Fortreſs ſhall be erected between the two Frontier Places of* Aſoph *and* Ciraski *by either of the Parties, and that the Forts erected by the* Muſcovites *in the Teritories of* Aſoph *ſhall be demoliſh'd in four Months, but that the Grand Signior ſhall be at Liberty to rebuild the Fort of* Cinoli, *over-againſt* Aſoph.

V. *That whereas by the Articles of the Treaty concluded at* Moldavia, *it was ſtipulated that* Aſoph *ſhould be reſtor'd in the ſame Condition that it was in when the* Muſcovites *took it, and that it appears that there were then in that Place* 60 *Pieces of Braſs Cannon, which have not been found therein when it was reſtor'd; his* Czariſh *Majeſty ſhall be obliged to reſtore the ſaid Artillery, or pay the Value thereof, and the* Turks *ſhall deliver to the* Muſcovites *the Iron Cannon that they have left in that Place.*

VI. *That none of the Parties ſhall be allow'd to erect any Forts at* Comenski *and* Savar, *which by Virtue of the Treaty of* Moldavia *have been demoliſh'd.*

VII. *That the Peace ſhall be continu'd* 25 *Years, to reckon from the ſigning of the Treaty, but may be prolonged before that time is elapſed; and laſtly, that after the Ratification of the preſent Treaty, the* Czar *ſhall be allow'd to ſend an Ambaſſador to Conſtantinople to receive the ſame,* &c.

By the beginning of *May*, the *Ruſſian* Troops arriv'd in *Pomerania*, commanded by Prince *Menzikoff*, and encamped at *Schweds*, having there

a

a Bridge over the *Oder*, being the ſame Place where *Guſtavus Adolphus*, the Great King of *Sweden* encamp'd, when he reduced that Country; but notwithſtanding all this, the *Danes* did not appear, and in a Word, the *Czar* was fain to remit them 90000 Crowns before they could ſtir out of their Quarters: With this Relief, the King of *Denmark* came to his Army at *Itzhoe* the 10th of *July*, and when all the World expected him to march into *Pomerania* to joyn the *Ruſſian* and *Saxon* Armies, his *Daniſh* Majeſty turn'd his Arms another Way, and paſſing the *Elb*, enter'd the Dutchy of *Bremen*, then under the Government of Count *Welling* for the King of *Sweden*; and not to enter into that Part of the Story too far, he reduced it entirely, and with it the Country of *Verden*, and afterwards Morgag'd them to the King of *Great Britain*; which will give Occaſion of farther Hiſtory to relate the Affair which attended that Mortgage.

THIS Attempt was a Diverſion, however, to the Arms of *Sweden*; as was alſo the Attack of *Wiſmar*, which the King of *Denmark* and the *Hanover* Troops, for the King of *Great Britain*, as Elector of *Hanover*, had declared againſt *Sweden* alſo, held block'd up a great while.

BUT to return to the Affair of *Pomerania*, his *Czariſh* Majeſty arrived in that Country the 26th of *July*, and it was time to enter upon Action.

I cannot omit, in this Place, (tho' it be a Tranſition at once, from the *Baltick* Shore, to the *Black Sea*) to mention that the good Underſtanding at this time ſettled between the *Turks* and the *Czar* of *Muſcovy*, was ſo firm and promiſing,

miſing, notwithſtanding all the Mannagement of the King of *Sweden*, and his Friends, that nothing could be better eſtabliſh'd; and the World wat ſurpriz'd to hear that the *Muſcovite* Reſident at *Conſtantinople*, had made a formal Rejoycing, or Feſtival in that City, on the Birth Day of his Maſter, the *Czar*; this being what was not uſually allow'd by the *Turks* to any Princes Ambaſſadors, was done the more publickly now, that the Princes of *Europe* might ſee that the great Boaſt that the *Swedes* had made of the powerful Intereſt that the King of *Sweden* had at *Conſtantinople*, was really nothing in Subſtance, and that the *Turks* ſhew'd all poſible Honours to the *Ruſſian* Ambaſſador: The Particulars of this Rejoycing are very remarkable, as follows.

'The 10th of this Month being the Feſtival of 'St. *Peter* and St. *Paul*, the firſt being the Name 'of the *Czar*, the Baron de *Schapfirof*, Vice-'Chancellor of his *Czariſh* Majeſty, his Privy-'Councellor, and his Ambaſſador Extraordina-'ry and Plenipotentiary at the Port, gave a great 'Entertainment upon that Account, and alſo for 'celebrating the Anniverſary of the famous Bat-'tle of *Pultowa*, tho' he had already obſerv'd 'the ſame two Days before with Illuminations in 'his Houſe. All the Ambaſſadors reſiding here 'were invited to the ſame, as were alſo the 'Reſident of the Emperor, the Vicar of the 'Pope, the Secretaries of Ambaſſadors, and 'the chief Merchants of all Nations, ſo that 'there was an Appearance of above 100 Per-'ſons, for whom there were ſeven Tables, 'and they were treated with an extraordinary 'Magnificence. During the Entertainment

'there,

'there was a fine Consort of Vocal and Instru-
'mental Musick and after the same, the Com-
'pany was entertained with a Comedy in the
'*Muscovite* and *Italian* Tongues. The Secretary
'Interpreter of the Ambassy, pronounced after-
'wards the Panegyrick of his *Czarish* Majesty
'in *Latin*, and another Gentleman recited some
'Epigrams on the subject of the Feast, to the
'Satisfaction of the Company, *&c.* The Col-
'lonels of the Jannizaries of the Guard, had
'caused the Doors of the House of the Ambassa-
'dors of that Prince to be adorn'd with Festoons
'of Palm, Lawrel, *&c.* which Civility the
'Vice Chancellor afore-said, acknowledg'd with
'a Present. The Windows of the House were
'illuminated at Night with Emblems of the He-
'roick Actions of the *Czar*; and there was a
'Fire-work representing the Arms of that
'Prince, his Name in Cyphers, and the Town of
'*Pultowa* with proper Descriptions. On the
'side of that Fire there were two Decorations,
'each representing two Hearts united, and upon
'one there were this Inscription, *Long live the*
'*Emperor* Perer I. *and the Empress* Catherina;
'and on the other, *Long live the Prince Imperial*
'Alexis, *and the Princess Imperial* Charlote. These
'two Decorations continued illuminated all
'Night, and the two Nights following, and the
'Feast concluded with a Ball, which lasted till the
'next Morning, and during the same there was
'a magnificent Collation, *&c.* This Fire-work
'and the Illuminations were expresly noted in
'the Consent given by the Port to that Enter-
'tainment, which has been seldom allow'd to any
'Foreigm Ministers, and especially in *Constanti-*
'*nople*, which sheweth the Value the *Turks* put

upon

upon the Friendſhip of his *Czariſh* Majeſty, and their Eſteem for his Miniſters.

BUT to return to *Pomerania*, where the *Czar* and King *Auguſtus*, now commanded in Perſon, as above, the King of *Denmark* being employ'd in the Reduction of *Bremen*, as before; yet the *Daniſh* Fleet put to Sea in aid of the *Pomeranian* War, and the *Swedes* having been at Sea, to bring over Troops of Reinforcement to the *Iſle of Rugen*, the *Danes* attack'd them in their Return, and had a ſharp Fight, but the *Swedes* having done their Buſineſs, made a rnnning Fight over to their own Coaſt, and the *Danes* could do no more but fall in among the Tranſports, of which they deſtroy'd near 20: However, the *Danes*, to keep their Reputation a-float; which, as to their War with the *Swedes* ſhrunk very low, the *Swedes* always beating them, cry'd this up for a great Victory: But this has not been his *Czariſh* Majeſty's Method to boaſt of Victory, when he had won nothing from his Enemy; the Truth is, if any had the Victory, it was the *Swedes*, for they did their Buſineſs, *viz.* landed their Troops; and their Buſineſs then, was not to Fight, but to go back to fetch more, which they alſo did, notwithſtanding all the *Danes* could do.

HAD the *Danes* met them at Sea, with their Army on Board, and fought them then, had they either ſunk or taken any of the Men of War, or hinder'd their going to land the Troops, and made them go back again with them to their own Coaſt, there had been a Victory indeed; but as it was, the boaſting of a Victory, becauſe the *Swedes* declin'd a cloſe Engagement, and the

the taking a few empty Tranſports was rather a Gaſconade than any thing elſe.

The Troops which the *Swedes* landed amounted to 2000 Horſe, and 7000 Foot, which added to the Forces they had before, made the Attempt upon that Iſland appear impracticable, and ſo the *Czar* and the King of *Poland* lay'd the Thought of it aſide, for that Year alſo, while the *Iſle of Rugen* is not reduc'd.

His *Czariſh* Majeſty therefore, finding nothing conſiderable could be done more, and his Affairs calling his Majeſty to *Petersburgh*, he left the Army the 7th of *October*, under the Command of Prince *Galiczin*; but with Direction to obey in all things, the Orders of King *Auguſtus*.

The Army was then ſo poſted, as to hold both *Stralſond* and *Wiſmar* block'd up all the *Winter*; which contributed greatly to the further Diſtreſſing the Enemy, who, notwithſtanding their Reinforcement, could do nothing conſiderable, till they had yet another Embarkation of Troops from *Sweden*, as we ſhall ſee preſently.

But now we muſt come in its Turn to do Juſtice to our Enemies, and to ſhew what Meaſures they took, in the Proſecution of this War: The *Czar* who was the Life of the War, being gone, and the Armies being left, as I have ſaid, to the Order of King *Auguſtus*, the *Swedes*, who were now grown ſtrong by the arriving of the Succours above named, tranſported their Troops over from the *Iſle of Rugen* to *Stralſond*, and Count *Steenbock* who commanded them, form'd an Army of 18000 Men in the Plain, under the Cannon of *Stralſond*, and began to threaten to act

act offenſively; nor were the *Ruſſian* and *Saxon* Army in the beſt Condition to receive them, having been much diminiſh'd and fateigu'd by the Service, and much want of Proviſions beſides. If Count *Steinbock* had reſolv'd to attack them, ſo near Hand, he could have drawn eight or nine thouſand Men more out of the Garriſons of *Stralſond*, *Gripſwald*, and other Places, which he could not do when he ſhould march farther from their own Territories.

THINGS ſtanding thus, King *Auguſtus* and the *Ruſſian* General Count *Galiczen*, order'd their Poſts to be intrenched, and the ſeveral Paſſes by which the *Swedes* might march out, to be fortify'd with very good Lines and Redoubts, and poſted their Troops in them to oppoſe their Enemies.

As the *Swedes* are allow'd to be a daring and Enterprizing People, ſo their Generals are univerſally Men that underſtand their Buſineſs, and want no military Experience: Count *Steinbock* being now once more at the Head of an Army, and *Pomerania* being no Place to ſubſiſt them in at this Time, when it was ſo exhauſted by other Troops, that it ſtarv'd its own Inhabitants, he reſolv'd to puſh out, and try the Fortune of the Field; accordingly he began his March the 3d of *November*, and having forc'd the Paſs of *Damgarten*, which the frighted *Saxons* quited, and let him paſs by, much too cheap; he entered the County of *Mecklemburgh* with his whole Army, the 6th, and marched directly towards *Wiſmar*.

IMMEDIATELY upon this News, away run the *Danes*, who had rooſted all the *Summer* at *Roſtock*, and other *Daniſh* Regiments likewiſe, who carry'd

ry'd on the Blockade of *Wiſmar* marched off with the greateſt Precipitation, not to hazard their Rear, which the Garriſon preſs'd upon, but were diſappointed.

THE Dominions of *Denmark* upon the Continent were allarm'd at this March, and the King of *Denmark*, whoſe Troops lay about *Hamburgh*, from which City they had ,drawn about 260000 Rix Dollars, began to gather togther, and to advance for fear of being cut off from joyning their *Allies* the *Ruſſians*, without whom, they were not able, as will appear preſently, to look their Enemies in the Face.

THE King of *Denmark* haſten'd likewiſe to his Army, he left *Gottorp* the 19th, and having joyn'd General *Schoult* and all his Troops, advanc'd to meet the *Swedes*, who were as forward as his Majeſty to come to Action: This Excurſion of the *Swedes*, as it relates to the War, in which his *Czariſh* Majeſty was ſo much concern'd, cannot be omitted here, or the Acton which follow'd it, becauſe it would render the Hiſtory of his *Czariſh* Majeſty uncompleat, the *Czar* having acted in it preſently afterwards in Perſon, with all his Army; the Story of the Excurſion of the *Swedes* is abſolutely Neceſſary, that it may appear how ill the *Danes* and *Saxons* did their Part; for certainly, if they had done their Duty at the Paſs of *Damgarten*, which they pretended to Guard, and which, as will appear by the Account following, a few Troops well diſpoſed, might have defended, the *Swedes* could never have broke through, and then all the Loſs and Diſgrace, and all the Miſeries that at the King of *Denmark*'s Dominions ſuffer'd afrerwards had been prevented; whereas it was manifeſt, by what fol-

follow'd, and if the *Czar* had not afterwards come to his Aſſiſtance, his *Daniſh* Majeſty had been utterly ruin'd at that Time.

The Account of this Action, as publiſh'd by the *Swedes*, is as follows, *viz.*

From the Head Quarters of Count Steinbock *at* Ribitz, November 5. 1712.

'ALL the Troops that were in the *Iſland* 'of *Rugen*, having been brought over to 'Straelſund the 30th paſt, in the Evening, with 'their Baggage, Count *Steinboch*, Commander 'in Chief of the *Swediſh* Army, took his Leave 'the next Day of the Garriſon and Burghers of 'Straelſund, who were drawn up in Arms, to 'whom he made a pathetick Speech, wherein he 'exorted them to continue Faithful to their So-'vereign and Country, and be Vigilant in their 'ſeveral Stations for the Preſervation of that 'Place. The ſame Night he gave Orders to the 'Generals of the Army, and the next Day the 'Troops began to move, it being given out, that 'they were to attack the Lines of the Enemy 'before *Straelſund*. The general Diſpoſition of 'their March was as follows; Lieutenant Gene-'ral *Ducker*, who commanded the Van-Guard, 'conſiſting of the Cavalry of the Dutchy of 'Bremen, and the Dragoons of *Marderfeldt* and 'Stromfeldt, with nine Pieces of Cannon, was 'to march with all Speed towards *Damgarten*, to 'take Poſt there, and lay Bridges over that Ri-'ver, before the Enemy could draw their Troops

'together, and hinder the *Swedes* from paſſing
'the ſame; and as the Succeſs of the whole
'Enterprize depended in a great Meaſure on
'the Secrecy and Expedition of the March of
'this Body; Care had been taken for three Days
'together, that none ſhould go out of *Stràel-*
'*ſund* or the Camp, to inform the Enemy there-
'with. General *Ducker* with his Detatch-
'ments, continu'd all that Night at *Ribbartz*,
'from whence the Adjutant General *Leppenon*
'was detatch'd with 200 Men toward *Frautz-*
'*bergh* to obſerve the Motions of the Enemy
'behind their Lines, and give timely Notice
'thereof. Lieutenant General *Taube* with the
'Cavalry of the Province of *Weſtergothland*, a
'*Pomeranian* Regiment of Horſe, and one of
'Foot of Colonel *Ekeblad* encamped that Night
'at *Karnin*, having under him Major General
'*Aſhenberg*. This was the Body of Battle, and
'the Rear commanded by Count *Steinboch* him-
'ſelf, and under him by Major General *Patkul*,
'conſiſted of the reſt of the Horſe, Foot and
'Artillery. Theſe were followed by 1500
'Boors, carrying Deal Boards and other Matte-
'rials to lay Bridges. The Roads being very
'bad by Reaſon of Rainy Weather, the Rear of
'the Army could not march from Noon till the
'Evening, above one League, and encamped at
'Pyts. King *Staniſlaus* came after the Rear
'with his Retinue, The 2d, Lieutenant Gene-
'ral *Ducker* advanced to *Damgarten*, where he
'took Poſt, and marched immediately through a
'Defile to a ſmall Fort, or Redoubt, the Enemy
'had erected on the other Side near *Ribnitz*,
'which he took Sword in Hand, whereby the
'Enemy had many Men kill'd and Wounded.

'Lieutenant

'Lieutenant General *Taube* continu'd at *Karnin* till Count *Steinboch* came up with the Rear, and then they march'd together to *Langen-Hanſagen*. The following Day, being the 3d Inſtant, they march'd by Break of Day to *Damgarten*, where all the Troops joyn'd about Noon, the General taking his Quarters at *Blommonſdorf* on the River *Ribnits*, within a Quarter of a League of that Place. That River has on both ſides a long and deep Moraſs, which eſpecially on the ſide of *Mecklemburgh* was ſaid to be unpaſſable even for Cattle tho' in the hotteſt Summer; but however, Count *Steinboch* reſolved to try whether his Troops could go over it or no. In order thereunto, he commanded Boards and Planks to be joyn'd tegether, to ſerve inſtead of Bridges over ſuch Places as ſhould appear too deep to be paſs'd otherwiſe, and poſted 400 Foot with 8 Field Pieces, on the Banks of the River to cover the Men who were ſent before to take a View of the Moraſs, and to ſee which way it might be more conveniently paſs'd over. The Enemy who obſerv'd theſe Motions, poſted about 1000 Horſe, on the other ſide of the Moraſs, but were oblig'd to quit that Poſt by the extraordinary Fire, that was made from the Field Pieces aforeſaid, and retire into the Wood. The *Swedes* poſted at *Damgarten* fir'd alſo upon them, and they had above 90 Men kill'd and wounded. The General order'd the Pontons to be brought down the River, with other Materials for Bridges over the ſaid Moraſs, and at *Damgarten*, which were finiſh'd that Night. The Generals being call'd together, Count *Steinboch* gave them the following Directions for the next

Day. Lieutenant General *Ducker* was order'd to paſs over the Bridge laid at *Damgarten*, with ſix Pieces of Cannon and the Vanguard of the Army, conſiſting of the Regiments of Dragoons of *Marderfeldt* and *Stromfeldt*, the Cavalry of *Weſtergothland* and *Bremen*, and the Regiments of Foot of *Ekebladt*, *Schultz*, and *Elfborg*; while Count *Steinboch* himſelf and Lieutenant General *Taube* with the reſt of the Foot and eight Field Pieces ſhould paſs the River and Moraſs by *Blommendorf*. The reſt of the Cavalry was order'd, if poſſible, to march after them; but in caſe they found it too long and difficult, they were order'd to paſs over the Bridge of *Damgarten*, under the Command of the Majors General *Aſhenberg* and *Mereſchal*. The 400 Foot poſted on the Bank of the River aforeſaid, under the Command of Lieutenant Colonel *Slippenback* and Major *Lewenhaupt*, were order'd to march firſt of all over the Moraſs, and take Poſt on the other ſide. Theſe were to be follow'd by the Detatchment who carry'd the Planks and Bridges deſigned to be laid over the deep or unpaſſable Places of the ſaid Moraſs. Major General *Patkul* was to march next with the Regiments of *Sudermania*, *Dalecarlia*, and *Weſtergothland*. Theſe were to be follow'd by the Prince *de la Gardie*, who brought up the Rear with the Regiments of *Oſtergothland*, *Weſtmanland*, *Helſingen*, and the two Regiments of the Provinces of *Narike* and *Wermerland*. Lieutenant General *Cronſtedt* was order'd to follow the Infantry with the Artillery; but if he did not find it practicable, he was commanded to march after the Cavalry by *Damgarten*. Colonel

'lonel *Rozen* with 600 Horſe and 500 Foot was 'order'd to guard the Avenues to *Damgarten*, 'that the Enemy might not attack the Baggage 'which was ſent thither. Adjutant General *Lop-* 'penon with his 200 Horſe came the ſame Night 'from *Frautsbergh*, and reported that the Enemy 'were quiet in their Lines, and he had met only 'with a Party of *Huſſars* of whom he had kill'd 'ſix. According to the Diſpoſitions aforeſaid, 'the March begun the following Day, the Sol- 'diers carrying along with them Planks and all 'the Doors they could get from the Houſes, and 'beſides every other Man carry'd a Faſcine to fill 'ſuch Holes as they ſhould meet in their way, 'whereby not only the Infantry but even the 'Artillery paſs'd in good Order over the Moraſs, 'which as it has been ſaid before, was thought 'impaſſable even for the Cattle in the *Summer* 'Time. The General ſeeing there was no Ene- 'my to oppoſe him on the other ſide of the Mo- 'raſs, order'd the Cavalry to paſs over the 'Bridge at *Damgarten*, and the whole Army be- 'ing on the other ſide in the Country of *Mack-* 'lenburgh, was drawn up in Order of Battle, 'and made a general Salvo of their 8 Field 'Pieces and ſmall Arms for this happy Succeſs 'in their Paſſage, without the Loſs of one Man, 'and which has rendred uſeleſs the ſtrong Lines 'on which the Enemy have been employ'd about 'a Year. The Prince of *Weyſſenfeldt*, who com- 'manded 3000 Men on that ſide, retired to- 'wards *Roſtock*, but not thinking himſelf Safe 'in that Place retired farther, and Colonel *Baſ-* 'ſewitz was ſent to take Poſſeſſion thereof.

UPON the News of this Succeſs of the *Swediſh* General, the *Czar* who was then at *Dreſden*, took Poſt immediately to put himſelf at the Head of his Army in *Pomeren*, where he arrived the 25th, having before order'd a ſtrong Reinforcement of Troops to joyn them.

KING *Auguſtus* was there with his Army already, ſo that Count *Steinboch* had no leſs than 3 Monarchs at the Head of three Armies to encounter with, and was ſo ſurrounded by them, that they made no Queſtion to give a very good Account of him; and for this Reaſon it was, that the *Czar* reſented very much a Ceſſation of Arms for 15 Days, which was agreed between Count *Steinboch* and the *Allies*, and ſpoke with ſome Tokens of Diſpleaſure againſt Prince *Menzikoff* on that Account; but when his Majeſty came to the Army, that General convinc'd him, that King *Auguſtus* had agreed to it without his Participation, that he had oppoſed it, and that he would have had the *Saxons* to have joyn'd in following the *Swedes*, till they ſhould be forced to Fight all the three Armies together.

IT is true, the *Saxons* were not ready, nor the King of *Denmark*, ſo that King *Auguſtus* acted upon a juſt Neceſſity; and when he lay'd the Reaſons before the *Czar*, and convinc'd him that he had no private Treaty in Hand, either with the King of *Sweden*, or with *Staniſlaus*, who was then in the *Swediſh* Army, his *Czariſh* Majeſty was better ſatisfied, and the two Armies advanc'd to *Guſtraw*, where his *Czariſh* Majeſty had his Quarters; the *Danes* who likewiſe had not agreed to the Ceſſation, but who alone had the Benefit of it, having gain'd the Time to bring their Army together, had they made a right Uſe

of

of the Advantage, were now advanced to *Gadſbuſch*; ſo that Count *Steinboch* was, as it were, block'd up in the narrow Diſtrict of *Wiſmar*, having his Infantry quartered in the very City, and his Cavalry canton'd in the Villages round; where had the three Armies joyn'd, they muſt have fallen all into the Hands of the Allies, without Fighting, at leaſt all the Horſes, the Country not affording Forrage Sufficient to ſubſiſt them.

But Count *Steinboch* knew the Enemy he had to deal with, and gathering his Troops together in one Days time, the Truce being to end the very next Day, he put himſelf in full March towards *Gadsbusk*, even before the *Danes* had Notice of his being ſtirr'd from *Wiſmar*; as the *Saxons* and *Ruſſian* Armies were near, the King of *Poland* detached 4000 *Saxon* Horſe to reinforce the King of *Denmark* as ſoon as ever he heard that Count *Steinboch* went that Way, and the *Danes* haſten'd them in their way by many Meſſengers on the Heels of one another, and at laſt by a Signal of three Pieces of Cannon, which intimating the Extremity, cauſed the *Saxon* Cavalry to make ſuch Haſte, that when they arriv'd, being immediately to go on Action, their Horſe were ſo fateigu'd, that they were neither able to fight, or to run away, and were eaſily defeated, helping rather, to diſcourage, than reinforce the *Daniſh* Army, who they came to ſerve.

It was the 20th of *December* when the two Armies came to engage; a full Account of the Battle can never be drawn from the Perticulars which were made Publick at that time, each ſide ſetting forth their own Caſe with the Boaſts and Rhodomontadoes, uſual with thoſe Nations: But

in few Words, 'tis evident the King of *Denmark* was ſoundly Beaten; his Army being driven out of the Field; his Majeſty, very little to his Honour, retiring even before the Battle was entirely loſt; the *Swedes* took all their Cannon and Baggage, ſeveral Colours and Standards, and near 4000 Priſoners, and the ſcatter'd Remains of their Army retir'd to *Oldeſloe*, and afterwards Count *Steinboch* enter'd into *Holſtein*, and had not the *Czar* of *Muſcovy* reliev'd the King of *Denmark* by joyning his Forces with the *Danes* and *Saxons*, and perſuing the *Swedes*, the King of *Denmark* had, in all human Probability, been Ruin'd.

THUS his *Czariſh* Majeſty has been firſt, or laſt, the Deliverer of all his *Allies*, and the only Prince that has appear'd able to reduce the haughty Courage of the *Swediſh* Nation; as ſoon as his *Czariſh* Majeſty had an Account of the Battle, he joyn'd the King of *Polands* Army, and all together march'd after Count *Steinboch*, who had already paſſed the *Trave*, and was advanc'd into *Holſtein*; the Remains of the *Daniſh* Horſe which had eſcaped the Battle of *Gadsbuſch*, joyn'd them in their March, being 2700 Men, and the whole Army was now, by the Conſent of the two Kings, put under the Command of his *Czariſh* Majeſty, as Generaliſſimo.

IN the mean time, the *Swedes* went on, they paſſed the *Trave* near *Lubeck*, and Advancing towards the *Elb*, came to *Hamburgh*; here they ſent out Parties to demand heavy Contributions of all the Country, and particularly, of the City of *Hamburgh* it ſelf; and having enter'd the King of *Denmark*'s Territories, they burn'd *Altena*, a rich trading Town, within two Miles of *Hambrugh*: This they pretended was done in Repriſal

Repriſal for Towns the *Ruſſian* Army and other Confederates had deſtroy'd in *Pomerania*.

THIS barbarous Action, Count *Steinboch* lay'd to the Charge of General *Welling*, late Governor of *Bremen*; and in Juſtification, publiſh'd the following Letters about it, one whereof pretends to reproach his *Czariſh* Majeſty's Troops, in their Treatment of their Maſters Enemies, perhaps he intends *Livonia*, tho' he names it not; the other, lays the ſame Violent Method to the Charge of the *Danes*, and their Uſage of the Inhabitants *Oſſenden* in the Dutchy of *Bremen*; which perhaps was the Occaſion of this Works being order'd by Count *Welling*, as above. The Letters with the proper Introductions to them, are as follows,

'THE *Swedes* having continued for ſome Days 'about *Odeſloe* and *Segebergh*, made a Motion to-'wards *Pinenberg*, and Colonel *Baſſewitz* with '200 Horſe came to *Altena*, and requir'd the In-'habitants to pay a great Sum for Contributions. 'On *Sunday* in the Afternoon Count *Steinboch* 'came to *Hamburgh* with ſeveral Generals, and 'having had a long Conference with Count *Wel-'ling*, went to joyn his Troops poſted before '*Altena*, which had been reinforced by ſeveral 'Detatchments. 'Tis ſaid the *Swedes* demanded 'of that Place 200000 Rixdollars, whereupon, 'they offer'd 50000, declaring, that it was im-'poſſible for them to pay a greater Sum, upon 'which the Agreement was broke, and the fol-'lowing Night ſeveral Detatchments march'd 'into *Altena*, and ſet it on Fire, whereby 'tis 'computed that about 3000 Houſes were reduc'd 'to Aſhes, together with the *Popiſh* Church; but

'thoſe

'thoſe of the *Lutheran* and Reform'd were pre-
'ſerv'd, with about 70 or 80 Houſes. The
'*Swedes* burn'd alſo ſeveral large Magazines along
'the *Elbe*, whereby there are a World of People
'ruin'd. The *Dutch* Factors who foreſaw that
'Misfortune, withdrew moſt of their Effects
'from that Place, and removed them to *Ham-*
'*burgh*. The Generals *Fleming* and *Scholten*,
'who were there, ſent a Trumpeter to Count
'*Steinboch*, to complain of this Proceeding, who,
'as we heard, anſwer'd, that he would acquaint
'the World by a Manifeſto, with the Reaſons
'that have oblig'd him to carry Things to theſe
'Extremities; and in the mean time, they
'Hand about here a Copy of a Letter written
'by that General to Monſieur *Wibe*, on of the
'Privy-Counſellors to the King of *Denmark*,
'which is as follows,

SIR,

IT is with great Regret that I have found my ſelf conſtrain'd to deſtroy the Town of Altena; *Reaſons of War, and an indeſpenſable Neceſſity, have prevailed over my own Inclination, which is not to imitate the Enemies confederated againſt the King my Maſter: I can at leaſt aſſure your Excellency, that the Devaſtation of ſeveral of his Majeſty's Provinces, and the Inhumanities committed therein, will not move me but in the laſt Extremities, to retaliate the ſame on the Subjects of his* Daniſh *Majeſty; and 'tis with this ſincere Intention that I have thought fit, Sir, to recommend to you a Pre-*

caution

caution abſolutely neceſſary to be uſed with the Forces of his Czariſh *Majeſty, which is to hinder that they do not leave behind them in* Pomerania, *upon their marching out of that Country; burning Tokens and frightful Aſhes, to mark the Stay they have made there, as they have done elſewhere; of which the poor Inhabitants will never loſe the dreadful Remembrances.*

It will be eaſy for the King, your Maſter, for the good of his own Subjects, to agree about this with his Czariſh *Majeſty, or elſe it will not be in my Power to forbear uſing, tho' againſt my Will, Repriſals in the Dominions of his* Daniſh *Majeſty, and to deſtroy therein as many Towns and Villages as the* Ruſſians *ſhall have laid in Aſhes in* Pomerania *at their Departure.* I am,

Sir, *&c.*

'This is the Account Count *Steinboch* has 'given himſelf of this Affair, and a Letter 'written from his Camp, dated the 8th In'ſtant, from *Pinenberg*, gives ſome Explanation 'of thoſe Reaſons of War mention'd by that 'General. That Letter is as follows,

COunt Stienboch *having, receiv'd certain Intelligence in his Camp at* Segeberg, *that they were making great Magazines at* Altena *to bake Bread and to brew Drink for the* Muſcovites *and* Saxons, *which were expected there, his excellency thought fit to alter his March, and move that Way with his Army, to deſtroy, as the Reaſons of War requir'd, thoſe prejudicial Stores of Proviſions, which by more particu-*

lar

lar Accounts, we knew the whole Town was fill'd with; but Time, (with Reſpect to the Approach of the ſaid Troops, and the want of Carriages) not permitting to carry off the ſaid Proviſions, nor to deſtroy them otherwiſe than by ſetting them on Fire, his Excellency was oblig'd to give Order for the doing it, thereby coming even with the Danes *in ſome Meaſure, for the diſmal and cruel Burning exerciſed on the good and ancient Town of* Staden. *His Excellency commanded however, that the Inhabitants ſhould be allow'd ſome Time to ſave their Effects, and above all, the Churches ſhould be reſpected and ſpar'd, tho' that juſt Moderation was not obſerv'd by the* Danes *in the Burning and Deſtruction of* Staden.

AFTER this Count *Steinboch* publiſh'd a brief, but bold Manifeſto on the ſame Occaſion: As follows,

COunt Magnus Steinboch, *Counſellor of State and War, and Commander in Chief of the Army of his Majeſty the King of* Sweden, *notifies and makes it known, that the Enemies of his Majeſty having preſum'd to deſtroy by Fire the Town of* Staden, *and the Dutchy of* Bremen, *belonging to the King of* Sweden, *his Majeſty has commanded him to uſe Repriſals, and burn down the Town of* Altena; *declaring further, that if the Enemies make any new Execution by Fire in the Dominions of the King his Maſter, he will make uſe of all the Severities of War in the Dutchy of* Holſtein, *and other Countries belonging to his* Daniſh *Majeſty, by Right of Repriſals, as he has done at* Altena.

BUT

BUT the Ravages of the *Swedes* grew near an End; the *Czar* mov'd a pace with his Army, joyn'd by the *Saxons*, towards the *Swedes*; the *Danes* joyn'd his Army in their March, with what Troops they had, and all together amounted to 36000 Men, which was too many for the *Swedes* to pretend to grapple with; his *Czariſh* Majeſty arrived at *Hamburgh*, the 14th of *January*, attended by Prince *Menzikoff*, and ſeveral Generals, as well of his own Troops, as of the *Dane's* and *Saxon's* Army, which coming on by ſlow Marches, the Weather, and the Ways being extreamly bad, the Soldiers ſuffer'd very much in their March.

WHILE his *Czariſh* Majeſty continued in the Neighbourhood of *Hamburgh*, he cauſed a Day of Faſting and Publick Prayers to be proclaim'd in the united Army, to ask of Heaven Succeſs upon their Undertaking, and to add Alms Deeds to their Devotion, his *Czariſh* Majeſty cauſed 1000 Rubles in Gold to be diſtributed to the poor Sufferers at *Altena*, and cauſed Propoſals, and Encouragement to be offer'd them, if any of them thought fit to go Abroad, and would ſettle in any part of his Dominions.

WHILE this was doing, Count *Fleming*, the *Saxon* General, and General *Scholten* the *Daniſh* Velt Mariſchal, wrot an expoſtulatory Letter to Count *Welling*, upon the Subject of the Burning of *Altena*, and the Reaſons alledg'd, which Letters are as Follows.

A Letter

A LETTER from Count *Welling*, Governor General of the Dutchies of *Bremen* and *Werden*, to Count *Flemming*, and Monſieur *Scholten*.

Meſſieurs.

SINCE you have done me the Honour to communicate to me the Letter you have written to Count Steinboch, *concerning the Burning of* Altena, *tho' without mentioning the Magazines that were therein; ſo I ſuppoſe you deſign'd thereby to engage me to explain my ſelf upon this Matter.*

I don't know, Meſſieurs, whether the Sight of the Deſtruction of Staden *has been more dreadful to you, than that of the Burning of* Altena; *but it is certain, that the former might have been avoided, whereas the latter was abſolutely neceſſary. The Reaſons that obliged Count* Steinboch, *tho' entirely againſt his Will, to come to ſuch Extremities, have already been made Publick. If the red hot Bullets you threw into* Stralſund *and* Wiſmar, *had had their Effect, and burnt thoſe Towns as well as our Magazines therein, the Reaſon of War would have juſtify'd you, as well as it now does Count* Steinboch.

But the many Flames that have been kindled, and the dreadful Devaſtations of ſeveral of the King my Maſter's Dominions, cannot find the ſame Juſtification, being committed without any manner of Neceſſity, by thoſe of your Allies, that you even call Chriſtians.

The Daniſh Zealand, *and* Saxony, *will always be an Evidence, that the* Swedes *never had recourſe to Flambeaux, unleſs they were forced to the ſame, by Reaſons of War; but that our Nation, always uſed*

to

to revenge themſelves upon their Enemies, by way of Arms, and of Humanity, never with Burning, and exerciſing of Cruelties.

The dreadful Ruins ſeveral of his Swediſh *Majeſty's Provinces and Towns belonging thereunto, have ſuffer'd, and the Chains of Slavery under which above a hundred Thouſand of the King of* Sweden's *Subjects, of both Sexes, who have been ſold to the Infidels, groan at this very Time, will, for the good of your Maſter's Countries, prevail upon you, to concur with Count* Steinboch *in making a more humain War.*

I have deliver'd to Colonel Meyer *the Precaution Count* Steinboch *has recommended to Monſieur* Wibe, *to be taken in this Matter; and I do not at all doubt, but you will contribute thereto. Count* Steinboch *has aſſur'd me, that for his Part, he will proceed not to any Extremity againſt the Dutchy of* Holſtein, *unleſs he be neceſſitated to it.*

Your own Wiſdom, and the Reaſon of War, will juſtify his Conduct in ſuch a Caſe.

Hamburgh, Jan. I am, *&c.*

WELLING.

A LETTER from the Generals *Flemming* and *Scholten*, to General *Welling*.

SIR,

BY the Letter which you have done us the Honour to write to us, we have ſeen the Reaſons which you alledge for the Burning of Altena.

We

We being Parties, will not take upon us to be Judges. There are enough to decide it. Mean while, you will allow us to tell you, there is no Compariſon between what has been done at Altena, *and what happen'd at* Staden. Staden *is a fortify'd Town, which reſiſted the Arms of his* Daniſh *Majeſty, and againſt which, it was allowable to uſe all the Means that are ordinarily taken to reduce a Town: But* Altena *is an open defenceleſs Place; and we believe, Sir, that a Parallel can never be made, between a Bombardment and the ſetting a Town on Fire with Torches. 'Tis as if the inevitable Slaughter in a Battle or an Aſſault, ſhould be compared with a Maſſacre of People who do not defend themſelves, nor are in a State of Defence.*

The other Reaſons for the Burning of Altena, *that have been made Publick, amount to this, that Magazines were providing, and Bread baking there; but 'tis certain, there was no Magazines in* Altena, *or if there were, they were ſo inconſiderable, that there could be no Pretence on that Account, for burning above* 2000 *Houſes, and reducing ſeveral Thouſands of People to Beggary; and this, without gaining any Advantage by it. According to this Allegation that there were Magazines, was not thought of in the Anſwer which Count* Steinboch *made to the Deputies of* Altena; *nothing was then urg'd, but the Affair of* Staden, *to which we think we have given a ſufficient Reply.*

As to the Burning Bullets fired into Stralſund *and* Wiſmar, *we refer to what we have ſaid about the Bombarding of* Staden. *This is lawful, but voluntary Burnings are abhorred.*

As to the Conduct of our Allies, we ſuppoſe you will allow a Diſtinction between Outrages committed without Order, and thoſe committed by expreſs Order.

Order. Count Steinboch *himſelf made that Diſtinction very juſtly ſome Months ago, when ſpeaking of ſome Diſorders done by the* Muſcovite *Soldiers,* he ask'd, *whether they had been order'd to commit them; and being aſſured, that not only ſuch Orders had never been given, but that the Authors of thoſe Exceſſes had been puniſh'd;* he ſaid, *he was glad to hear it, adding, that he could not treat thoſe who ſhould commit ſuch Outrages by Order, and who ſhould fall into his Hands, as Priſoners of War, but as Incendaries. What you can alledge farther of the Conduct of our* Allies, *may be eaſily juſtify'd by the Right of Reprizals. Remember only, Sir, what was practiſed on our Side, after the Battle of* Nerva. *Before that Time, had any ſuch Cruelties been acted?*

Thoſe who were Authors of the Firſt, are anſwerable for all that have been committed ſince. You know, Sir, that there is no other Foundation of the Law of Nations than Agreement and Example. After the Precedent you have newly ſet us, it will be lawful for our Maſters to retaliate others upon you, of what kind ſoever, and this by the Law of Nations.

In our Opinion the Swediſh *Moderation in* Zealand *ought not to be alledged on this Occaſion; for the King your Maſter not having landed there as an Enemy, but as a Guarantee of Peace, could not exerciſe Acts of Hoſtility there.*

As for Saxony, *your Intereſt had a greater Share in your Humanity, than Humanity it ſelf. With the 23 Millions which you drew from* Saxony, *it might have been reſtored to its former State, had it been all laid in Aſhes. And how otherwiſe could you have cloathed, recruited and remounted your Army.*

Be this as it will, thoſe two Examples prove however, that Burnings and Acts of Inhumanity, are more authoriz'd by the Miniſters and Generals of the King of Sweden, *than by that Prince himſelf.*

We have reply'd to the Example which you alledged of the Ruin of ſeveral of your Provinces; but we cannot apprehend what you mean by adviſing us to concur with Count Steinboch *in carrying on the War humanly, after the Example of Inhumanity and Cruelty, which he has newly given us: A Cruelty, that has coſt the Lives of ſo many poor Innocents, of Women in Childbed and in Labour, of Sick who were not in a Condition to get out of Bed. How many Children and Aged ſnatch'd from the Violence of the Flames, were unable to endure the Extremity of the Cold, and periſhed miſerably in the Snow?*

How many unhappy Wretches of both Sexes and all Ages, expoſed to the Rigour of the Seaſon, periſh daily of Cold and Hunger? Are theſe the Inſtances of Humanity which Count Steinboch *would have us Imitate? Can we make ſuch a Propoſition to our Maſters?*

We have ſeen the Letter which Count Steinboch *wrote to Monſieur* Wibe, *we will ſuſpend our Judgment on it; but know that Threats work nothing upon the Perſons who are juſt, and of generous Minds, ſuch as are in the Court of the King of* Denmark. *We conclude, by ſaying, that you can never juſtify the Burning of* Altena; *but it will Juſtify all that we may attempt for taking true Vengeance, if our Auguſt Maſters, agreeably to their uſual Humanity and Moderation, do not think fit to defer the imitating ſo cruel an Example, unleſs they are forced to it by new Cruelties of the like Nature: We are aſſured in the*

the mean while, that the Almighty will not let pass without Punishment, the unheard of Cruelties that have been practised at Alten.

Hamburgh, Jan. 13, 1713.

We are, *&c.*

FLEMMING.
SCHOLTEN.

AFTER all that has been said, of the Civility of the *Turks* to the *Czar*, and to his Ministers, such was the uncertainty of Things, on that Side the World, that in the midst of the Proceedings of the *Czar*, in so remote a Part of the World, his *Czarish* Majesty was again allarm'd with the Rumour that his Ambassador at *Constantinople* was again imprisoned in the *Seven Towers*, and that the *Turks* had declared War again againſt him; and he was earnestly press'd by his Generals to leave this Petty Retail War, *(as they called it)* and advance to the Frontiers of *Tartary*, to prepare to oppose the *Turks*.

HOWEVER as his Majesty had better Intelligence than his Enemies in the *Ottoman Port*, he was always appriz'd of things as they really were reported to be, and knew very well how far they were True, and how far not. The *Turks* were for awhile much influenc'd by the Han of *Tartary*, and the Creatures of the King of *Sweden*; 'twas a little hard that the King of *Sweden* should be able to bribe the *Turks* with their own Money, and distribute the same Sums, which the *Port* gave him for his Support, to the great Officers of the same *Port*, to engage them to break Faith with the *Czar* of *Muscovy*, after he had perform'd all that was required by their last Treaty; had re-

ſtor'd *Aſoph*, had diſmantled *Kaſſirkameen*, and the other Places, and fully withdrawn his Troops out of *Poland*.

BUT the *Czar* was too many for them here too, for his Miniſters at the *Port* having Power given them to enter upon a new Treaty, and the *Czar* cauſing about 70000 Men to advance to the Frontiers of *Moldavia*, to let the *Turks* ſee he was not unprovided; the *Ruſſian* Miniſters found it much eaſier to reconcile Matters with the *Port*, than was imagin'd, and the old League was not only renew'd for 30 Years, but other Terms were gain'd, which made as much for his *Czariſh* Majeſty's Intereſt as could be deſir'd.

ALL this while his *Czariſh* Majeſty was at the Head of the Confederate Army in *Holſtein*, puſhing the *Swediſh* Army under Count *Steinboch*; his Majeſty had, indeed, determin'd to leave the Army, and return to his own Dominions, and the rather, becauſe of the Miſchief which he knew was breeding at *Conſtantinople*, by the Intreagues of the King of *Sweden*; but knowing the Miſunderſtandings in the Confederate Army would be ſuch, about the Command, that there would be no Agreement; and it being hard, that the Army, two Thirds of which were at the ſame Time his *Czariſh* Majeſty's own Forces, ſhould be Commanded by any but his own Generals; upon this Conſideration, he reſolv'd to manage the other Part by Negotiation, and to Command the Army in *Holſtein* himſelf.

THE Confederates were, as things then ſtood, much too ſtrong for Count *Steinboch*; their Force was above 36000 Men, the *Swedes* not above 14000 at beſt, but led by an old Fox that knew his Advantages, and how to lay hold of them, to a Tittle,

a Tittle; that knew how to fight when he had a fair Field, and how to avoid it, when he was out Number'd and not in Condition.

This, Count *Steinboch* ſeeing the Confederates advance, and that they were too powerful for him, march'd from *Altena*, North into *Upper Holſtein*, and advancing along the *Eyderſtorm*, kept the Confederates at Bay a great while, about *Fredrickſtand*, near which Place they paſs'd the ſaid River *Eyder*, and advanc'd to *Oerfield*, and to *Huſum*: Here they laid the Country under Contribution, and raiſed a very great Sum in Money, and Proviſions: Here Count *Steinboch* poſted himſelf to ſo much Advantage among the Rivers and Dikes, that it was not eaſy to attack him.

But his *Czariſh* Majeſty reſolv'd to make ſhort Work with him, and in a Word, to attack him, where-ever he could find him, coſt what it would; for as I noted above, the *Czar* at this Time, was preſs'd by his own Affairs, not knowing whether his Affairs with the *Turks* would End in Peace or War; Orders were therefore given to make Diſpoſitions for the Attack, while the *Swedes* on the other Hand, fortify'd their Camp, and made an Appearance of Reſiſtance, threatening to give the *Ruſſians* a very warm Reception. But Count *Steinboch*, after repulſing our Men at the Attack of one of his Poſts, where the *Ruſſians* and *Danes* had ſome Loſs, thought fit not to ſtand the Shock of a general Attack by the whole Army; and accordingly, quitted the advantagious Camp, and retired to another, and thus retiring from one Poſt to another, and the Confederates ſtill following him Cloſe, and puſh-

ing him from Place to Place, he begun to be brought to Extremity.

The beſt Account of theſe ſeveral Motions leave them very uncertain, and are ſcarce worth our collecting; the ſhort of the Matter is, that the Confederates attack'd the *Swedes* at *Hollingſtede*, but were repulſed with the Loſs of 300 Men; and the next Night the *Swedes* retired, and poſted their whole Army in a very ſtrong Situation, between *Fredrickſtadt*, and the Fortreſs of *Toningen*. This laſt was a very ſtrong Place, belonging to the Duke of *Holſtein*, and Garriſon'd by his Troops, who being in *Sweden*, a Youth, and under Age, the Adminiſtration of his Eſtates, was left to the Care of his Uncle, the Prince and Biſhop of *Eutin*.

The Governor of this Fortreſs made Show of keeping an exact Neutrality; and once, when Count *Steinboch* ſent a Letter to him, ſent it unopen'd, refuſing to receive any Letter or Meſſages on either Side; and while Matters ſtood thus, Count *Steinboch* ſtood but in very ill Terms, being ſtreighten'd for Room, and alſo for Proviſions, and almoſt ſurrounded by the Confederate Armies, who were ſo much ſuperior.

In this Poſture the Confedorates preſs'd him very hard; and tho' he avoided Fighting, and retir'd from one Poſt to another, yet it was apparent he muſt at laſt Fight to his inevitable Deſtruction, or ſurrender to his Enemies.

He defended himſelf, however, in this Manner a long time, *viz.* from the Beginning of *January*, till the 14th of *February*, 1712-13. In vain preſſing the Governor of *Tonnighen* to give him a Retreat into the Fortreſs, and being puſh'd

puſh'd to Extremity by the Confederates, he came with the whole *Swediſh* Army and encamped at *Gardenghen*, a Village, within half a League of *Toningen*.

THE Confederates follow'd him Cloſe, and here the Governor of *Toningmen*, whether by Order of the Prince Adminiſtrator of *Holſtein*, or by Stratagem of Count *Steinboch*, is very little known to this Day: But the Governor, *I ſay*, let the *Swediſh* General, and with him, his whole Army, into the Place, to the great Relief and Encouragement of the *Swedes*, who were, indeed, brought to the Point of being ruin'd.

THIS was a Blow to the Confederates who had been extreamly fateigu'd with the Service they had been upon, having kept in the Field all the *Winter*: The Matter was now come to a Point, there was now no way left now to force them, and nothing but a very cloſe Blockade, could Effect their Reduction, and this the Army agreed on.

THE *Czar* finding now that the Thing would be drawn out in Length, left the Army and went to *Hamburgh*; and from thence, to *Hanover*. His *Czariſh* Majeſty left the Army the 15th of *February*, having firſt had a long Conference with the Kings of *Denmark*, where the Command of the Army was ſettled, and the Rank of the Troops, and every thing needful to carry on the Deſign; for having Count *Steinboch* and the *Swedes* in ſo cloſe a Place, it was certain, they ought not to let them go off, coſt what it would.

THE *Czar* having now left the Army, had ſeveral private Affairs in Hand, as particularly, at *Wolfembotle*, where he made ſome Stay, in order to reconcile things between the Princeſs of *Ruſſia*, his

his Daughter-in-Law, and her Husband, the *Czarowitz*, or Hereditary Prince, who, it ſeems had had ſome Difference with the Princeſs, his Spouſe, of which we ſhall hear farther.

FROM *Wolfenbuttel*, the *Czar* went to *Magdeburg*, and thence to *Schoonhoſen* near *Berlin*, where he had an Interview with the King of *Pruſſia*, and where his *Pruſſian* Majeſty entertain'd him with the utmoſt Magnificence. This was the 10th of *March*, the next Day, the two illuſtrious Monarchs dined together; and the *Czar* having abundance of Reaſon to be very well ſatisfy'd with his Reception, parted the ſame Afternoon for *Dantzick* in his way to *Livonia*.

WHAT was made Publick at this Time of his *Czariſh* Majeſty's Journey, ſeems to have Truth in it, being writen from *Dantzick*, after the *Czar*'s Arrival there as follows, *viz*

THE Court of *Wolfenbuttel* is highly ſatisfy'd with the *Czar* of *Muſcovy*, and the Princeſs, Wife to the Hereditary Prince, ſet out the 16th of *March* under the Diſcharge of the Cannon for *Petersburg* by the way of *Berlin* and *Dantzick*. The *Czar* preſented her with a great Sum of Money for the Charges of her Journey; and at the ſame time aſſur'd her, that ſhe ſhould be uſed with ſo much Reſpect in *Muſcovy*, that he did not queſtion but ſhe would eaſily forget *Germany*. That Prince made conſiderable Preſents to the Mother of that Princeſs, and amongſt other Things, preſented her with his Picture ſet with Diamonds, of a conſiderable Value. The Court of *Muſcovy* is to continue at *Petersburg* for ſome Time, and ſome Grandees of the Retinue of the *Czar*, report, that that Prince intends to make that Place the Seat of his Empire, and 20000 Perſons

Perſons are remov'd thither from *Moſcow*. His *Czariſh* Majeſty deſigns to have at Sea this *Summer* a Squadron of his own Ships, and beſides thoſe that have been built in his own Harbours, he has bought ſeveral Frigats at *Dunkirk*, and in *Holland*, which are to be man'd and fitted out at *Copenhagen*, to act in Conjunction with the *Daniſh* Fleet under the Command of Vice Admiral *Cruitz*. Thus far this Account.

WHILE theſe things were doing, the *Czar*'s Troops kept their Footing in *Pomerania*, and a great Part of the Town of *Wolgaſt* refuſing to pay their Contributions, was burnt by the *Ruſſian* General's Order. But the Attack of *Stralſund* or *Stetin*, was not thought proper to be undertaken 'till the *Swedes* in *Holſtein* were entirely reduc'd, which were yet a Work of Difficulty.

THIS Year his *Czariſh* Majeſty's Queen, or rather Empreſs, tho' they call'd her in *Muſcovy* by neither of thoſe Stiles, but that of *Czarina*, was deliver'd of a Daughter, or Princeſs; this happen'd very much to his *Czariſh* Majeſty's Satisfaction, juſt after his Arrival at *Petersburgh*. This Princeſs was baptized a few Days after, according to the Rites of the *Greek* Church, and named, *Maria Petra Witza*.

ALL this while the Preparations againſt the *Turks* went on as before, the *Ruſſian* Court not yet knowing what the unſettled Diſpoſitions of the *Ottoman* Court might iſſue in; and his *Czariſh* Majeſty, that his Enemies might not flatter themſelves with Hopes of taking him at the ſame Advantage they did before, *viz.* to be ſurrounded with their *Tartars*, to cut off his Proviſions, or to be betray'd by the *Moldavians*, who had undertaken

taken to ſupply the Army, *I ſay*, to take from his Enemies all Expectations of that kind; his Majeſty cauſed three large Forts to be erected upon the Banks of the *Dnieſter*, and two Bridges of Communication to be laid over the River; and here he laid up, and reſolv'd to lay up Stores of Corn, and Forrage, with Meal, and an infinite Quantity of other Proviſions, ſufficient for his whole Army; reſolving alſo, if he advanc'd into *Moldavia*, to build two ſtrong Forts; one at an important Paſs, in the Way to the *Pruth*; and another, on the Bank of the *Pruth*; to ſecure his Convoys and Proviſions from the *Tartars*: In this Poſture the *Turks* found Things when they held their great *Divan*, or Council, to conclude, whether they ſhould break with the *Ruſſians*, or, no: Their ſeeing the *Czar*, in ſuch a formidable Poſture, contributed not a little to cool their Warmth for a War, and to adhere to the wiſer Councils of Peace, as we ſhall hear preſently.

But to come back to *Holſtein*, where the War was now near a Cloſe, the *Swediſh* Army being at length forc'd by the Confederates to quit their Intrenchments and Faſtneſſes they had made, and retire into *Tonninghen*, where they were reduced to Extremity for want of Proviſions, and the *Danes* and *Ruſſians* reſolving to attack them in Form, and force them out of that Fortreſs Sword in Hand, General Count *Steinboch* was forced to Capitulate; ſeveral Treaties and Offers had been made on one Side and other, which came to nothing: But on the 16th of *May*, the whole Matter was agreed on, and an End put to that War. The Terms of this Capitulation, as it was call'd, was as follows, *viz.*

I. THAT

I. *THAT the whole* Swediſh *Army under Count* Steinbock, *in the Territory of* Eyderſtadt, *and in* Tonningen, *ſhall ſurrender with their Commanders in Chief, Generals, Officers, Volunteers, and private Soldiers, to the King of* Denmark: *That all the General and chief Officers, together with the Volunteers, ſhall keep all their Arms, Baggage, Writings, Field Cheſt, and every thing thereto belonging, without being plunder'd. The Subaltern Officers and Soldiers ſhall keep only their Swords and Cloaths; the Cannon, Fire Arms, as alſo the Horſes of the Troopers, Dragoons and Artillery, and what more belongs to the Military Service, none of which ſhall be ſpoil'd or made away with, ſhall be left behind, and after the March out of* Tonningen *be given up at* Heyerſworth, *with all the Colours, Standards, and Drums. The March from* Tonningen *ſhall be within three Days after the ſigning of the Capitulation, and ſhall be compleated in eight: The Rout for marching, and the Quarters, ſhall be ſettled by the* Daniſh *Commiſſaries of War.*

II. *The Tranſporting the* Swediſh *Troops, when they ſhall be exchang'd or ranſom'd, ſhall be to no other Parts than to* Sweden, *at their own Charge: They themſelves ſhall provide the Veſſels for that Purpoſe, the King of* Denmark *ſhall furniſh Paſports to thoſe Veſſels; and they may make Uſe of* Daniſh *and* Holſtein *Veſſels if they can be had voluntarily for Hire.*

III. *The* Swediſh *National Troops ſhall no tbe ſeparated from the* Germans, *but be tranſported to* Sweden *together.*

IV. *The Tranſportation ſhall be immediately after the exchanging or ranſoming.*

V. *The*

V. *The* Swedes *ſhall on their reſting Day in their March have free Lodging, but buy their Proviſions themſelves.*

VI. *The* Danes *or their* Allies, *who have been made Priſoners, and have ſince taken Service among the* Swedes, *as alſo the Deſerters, ſhall be ſtopt; but if the voluntarily return to their former Regiments, they ſhall be pardon'd.*

VII. *Of the* Swediſh *Troops, none ſhall be forc'd into and detain'd in Service, except Diſerters.*

VIII. *The Baggage of the Generals, chief Officers and Volunteers, mention'd in the firſt Article, ſhall be tranſported to* Sweden, *or elſewhere, unſearch'd and free.*

IX. *The March out ſhall be by Brigades, which ſhall be conducted by Commiſſaries, and be furniſh'd with Proviſions, the* Swedes *paying for it.*

X. *The Troops ſhall march three Days, and reſt the forth; and Waggons ſhall be provided for thoſe who ſhall fall ſick on the Way.*

XI. *The Sick now in Tonningen, ſhall be removed into the* Eyderſtad, *till they are recover'd, at their own Expence.*

XII. *The Mounting and Cloaths, which lie at* Lubeck *and* Hamburgh *for the* Swedes, *and are paid for, ſhall be carry'd free to* Sweden *with Paſports.*

XIII. *All* Swediſh *Officers who are Priſoners in* Denmark, Holſtein, Hamburgh, *or elſewhere, ſhall after the Cartel is ſatisfy'd, be permitted to repair to their reſpective Regiments.*

XIV. *The* Swediſh *Officers, who on Account of Sickneſs or Wounds have been left at* Lubeck, Hamburgh, *or* Wiſmar, *ſhall be tranſported free with Paſſports where ever they pleaſe.*

XV. *So ſhall their Baggage, and other Things,*

XVI.

XVI. *For the Convoy of the* Swediſh *Troops to* Sweden, *two or three Frigots ſhall be granted; the Tranſportation ſhall be to* Carelſcroon, Carelſhaven, Cimberſhaven, *or* Yſtedt; *and if in the Paſſage any Ships be by ſtreſs of Weather driven to the* Daniſh *Coaſt, they ſhall not be ſeized again and detaind.*

XVII. *On the Part of the* Danes *a Phyſician and Surgeon ſhall go into* Tonningen, *to take Information of the Sick; as alſo ſome Commiſſaries, to take a Liſt of the Horſes and other Things.*

XVIII. *The* Swedes *oblige themſelves to ſet at Liberty, purſuant to the Cartel, the Priſoners taken from the* Northern Allies, *and kept in the* Swediſh *Provinces in* Germany; *and Count* Steinboch *promiſes to uſe his beſt Endeavours that the Priſoners kept in* Sweden *may be diſcharg'd likewiſe.*

XIX. *The King of* Denmark *promiſes, that he will not Bombard* Tonningen *this Year, and the Trenches and Batteries which the* Danes *have made before the Place, ſhall be levelled by the* Swedes *on their marching out.*

XX. *The* Swedes *ſhall be allow'd to deſire the Guarnty of other Potentates of the preſent Capitulation Granted them; but their March out ſhall not on that account be delay'd.*

XXI. *The King of* Denmark *engages to perform all that is above ſtipulated, and to procure the Concurrence of the Commanders of the Armies of the* Allies.

XXII. *Two Copies of this Agreement ſhall be made, to be exchang'd againſt each other. Done and concluded at* Oldenſworth, *the 16th of* May, 1713.

Sign'd,

G. Roynbolt Patkull, Carl. Mellin,
G. C. Stramfeldt. Schwaudlodh

THIS

THIS Affair being thus concluded Prince *Menzikoff*, and the other *Ruſſian* Generals prepared to bring away the Army, and put them into Quarters of Refreſhment, after ſo ſevere a Campaign, which had laſted now from the beginning of *December*, to the middle of *May*.

ON the 4th of *June*, the *Muſcovite* Forces march'd from their Camp with their Quota of the *Swediſh* Priſoners Colours and Cannon: This Proportion, or Quota was thus ſtated, and agreed among the Generals of all Sides; the whole was divided into five equal Parts, of which the *Ruſſians* had two Fifths, the *Danes* two, and the *Saxons* one, and upon this Diviſion, Prince *Menzikoff* ſent to his Camp 47 *Swediſh* Colours, 27 Standards, 3 pair of Kettle Drums, and 6 Pieces of Cannon; with theſe the Troops decamp'd, and march'd towards the *Trave*; but the Prince *Menzikoff* then went to *Hamburgh*, where he reſolv'd to humble the City for ſome Inſolences they had ſuffer'd to be put up on the *Ruſſians*, and their Affairs; whereupon he demanded 500000 Rixdollars of them, and to give the more vigour to his demand, he mark'd out a Camp for 15000 Men in their Territories, he order'd the Troops to approach, as if he intended really to attack them.

THE juſt Pretentions the Prince had to be offended at the Conduct of the *Hamburghers* were ſent them in a Letter, and are to the Purpoſe following.

I. 'THAT ſome Years ſince they have printed in this City falſe Reports reflecting on the Honour of his *Czariſh* Majeſty, and 'that upon Complaint thereof, the Magiſtrates 'have

'have refuſed to deliver up the Authors of the 'ſame.

II. 'THAT the Sieur *Vosbein*, Director of Com-'merce for *Muſcovy*, was arreſted and kept 'Priſoner, till he was releaſed by giving Bail, 'whereby he ſuſtain'd a Damage, amounting 'to above 100000 Florins, tho' he was known 'to be under the Protection of the *Czar*.

III. 'THAT in the Year 1700, 20000 Fire Arms 'belonging to that Prince, were betrayed by 'the *Hamburghers* to the *Swedes*.

IV. 'THAT an Officer of the *Czar* coming 'through *Hamburgh*, was ſuffer'd to be plunder'd 'at one of the Gates by the Officers of the 'Cuſtom Houſe, in ſight of the Guards.

V. 'THAT the Baron *de Lewenwodle*, Adjutant 'General of the *Muſcovite* Army was lately af-'fronted in a moſt ſcandalous manner at the 'Gate of *Altena*, which the ſaid Prince *Menzi-'koff* declares, that his Maſter expects a ſuita-'ble Satisfaction.

HIS *Czariſh* Majeſty, who never Sleeps upon the Enterprizes he has in View was at this time, at *Petersburgh*, as is obſerv'd above, and had the ſatisfaction in one Day to receive an Account from *Conſtantinople*, the hopes his Miniſters there had of renewing the Peace with the *Turks*, and from *Hamburgh*, of the Surrender of Count *Steinboch*, and the whole *Swediſh* Army at *Tonningen*.

THO' this did not haſten his Preparations for his other Deſigns, which he was reſolved to have puſh'd, tho' his Enemies had not made Peace in *Turky*, or had not been reduc'd in *Holſtein*, yet it added this to it, that he was now at Leiſure

Leiſure to appear at the Head of his Army, and on Board his Fleet for an Expedition againſt the *Swedes* in *Finland*.

THIS was the Enterprize, and it was not an Undertaking of ſmall Conſequence for could he but reduce this Province, the *Swedes* would be entirely driven not only out of the Gulph of *Narva*, and the great Gulph of *Finland*, but even out of the Gulph of *Bothnia*; for if *Finland* was once taken, the Eaſtern *Bothina* would fall of Courſe.

IT was for this Reaſon, that his Majeſty prepar'd ſo conſiderable a Force for this Conqueſt. The *Czar* ſail'd the 19th from *Petersburgh*, with with a Fleet of 20 Men of War 100 Gallies, and 200 Tranſport Ships, having on Board 18000 Foot, with a Train of Artillery, as well of heavy Cannon and Mortars, as of Field peices with a great Magazine of all ſorts of Stores of War directing, his Courſe ſtrait for *Abo* in *Finland*; the Cavalry, conſiſting of 9000 Horſe, and Dragoons were order'd to march by Land to meet the Army at their coming on Shoar: The Hereditary Prince of *Ruſſia* alſo attended his Father the *Czar* in this Expedition.

HIS *Czariſh* Majeſty went on this attempt, as to a certain Conqueſt, for the Affairs of the *Swedes* were at this time at ſo low an Ebb, and the Nation of *Swedland* under ſuch diſcouragements, that they were in no Condition to repulſe him, or defend themſelves; he therefore carried with him a Manifeſto to be publiſhed at his Landing, to aſſure the Inhabitants, prevent their flying from their Habitations, and promiſing them all poſſible good Uſage, and that the Army ſhould not Plunder, but obſerve good Diſcipline, and pay punctally

for

for all the Proviſions they took of them over and above the ordinary Contributions, *&c.*

It is not to be wondered at, if this Expedition put the whole Kingdom of *Swedeland* into a terrible Conſternation, for ſeeing the great Preparation making for a Deſcent, and ſo great an Army embark'd, the Senate and Governors of *Swedeland* made no Queſtion, but that it was deſigned againſt the Capital of the Kingdom, and Conſequently was a blow at the Root in order to ſubvert the whole Government, and make an entire Conqueſt of *Sweden* it ſelf, which as things then ſtood, had been no difficult thing for his *Czariſh* Majeſty to have done: This alarm however, they had really no Cauſe, for yet the Fright, had this good Effect, that the Governor of *Sweden* drawing all the ſtrength of the Kingdom together for the Defence of the Coaſt about *Stockholm*, and the Coaſt of weſt *Gothia*, between *Stockholm* and *Um*, and between *Stockholm* and *Carelſcroon*; ſo they left the Province, and Coaſt of *Finland*, whether the true deſign of the *Czar* was pointed quite unguarded, and in a manner neglected, not that they forgot the needful Care of it, but that being anxious to preſerve the Heart, or Main of the Kingdom of *Sweden*, they had not Troops to ſpare for the ſuccour of the remoter Provinces, where the Danger indeed only lay.

This gave his *Czariſh* Majeſty an eaſie Conqueſt of *Finland*, where he Landed his Army without any conſiderable oppoſition: He Landed at *Heſingsford*, a ſmall Port Town, which the *Swediſh* Garriſon not being in Condition to defend, ſet on fire, and retired towards *Abbo*, where the *Swediſh* General *Arenfield*, who had the command of the Troops left for the Defence of that

Province, drew all his Forces together to make Head againſt the *Ruſſians*, and had advanc'd to *Borgo*, a ſtrong Paſs, which he pretended to defend; but we ſhall afterwards ſee how well they maintain'd themſelves there.

In the mean time we muſt caſt back our Eyes to Prince *Menzikoff*, and the *Ruſſian* Army in their Victorious return from the Country of *Holſtein*, their demand upon the City of *Hamburgh* has been mention'd; the Concluſion of which was, that the *Hamburghers* Paid the Prince 200000 Rixdollars and ſo the *Ruſſian* Army quitted their Diſtrict; the like Pretenſions the Prince made upon the Citizens of *Lubeck*, and got 100000 Marks of them, and then without any ſtop they advanc'd towards *Pomerania*; it was propos'd to attack *Wiſmar*, and the *Danes* provided a great Train of Artillery for that Purpoſe; but the Generals differing afterwards upon particular Difficulties in the Enterprize it was laid aſide, and the *Ruſſian* Army march'd and joyn'd the reſt of their Troops in *Pomerania*, where being together, they made up an Army of 36000 Men, with which Prince *Menzikoff* reſolv'd to attack the City of *Stetin*, the Capital of the Royal *Pomerania*.

This is a City of great ſtrength, and the Works were in very good Condition, and conſidering the gallant Defence this City made when beſieged by the King of *Pruſſia's* Father, then Elector of *Brandenburgh*, againſt whom it defended it ſelf to the laſt Extremity; I ſay, conſidering this, it was eſteem'd a deſperate Undertaking of the *Ruſſian* General, and the World expected it would be the ruin of their Army, and the diſgrace of the General; but this did not Diſcourage Prince *Menzikoff*, who about eight Days after he had Inveſted the Place,

Place, rais'd a Battery againſt the *Oder* Fort, a ſtrong Work, which guarded the Bridge, and after having Batter'd it two Nights, caus'd it to be ſtorm'd, which his Men did with ſuch Fury, that the *Swedes*, which defended it, being not able to maintain their Ground, the *Ruſſians* entered Sword in Hand, the Defendants being all cut in pieces, except a very few, who had Quarter granted them: This gave the Courage of the Citizens a ſhock, and it was eaſie to ſee they had not the Gallantry and Reſolution of their Anceſtors.

While this was doing, the *Saxons* who lay at *Damin* and at *Gripſwald*, found means with the help of ſome *Daniſh* Fregates, and ſome other Veſſels to Land upon the Iſle of *Rugen*, the *Swediſh* General *Ducker*, who commanded in the Iſland, having but very few Troops retired to a ſtrong Paſs in the way to *Stralſund*, and made a ſtand there, but kept his Retreat open to *Stralſund*, if need were, and the *Saxons* receiving ſome Reinforcements from *Gryſwaldt* advanced towards him, on which being in no Condition to maintain the Poſt, he retir'd to *Stralſund*, and left the *Saxons* Maſters of the whole Iſland; and now the King of *Denmark* repented heartily that he had not caus'd his Army to advance into *Pomeren*, for now had been the Time to have attack'd the City of *Straelſund*, in which there was not a ſufficient Garriſon, or Proviſions to have held out a Siege, nor any Relief at Hand, the Affairs of *Sweden*, being as I have ſaid in great Confuſion; the King's Siſter, ſince Queen of *Sweden*, being about that time about taking upon her the Regency of the Kingdom in the Abſence of the King.

THE *Saxons* were ſenſible of the Advantage they had, but they wanted every thing needful for ſuch a Seige as that of *Straelſund*; however they ſat down before the Place, inveſted it, and ſurpriz'd 400 Horſes, and 50 diſmounted Troopers, in the Encloſures near the City, and diſpatch'd Expreſſes to *Denmark* for Cannon and Ammunition, which came not in time, as you ſhall hear, which occaſion'd the Seige to be deferr'd till new Laurels were prepar'd by theſe things for his *Czariſh* Majeſty.

THERE happen'd at this very time a Diſcovery of the villainous Deſign againſt the Life of the King of *Poland*, which made a very great Noiſe, and oblig'd Count *Flemning* to go away immediately, and the *Saxon* Troops were order'd to draw off from the intended attack of *Straelſund*, and follow with all ſpeed the King of *Poland*, expecting a General Revolt, eſpecially on the Side of *Lithuania*; but his *Poliſh* Majeſty manag'd his Affairs with ſuch Dexterity that nothing of that kind happen'd.

THE attack of *Stetin* was alſo deferr'd for the preſent, but the City was cloſely block'd up, and the Blockade ſo well concerted, that the Navigation of the *Oder* was cut off from the *Stetiners*, which was indeed the only Means to reduce them.

THE Enemies of the *Ruſſian* Glory had now the Mortification alſo to ſee the renew'd Peace between his *Czariſh* Majeſty and the *Turks* confirm'd, by intelligence from all Parts, and particularly from the King of *Sweden's* exil'd Court near *Adrianople*, and the Articles were publiſh'd by themſelves, which being allow'd to be right and in Subſtance, are as follows.

I. THE

I. THE Muſcovite *Troops ſhall march out of all the Territories of* Poland *within two Months, and ſhall not return thither upon any Pretence whatſoever.*

II. *The Port ſhall be allow'd to procure a Paſſage to the King of* Sweden *thro'* Poland *or* Muſcovy *to his own Dominions, under a Guard, at the Charge of the Grand Senior, and the ſaid Guard ſhall return without any Hindrance or Oppoſition.*

III. *The* Coſſacks *ſhall be reſtor'd to their ancient Privileges, and* Kiow *with all the Country on the other ſide of the* Dnieper *or* Boriſtthenes, *ſhall belong to the* Czar, *and the Country on the other ſide of that River to the* Port.

IV. Aſoph *ſhall remain to the* Turks, *who are allow'd to repair the Fortifications thereof, but* Taganorock *ſhall be demoliſh'd.*

V. *The* 60 *Pieces of Cannon which the* Muſcovites *have carried away from thence, ſhall be reſtor'd, or an Equivalent given for it, after which they ſhall be at Liberty to take away the Iron Guns which they have left in* Aſoph.

VI. *According to the Peace concluded near the River* Pruth, *the* Turks *ſhall be at Liberty to rebuild ſome Places in the neighbourhood of* Caminieck, *that have been demoliſh'd.*

VII. *The River* Zamara *ſhall be the Limits of* Turkey, *and that of* Exceez *ſhall be the Frontier of* Muſcovy, *and both Parties are allow'd to build each a Fortreſs on their reſpective Frontiers; but* Aſoph, *and the Limits on that Side, ſhall remain in the ſame Condition.*

VIII. *All acts of Hoſtility ſhall ceaſe on both Sides, the* Coſſacks, *and other Countries belonging to the* Czar *are included in this Peace.*

IX. *The* Calmucks *ſhall remain to the* Czar, *and the* Crim Tartars *to the* Port, *and thoſe two Nations ſhall be hindered from committing any Hoſtilities.*

X. *The Pretentions of the* Tartars *of a yearly Tribute ſhall be referr'd to another Time.*

XI. *This Peace ſhall continue for* 25 *Years, and may be prolong'd for a longer Time.*

THE publiſhing of theſe Articles, ſtopp'd the Mouths of thoſe People who inſulted the *Czar*, with having ſubmitted for fear of a War with the *Turks*, to be Tributary to the *Tartars*, as formerly the *Czars* had been, but as his *Czariſh* Majeſty had always rejected the Articles with Scorn, ſo it was now apparent that the *Turks* had dropp'd it.

THE *Ruſſian* Army lay all this while before *Stetin*, ſometimes reſolving to beſiege itin Form, and then, at other times to blockade it; but now Prince *Menzikoff* being returned from *Berlin*, where a Treaty for Sequeſtring the Town into the Hands of the King of *Pruſſia* had been ſet on Foot, but came to nothing. *I ſay*, the Prince being Return'd, reſolv'd upon a Bombardment, which he knew would either bring the City to ſurrender, or the King of *Pruſſia* to yield to the Sequeſtration upon the Terms propos'd, which was to pay to the *Czar* of *Muſcovy* 600000 Rix Dollars for the Charges of the Siege.

ACCORDING to theſe Reſolutions, our Trenches were open'd, and advanc'd to proper places; and the Batteries raiſed with the utmoſt Expedition, the

the Artillery consisted of 58 Pieces of heavy Cannon, and 32 Mortars: On the 20th of *September*, all our Batteries of Cannon and Mortars being in a Readiness, it was resolv'd to Fire upon the Place the 28th in the Morning. All the Drums and Houtboys of the Army were order'd to meet in the Trenches about 9 of the Clock, where they play'd about an Hour, to the great Surprize of the Besieged, who appear'd on their Walls to see what the meaning of it could be; but about Ten, we began to fire from all our Batteries at once, and continu'd till the Evening; which had such an Effect, that the Inhabitants seeing about 160 of their best Houses burnt, and their Churches batter'd down, they oblig'd General *Meyrfelt* to desire a Cessation of Arms. The Sieurs *Bassewitz* and *Brukenthal* were sent into the Place, and told the Governor that the Hostilities should be discontinu'd for seven Hours only, and that he might take his Measures thereupon. Those Gentlemen reported, that the Burghers refused to take up Arms, and the Regiment of *Pomerania* expressing an Inclination to lay them down. General *Meyrfelt* offer'd to march out with his Garrison in 5 Days, provided they would give him leave to send an Express to Count *Welling*, to acquaint him there with; which was granted him, upon Condition that a *Muscovite* Officer should go along with the Person he would send to the Count aforesaid, and that his Letter to him should not be seal'd. This being agreed to, the *Swedish* Officer and the *Muscovite* set out the same Morning very early for *Hamburgh*, and we hop'd in a few Days to be Masters of this important Fortress.

But while the Garriſon of *Stetin* were thus, at the Extremity, another Medium was found out, which made all Sides eaſy, and this was the Treaty of Sequeſtration, *mention'd above.* This was abſolutely, neceſſary for Prince *Menzikoff* to yield to; or, to break with the *Danes,* and the King of *Pruſſia* alſo; for the former, proteſted abſolutely againſt *Stetin* being put into the Hands of his *Czariſh* Majeſty ſingly, and inſiſted that there ſhould be a Quota of *Daniſh* and *Saxon* Troops put into Garriſon there, as well as *Muſcovite,* which Prince *Menzikoff* rejected; thoſe Powers having not contributed one Farthing towards the Siege.

In a Word the King of *Pruſſia* ſending a very obliging Anſwer to the laſt Offers of the Prince, was in Return invited to the *Ruſſian* Camp, where his *Pruſſian* Majeſty arriv'd the 5th of *October,* attended with 3000 Dragoons and 9000 *Pruſſian* Foot, being on the other Side the *Oder,* where they encamp'd. His *Pruſſian* Majeſty was very Magnificently entertain'd by Prince *Menzikoff,* and a Royal Tent ſet up, in which his Majeſty lodg'd; the 6th at Night, having been ſhewn all the Approaches of the *Ruſſian* Army, their Batteries, and the Preparations which the Ingineers had made for ſtorming the Place, and that we were ſure of our Game.

The next Day the Sequeſtration was ſettled and agreed upon, and the Garriſon and Burghers of *Stetin,* agreeing alſo that the King of *Pruſſia* ſhould march into the City the 7th at the Head of 1600 Dragoons, his Infantry entering the Town by the *Oder* Bridge the next Day.

By this Treaty, the Poſſeſſion of *Stetin* was to remain a-like to the King of *Pruſſia,* and the Duke of *Holſtein* till the Peace, and 1600 Men of the Troops

Troops of *Holſtein* were allow'd to remain in Garriſon with 1600 *Pruſſians*; and the King of *Pruſſia* paid Prince *Menzikoff* 500000 Rix Dollars, and ſo this troubleſome Affair ended.

But I muſt obſerve here, that both the *Saxons* and *Danes* took great offence at this Treaty; for the Sequeſtration of *Stetin* was not Communicated to them, the *Saxons* alledg'd, ſeeing the Cannon furniſhed for the Siege belong'd to their King, his *Poliſh* Majeſty ought to ſhare the Money, and demanded one half of the 500000 Dollars; but Prince *Menzikoff* gave them good Words, and kept all the Money.

The King of *Denmark* took the Allarm, there being a Report ſpread that another Treaty was alſo on Foot for the Sequeſtration of *Wiſmar* and *Stralſund*, upon which the *Daniſh* Miniſter preſented a Memorial in his Maſter's Name, to the Miniſters of *Pruſſia* and *Muſcovy*, intimating that his Maſter had been very much ſurprized to hear, that an Affair of ſo much Importance as the Sequeſtration of *Stetin* had been concluded, and that Place deliver'd to the Troops of the Duke of *Holſtein*, whoſe Intereſt is inſeparable from that of *Sweden*: That his Majeſty hopes nothing ſhall be concluded without his Participation in relation to *Wiſmar*, becauſe of his particular Concerns in that Affair, and that the whole Matter, which has been hitherto kept Secret from him, ſhall be fairly communicated to his Majeſty, and in the mean time the ſaid Miniſter has thought fit to proteſt againſt whatever has been done in this Sequeſtration without his Conſent and Knowledge.

As to the Treaty for the Sequeſtration of *Wiſmar* and *Stralſund*, it came to nothing; and all things being now over, the *Muſcovite* Army, which was by

by this Time reduced by hard Service without any conſiderable Action to 22000 Men from 36000; they began their March out of the Country, the 25th of *September*, according to the Capitulation of which, that was one of the moſt particular Conditions.

WHILE this was done, the Armies of his *Czariſh* Majeſty were Victorious in *Finland*; General *Lebecker* had been recall'd from that Government, and General *Arenfield* ſent in his Room, as is noted above; but he had no better luck than the other, for being encamped at a very advantagious Poſt, with 7000 *Swedes*, regular and old Troops, and 18000 Men, new raiſed, but well arm'd, and under very good Officers, yet the *Ruſſians* attack'd them; the new raiſed Troops being undiſciplin'd, yet made very great Reſiſtance at firſt, but were charg'd with ſuch Fury, that they were at length defeated; which occaſion'd that the 7000 *Swedes* were ſurrounded, and after a very good Defence, were almoſt all cut in Pieces, or taken Priſoners, with all their Artillery, and Baggage.

AFTER this Action, the *Czar*'s Troops enter'd *Abo* without Reſiſtance, and his *Czariſh* Majeſty reſolv'd to batter down the Defences of the other two Forts, which lye adjoyning to the Sea, and which interrupted his Progreſs; and thus he became Maſter of the whole Province, with the Loſs of very few Men, and the Tranquility of the Country was reſtor'd entirely: As the *Czar* had gain'd this whole Province ſo eaſily, he was reſolv'd it ſhould not be ſo eaſily taken from him; he therefore went to Work immediately, to fortify the Towns of moſt Importance, as *Abo* and *Helſingvos*, and others, both which, he has ſince made very ſtrong.

THIS

THIS Action with the *Swediſh* Troops under General *Ahrenfield*, having been diverſly reported, and the *Ruſſians* being charged with Partiallity, in relating their own Affairs; I ſhall therefore give here a Copy of General *Ahrenfields* own Account, which tho' he makes the beſt of his Loſs to ſave his own Character; yet an impartial Reader will eaſily perceive, a Total defeat was given him, and that he has loſt not only his Army, but the whole Province; ſo that our Account will be effectually ackowledg'd by the Enemy, which is the beſt kind of Confirmation; his Letter is as follows:

THIS will inform, that we ſuſtained Yeſterday a fierce Attack from the Enemy, who, at laſt, oblig'd us to give Ground. Our Intrenchments near Palkana *were very ſtrong, and we reckon'd to be able to defend 'em a great while againſt conſiderable Forces: But, contrary to our Expectation, the Enemy found Means to land* 7000 *Men within a quarter of a League behind us. I had made ſeveral Detachments, and ſent our Parties to get Intelligence, by which I learnt, that ſeveral of the Enemy's Boats were in ſight; whereupon I made all the neceſſary Diſpoſitions to hinder a Deſcent; I alſo view'd the Place where the Enemy deſign'd to land, and caus'd ſome Horſe to be poſted there. I had beſides this, drawn two thirds of the Infantry that were within the Lines, in order likewiſe to oppoſe the Deſcent; but the Wind, which had been contrary to the Enemy's deſign all Night, turn'd favourable to them at Break of Day; beſides which, there was a thick Fog, that we could not perceive till they advanc'd upon us. Our Cavalry was*

at

at firſt oblig'd to retire, becauſe the Infantry I had drawn from our Line could not come up time enough to ſuſtain them; the Enemy before their approach, having landed the beſt part of their Troops. Nevertheleſs, we advanc'd and charg'd them with a great deal of Bravery, and by our ſuperior Fire, puſh'd them into the Water; but they being ſupported by ſuch as hourly landed on all ſides, we were obliged to give way in our Turn. We had diſpoſed things in ſuch a manner, that the Horſe was to attack the Enemy in Flank, and if they had perform'd their Duty, 'tis probable we ſhould have had Succeſs: But tho' the Foot did all that could be expected from the beſt Troops, yet we could never prevail with the Cavalry to do the like, each Plattoon giving way one after another. Things being at this Paſs, it was not difficult for the Enemy to attack our Lines; however, they loſt abundance of Men, till upon certain Conſiderations, I order'd the Troops to abandon the Intrenchments. The Loſs we have ſuſtain'd in thoſe Attacks is not ſmall. We were oblig'd to march through the moſt convenient Places to favour our Retreat, and the Infantry being obliged to take ſeveral Routs, it is not yet poſſible for me to know what Number of Men are miſſing. In mean time, I have again poſted my ſelf in this Paſſage, in order to make all poſſible Reſiſtance. The great Number of Roads and Paſſages had oblig'd me to divide my Troops in ſuch manner, that I had only with me 700 Horſe and 1100 Foot to oppoſe the Landing. This Day the Enemy advanc'd near this Place, and I am now in Expectation of their further Undertakings, &c.

THE Truth of this Matter was thus, that General *Ahrenfield* was entirely defeated, his Horſe which indeed did not do their Duty were never heard

heard of, till they were effectually ſecured at about 60 Miles retreat North, and the General with that ſmall Remnant of his Infantry, which, out of 25000 Men, did not amount to above 8000, 5133 being kill'd in the Action, and 512 taken Priſoners, quitted the whole Province, and made long Marches, tho' none purſued them into *Lapland*, whence we heard of them no more; but ſuppoſe they got Boats to carry them over the Gulph of *Bothnia* into *Swedeland*, where they were at that time in Confuſion enough.

THE Conqueſt of this Province has been of great advantage to his *Czariſh* Majeſty's Affairs, for he was now ſufficiently ſeparated from *Sweden*, and under no Obligation to maintain a great Number of Troops upon his Frontier, as before the keeping of good Garriſons in *Abo* and *Helſingford*, Places which he has made very ſtrong, and keeping a Number of Gallies always ready upon that Coaſt, is ſufficient to keep all quiet on that Side.

FROM hence alſo his Majeſty had drawn a vaſt Number of good Soldiers, the *Finlanders* being always eſteem'd the beſt Men in the *Swediſh* Armies, and eſpecially for Horſe, it being a Country for breeding of Horſes, the Men are naturally good Horſe-men, and yet I underſtand that his Majeſty has not Levy'd any Men there, but ſuch as voluntarily Liſted into his Service.

THE *Czar* had now finiſh'd the Conqueſt of the *Swediſh* Territories, as far as they lay contiguous to his own; nothing could more be attempted againſt the *Swedes*, but by Naval Preparations for a Deſcent on the Kingdom of *Sweden* it ſelf. His *Czariſh* Majeſty had, as I have mentioned already, very much improv'd his

Marine

Marine Affairs, as well as his Millitary Affairs by Land, but not to ſuch Perfection, for his Land Forces were brought to a Perfection not to be queſtion'd; his Troops were able to grapple with any of the Forces of his Neighbours Man for Man, nay, he has often beaten the *Swedes* when they have been ſuperior in Number, and in the laſt Action at the Siege of *Stetin*, where there were no Troops but *Ruſſians*, it appear'd how well they did their Buſineſs; how regularly they carry'd on their Approaches; how boldly they ſtorm'd; how firmly they ſuſtain'd the Sallies of the *Swedes*; and how artfully they mannag'd the Defence of their Trenches. We ſhall now ſee ſome Proceedings in which their naval Force was always concern'd.

His *Czariſh* Majeſty who knew the Diſpoſition of the King of *Sweden*, as well as any Man; knew there was no ſitting ſtill while he was in being; and the only way to reduce him to Reaſon, was, to puſh his Kingdom of *Sweden* to the utmoſt Extremity, while he was Abſent; if poſſible, to bring the Regency, newly eſtabliſh'd there, in the Princeſs *Ulrica Eleonora*, and the Senate, to the Neceſſity of making a Peace, before the King of *Sweden* return'd from *Turkey*.

To this Purpoſe, the *Czar* cauſed a Project to be laid before the King of *Denmark*, for a ſecond and more effectual Invading of *Schonen*, an Undertaking, which he knew very well, would be very ageeable to the King of *Denmark*, who having receiv'd a terrible Diſgrace in his former Attempt there, at the Battle of *Elſenburg*, would be very willing to retrieve that Blow, and alſo puſh the *Swedes*; he having likewiſe puſh'd the War on this ſide the *Sound*, to the utmoſt, and compleated

compleated the the Conqueſt of *Holſtein*, *Bremen*, and *Verden*; nothing remaining to the *Swedes* on this ſide the whole *Baltick* Sea, but *Pomeren*, and the City of *Wiſmar*; which were at that time under a kind of Offer to be Sequeſtrated to the King of *Pruſſia*, tho' afterwards the King of *Sweden* forbid it.

However the King of *Denmark* did not receive this Propoſal at firſt, in ſuch a manner as the *Czar* of *Muſcovy* expected; and much Time was ſpent in debating upon the particular Branches of the Undertaking, and the Quotas, and Expences neceſſary to be furniſhed. But at length his *Czariſh* Majeſty who knew this was the only way by which the King of *Sweden* could be effectualy humbled, conquered all his *Daniſh* Majeſty's Objections, and offer'd ſuch Aſſiſtance, as well of Land Forces, as of Shiping, that the King of *Denmark* ſaw an evident Opportunity put into his Hands, for recovering that Part of the old Kingdom of *Denmark*, which his Anceſtors had loſt to the *Swedes*, and which was given up by the Treaty of *Roſchild*, viz. *Schonen*, *Bleaking*, and *Halland*, Provinces extended on the Coaſt of the *Sound* and the *North Sea*, from *Malmo* to *Gottenbro'*, and which lye in the very Sight of his Pallace in *Copenhagen*.

As the King of *Denmark* began at laſt to liſten to his *Czariſh* Majeſty's offer; ſo Troops were prepar'd, order'd to march into *Pomeren*, and *Mecklemburgh*, to be tranſported from thence to *Copenhagen*, and in a Word, his *Czariſh* Majeſty made ſuch Preparations both by Land, and Sea, as convinc'd the King of *Denmark*, that he ſhould be put into a Poſture to humble *Sweden* effectually, and this brought him to come heartily into the thing, tho'

as

as it appear'd the Circumſtances of *Denmark*, were not at that time equal to the Undertaking.

However, as his *Czariſh* Majeſty ſtuck at nothing in Reaſon to animate the King of *Denmark*, to perſecute the War with a ſuitable vigour, 300000 Rixdollars were remitted to *Copenhagen*, and 200000 more afterwards to encourage the King of *Denmark* to haſten out his Fleet to Sea, and in the mean time the *Czar* fitted out his own Fleet, conſiſting of 30 Men of War, moſt of them being brought and fitted up in *England*, and *Holland*, and having embark'd 24000 Men on Board, they ſail'd for the Iſle of *Aland*, where his Majeſty attack'd Admiral *Ehrenſchild*, and took his Ship, and ſix Gallies, killed 327 Men, and took about 936 Priſoners, and landed 16000 Men in that Iſland; which put the whole Kingdom of *Sweden* into the moſt terrible Surprize, and Conſternation imaginable, the Iſle of *Aland*, being as it were at the Mouth of the River of *Stockholm*.

But all this while the *Danes* did nothing, notwithſtanding the Aſſiſtance his *Czariſh* Majeſty had ſent them, they pretended indeed to fit out their Ships and joyn the *Czar*'s Fleet, but they were ſo long in doing it, that the *Swedes* was at Sea, and rendezvous'd at the Iſle of *Bournholm* before the *Danes* were in Condition to act; ſo that the expected Conjunction was prevented, which indeed was the Diſappointment of all farther Opperations for that Summer.

The *Czar* ſeeing how little ſuch Allies were to be depended upon, put off his intended Deſcent upon *Sweden*, for the *Swediſh* Fleet was ſo ſtrong, being 20 Men of War, and ſome of their Men of War ſo large, for they had four or five three Deck Ships from 84 to 106 Guns, and his Majeſty's Fleet

Fleet, tho' well appointed, yet conſiſted chiefly of Ships, bought in *England*, and *Holland*, moſt of them being from 44 to 60 Guns, three Ships or four of his Majeſty's own building might be there of 70 and 80 Guns, But was not adviſeable to come to a general Engagement with the *Swedes*, without the Conjunction of the *Danes*.

IT is to be remembered here, that his *Czariſh* Majeſty having for ſome Years, when he firſt applyed his Thoughts to encreaſe his Naval ſtrength, had his Eyes and all his Meaſures employ'd upon building a Royal Navy for the Service of the *Black-Sea*, ſo he had now brought that Work to ſuch perfection, that he had a Fleet at *Veronowitz*, on the *Tanais*, conſiſting of 44 Ships, from 50 to 90 Guns, whereof 16 of them carried from 80 to 90 Guns; all which Preparations were intirely loſt, and rendered uſeleſs, by the ſurrender of *Aſoph*, given back in Conſequence of the unhappy Campaign in *Moldavia*a, s a above.

BUT the opening a Navigation into the *Baltick*, by the taking the once impregnable Caſtle of *Notteburgh*; the making a Harbour and Port at *Croonſlot*, and building the Imperial City of *Petersburgh*, which we find at the writing this Hiſtory to be rais'd in about 22 Years from a vacant piece of Ground, to a City of 50000 Houſes beſides publick Edifices, all theſe were at the time of this taking of the Iſland of *Aland*, but new things, and therefore, tho' the Progreſs the *Czar* had made, was for the time ſurpriſing to the World, yet his Naval ſtrength was young, his Subjects not yet enur'd to Sea-Service; and he was too wary a Prince to put the Succeſs of all his great Deſigns upon, the hazard of a general Engagement

ſo early, and as it were in the beginning of things; and for this Reaſon he withdrew from the Iſland of *Aland*, upon the Diſappointment of the *Danes*, and gave over his Enterprize for that Year.

SINCE this, we have found his *Czariſh* Majeſty has improv'd his *Marine* ſtrength to ſuch a degree, and furniſh'd himſelf with ſuch Capital Ships of his own building, that now he is a Match for the *Swedes*, and the *Danes* put together, and whenever thoſe Powers apprehend his coming to attack them, thy are oblig'd to get the aid of a Squadron of Men of War from *Great-Britain* to their Aſſiſtance, or rather as it may juſtly be call'd for their Protection.

BUT to return to the *Danes*; the King of *Denmark*, began now to beſenſible of his Miſtake, and of his having loſt the Opportunity for the humbling his Enemy the *Swede*; and now to retrieve it we find, that the *Czar* preſs'd him to engage in a new Scheme for the ſaid ſecond Invaſion of *Schonen*, and offer'd him his Aſſiſtance, as well by Sea as Land; alſo ſeeing how ſucceſsfully the *Czar* went on, and how it might be probable that at one time or other, the *Czar*, by his Superior ſtrength would break in upon the *Swedes* without him, and then he might loſe the Opportunity, and have no ſhare at all of the Advantage: This turned the Scale at the Court of *Denmark*; and as the *Czar* preſs'd him before, as I have ſaid to engage in ſuch an Attempt, and promis'd to Aſſiſt and Support him; ſo now he, his *Daniſh* Majeſty preſs'd the *Czar* as much to come into that Scheme, as if it had been contriv'd at *Copenhagen* and not at *Petersburgh*.

In the mean time, the *Czar*, as I have ſaid, withdrew from *Aland*; and having order'd his Gallies and light Fregates to carry the Land Forces to *Abo* in *Finland*, he ſail'd with the Groſs of his Fleet, and the Ships, he had taken from the *Swedes* to *Petersburgh*, where he made his publick Entry, with almoſt as much Triumph as he did for merly at *Muſcow*, after the Victory at *Pultowa*.

And his Majeſty did this the rather, becauſe it was the firſt Snow of that kind, which had ever been made in his new City; and becauſe it was a heartening, and Encouragement to his Seamen, to merit by their Bravery, and to other of his Subjects to enter into the Sea-Service, which they might ſee had ſuch Honours, and Triumphs attending it. The Sum of which is as follows: As to a particular Deſcription of his Triumphal-Arches, and other Works for the Decoration of it, it is too long for this Work: I ſhall only ſay they were ſuch as ſhewed, that the Contrivers of them very well underſtood their Buſineſs, and if they had been in *France* or *Holland*, they would not have been out done by any: This Triumphal-Entry was made at *Petersburgh*, the 20th of *September*, 1714, in the following Order:

I. *Came up ſome* Ruſſian *Veſſels called* Scampavia.
II. *Three* Swediſh *Sheerboats.*
III. *Six* Swediſh *Gallies.*

IV. *A* Swediſh *Frigate, (theſe taken in the Fight with Admiral* Ehrenſchild*) all with the* Swediſh *Colours hanging down.*

V. *The* Scampavia *of the* Czar, *as Rear Admiral; ſix other* Ruſſian Scampavia, *which Veſſels being come up over againſt the Triumphal Arch that was erected on the Bridge near the Fotreſs, they ſaluted the ſame with all their Cannon, and were anſwered with the like Diſcharge from the Cannon of the Fort and the Admiralty.*

All the Men that were on Board landed there, and the Proceſſion began in the following Order.

I. A *Company of* Brebrezinski.

II. *The Cannon on their Carriages which were taken laſt* Winter *near* Vaſa *by Lieutenant General Prince* Galiczin *in his Victory over the* Swediſh *Major General* Arenfeldt.

III. *Sixty three Colours or Standards taken in the Action aforeſaid, and the laſt Engagement.*

IV. *The* Swediſh *Subaltern Sea Officers, Soldiers and Seamen.*

V. *Two Companies of* Brebrezinski.

VI. *The* Swediſh *Sea Officers, Priſoners.*

VII. *The Flag of the Rear Admiral* Ehrenſchild.

VIII. *The* Swediſh *Rear Adimiral* Ehrenſchild Priſoner.

IX. *The*

IX. *The* Muſcovite *Rear Admiral, being the* Czar *himſelf, with the reſt of the Regiment of* Brebenszki. *As ſoon as his Majeſty came under the Triumphal Arch, all the Senators, Grandees and Foreign Miniſters repaired there to Congratulate his Majeſty upon his Victory, and the Governor of* Moſcow *in the Name of the Empire of* Muſcovy, *Complimented him on his Bravery, and thank'd him for his good Services, and as an Acknowledgement thereof, declared him Vice-Admiral. They proceeded then in the Order aforeſaid, and march'd into the Fort, and there was another general Diſcharge of the Cannon, &c. Then Prince* Menzikoff *took all the Foreign Miniſters into his Shallop, and carried them to his Palace, before which there was a magnificent Triumphal Arch erected on the Water adorn'd with rich Hangings, and about half an Hour after the* Czar *came thither, being receiv'd at the ſaid Arch by that Prince, and then conducted in to the Palace, where a moſt magnificent Entertaiment was prepared, which laſted till Nine at Night. The* Swediſh *Rear-Admiral* Ehrenſchild *ſat at Table between his* Czariſh *Majeſty and Prince* Menzikoff; *and during the Entertainment the* Czar *took the Opportunity to compliment that Admiral on his brave Defence in the Fight, aſſuring him ſeveral times of his particular Eſteem and Affection, and that he would take care to make him as eaſy as the could under his Misfortune. The other* Swediſh *Officers ſat at another Table, and were uſed with all poſſible Civilities, and ſo ended that great Solemnity.*

THERE

THERE was alſo a very Magnificent Fire-work appointed to be perfornied or play'd off, at the Gate of the Royal Palace. But the Engineers repreſenting that they had not compleated the Deſign, and could not be ready under three or four Days, it was play'd off the *Sunday* after, when his *Czariſh* Majeſty went publickly to the great Church, to give Thanks for the Succeſs of his Arms; and it was admirably perform'd, without the leaſt Diſorder or Miſtake.

IT is to be noted, That this was not a Triumph for the bare taking of one Ship and ſome Gallies from the *Swedes* at the Iſle of *Aland*; but it was upon a Concluſion of a long Series of Victories obtain'd over the *Swedes*; and indeed, finiſhing the Conqueſt of all the Dominions which the *Swedes* had poſſeſs'd on the *South* and *Eaſt* Sides of the *Baltick Seas*, viz. the whole Province of *Livonia*; of *Eaſthonia*, and of *Carelia*; and *Ingarmania*; the Town and Port of *Narva*; the City of *Stetin*; the Caſtle of *Notteburg*; the City of *Wyburgh*; the Iſle of *Aland*; and the whole Country of *Finland*, a Province of itſelf, large enough, to be call'd a Kingdom, and ſeated upon the Sea Coaſt, for 300 Miles in Length, where it is to be noted that the ſtrong Caſtle of *Helſingvos*, the laſt and only Place which the *Swedes* held in that Province, was taken at the relanding of the Army there; ſo that the whole Country was ſubdu'd, and the *Swedes* put into a terrible Fright, even in the Heart of *Sweden*. Nay, a Body of *Muſcovites* had tranſported themſelves over the *Bothnick* Gulph, and had landed on the Main of Old *Sweden* it ſelf, *that is to ſay*, in the Province of *Weſt Both-*

nia, where they had ravaged the Country, burnt ſeveral conſiderable Towns and Villages, where they had taken *Uma* the Capital of that Part of the Country, and burnt it to the Ground; after which, they extended Northwards to *Torne*, and deſtroy'd the Iron Works, which are very Conſiderable that Way; and did incredible Damage. Another Body of their Troops, advanced from *Finland*, *North*, into the Country of *Eaſt Bothnia*, where the *Swediſh* General *Ahrenfield* Commanded, and endeavour'd to fight him; but he not daring to come to Action, retir'd Northward, into a remote and inacceſſible, and indeed, barren and uninhabited Country, where it was not practicable to follow him, leaving the Country of *Eaſt Bothnea* open to the Spoil.

THESE things merrited a Triumph, as much as the *Roman* Generals merited a Triumph for the Conqueſt of the moſt powerful Nations they ſubdued.

BUT to come to the Progreſs of the War again, the *Winter* was no more paſt in Idleneſs than the *Summer*; and the *Czar* an active and reſtleſs Genius, in all his great Undertakings, kept his Enemies the *Swedes* in Continual Allarms, with the Rumour of an Attempt projected to paſs the *Bothnick* Gulph in the Time of Froſt, with his whole Army over the Ice; thoſe who know the Country, and thoſe Seas, know very well, that as the *Bothnick* Sea is not deep, and conſequently not agitated much by Storms, and alſo, that there is very little Tide, or Current there, it is the ſooneſt Frozen of any part of the *Baltick Sea*; and then, as its Scituation is more Northerly than

any

any other part of the *Baltick*, lying extended to the 64th Degree of *North* Latitude; and is thereby infinitely colder than the reſt, ſo it is no ſtrange thing to find that Sea like one ſolid Rock of Ice, for four or five Months together, and the Country People travelling over it themſelves, paſſing and re-paſſing as ſecurely as on dry Land, from the one *Bothnea* to the other: Hence it was no improbable thing, that the *Czar* might, if his Views had been that Way, have marched with his whole Army over that Sea, not excluding his Baggage, Cannon, and Waggons.

BUT tho' his *Czariſh* Majeſty thought fit to allarm the *Swedes* with the daily Apprehenſions of ſuch an Attempt; yet, this was really none of his preſent View: However, it had this Effect, it continually harraſs'd the *Swediſh* Army, in Marching, and counter Marching, as their own Fears directed them; nay, it went farther, for as the *Swedes* had tranſported two ſeveral Bodies of their regular Troops to the Iſle of *Rugen* and *Pomerania*, and a thind to *Wiſmar*; So that General *Ducker* who commanded there, threatned to take the Field, and advance into *Holſtein*, and *Jutland*, as Count *Steinboch* had done, having this Advantage in ſuch an Enterprize, *viz.* that he had no Army of *Ruſſians* and *Saxons* to follow him in the Rear. The Allarm given to the *Swedes* in their own Country, by his *Czariſh* Majeſty hovering over their Coaſt, as above, had obliged them to ſend for 7000 Men back again from *Pomeren*, to reinforce their Army at Home, and to defend the Capital of their Kingdom.

THUS

THUS the *Danes* were deliver'd, at once, by the powerful Fleet of the *Czar*, from an Enemy, which they dreaded in *Holſtein*, and from a War that would have perhaps been too heavy for them, as well for the Power of their Enemies, as the Expence of it; for the *Swedes* would, at leaſt, have ruin'd all the *Daniſh* Dominions on the *Terra Firma*, by the Contributions they would have drawn from thence, and the Ravages of the open Country, from whence the Capital City is furniſh'd with daily Proviſions.

THIS very View gave the King of *Denmark* an additional Vigour in his new Deſign of invading *Schonen*, nothing could more effectually deliver him from the juſt Apprehenſions of a Viſit from *Pomerania*, as a Deſcent upon *Schonen*, carrying the War home into the Heart of *Sweden*, and finding the *Swedes* Employment to defend their own Towns, inſtead of giving them Leiſure to meditate the Invaſion of thoſe Abroad.

THIS Winter the King of *Sweden* came from *Turkey*, and arriv'd incognito at the City of *Stralſund* in *Pomerania*, and the World had great Expectations that his coming thither would give a new Turn to the Affairs of *Europe*; but that Prince, whoſe poſitive Temper, averſe to the Advice of his beſt Friends, puſh'd him upon the moſt deſperate and inconſiſtent Actions, which quickly made all his Neighbours eaſy, as to their Apprehenſions of his Power, for embroiling himſelf with the King of *Pruſſia*, and his *Britannick* Majeſty, then Elector of *Hanover*, he compleated his own Ruin, by abſolutely refuſing the moſt honourable Propoſal for Peace that could be offer'd him, and engaging himſelf in a new War; for he

was beſieged both by Sea and Land, in his City of *Stralſund*, and at laſt forced to make his Eſcape in a ſmall Veſſel by Sea, which landed him in *Sweden*, leaving behind him all his Dominions, and all his Hopes in the Empire of *Germany*, in which he never ſet his Foot afterwards.

About four Months before his *Czariſh* Majeſty made his Triumphal Entry into *Petersbourg*, as above related, three Men of War, which he had order'd to be bought in *England*, arriv'd at *Riga*, and another, was launch'd at *Petersbourg*, upon which Occaſion, the Czar appear'd in a very good Humour, and diſcours'd with great Judgment on the proſperous Succeſs of his Ship-Building. Among many other notable and ingenious Diſcourſes, which I heard held by his *Czariſh* Majeſty on the like Occurrences, there is one very remarkable, which he directed to his old *Ruſſians*, ſitting round about him, on board that new launch'd Man of War, reproving them for not following the Example of other *Ruſſian* Miniſters and Generals, and taking Encouragement from their Experience.

"Brethren, *ſays he*, who is the Man among "you, that thirty Years ago could have ſurmiz'd "he ſhould have been employ'd with me in "Ship-Carpenter's Work here in the *Baltick*; of "coming hither in a *German* Dreſs to ſettle in "theſe Countries, conquer'd by our Fatigues "and Bravery; of living to ſee ſo many valiant "and victorious Soldiers and Seamen ſprung up "from *Ruſſian* Blood; to ſee our Sons, from "foreign Countries, return home able Men; "to ſee ſo many foreign Artificers, and Artiſts

"of

" of all kinds, ſettling in our Dominions; and
" to ſee the remoteſt Potentates expreſſing for us
" the greateſt Eſteem?

" HISTORIANS place the original Seat of
" Sciences in *Greece*, from whence, being expel-
" led by the Fatality of the Times, they flou-
" riſhed and ſpread in *Italy*, and afterwards
" diſpers'd themſelves all over *Europe*; but, by
" the Perverſeneſs of our Anceſtors, were hin-
" der'd from penetrating any farther than *Poland*,
" tho' the *Poles*, as well as the *Germans*, hereto-
" fore groaped in the ſame Darkneſs, wherein
" we have, till this Time, lived. But at length
" their Eyes were open'd, by the indefatigable
" Care of their Governors, inſomuch, that they
" ſoon made themſelves Maſters of thoſe Arts,
" Sciences, and Improvements in Life, of which
" formerly *Greece* boaſted. It is now our Turn,
" if you will ſeriouſly ſecond my Deſigns, and
" add to your blind Obedience, a voluntary En-
" quiry, by applying yourſelves to the Know-
" ledge of Good and Evil. I can compare this
" *Tranſmigration* of *Sciences*, with nothing more
" properly, than with the *Circulation* of the *Blood*
" in human Bodies; and my Mind almoſt per-
" ſuades me, that they will ſome Time or other
" quit their Abode in *England*, *France*, and *Ger-*
" *many*, come to ſettle, for ſome Centuries, a-
" mong us, and perhaps afterwards return to
" *Greece*, their original Home. In the mean
" Time, I earneſtly recommend to your Practice
" that *Latin* ſaying, ORA ET LABORA, *Pray*
" and *Work*, and in this Caſe be perſuaded, that
" we may happen, even in our Life Time, to
" put other civiliz'd Nations to the Bluſh, and

" to carry the *Ruſſian* Name to the higheſt Pitch " of Glory."

THE old *Ruſſians* liſten'd to this Excellent *Speech*, with a profound Silence, and applauded their Monarch with an univerſal *Je je prawda* — 'tis very true —— at the ſame Time promiſing a ready Obedience to the Will of a *Prince* of ſuch uncommon Penetration, eſpecially in that Part of the Globe.

AFTER this Digreſſion, we are next to conſider, that tho', in the Beginning of the Year 1715, the Troubles in *Poland* ſeem'd to be quieted by the Mediation of the CZAR; and the *Saxon* Troops, which had given Occaſion to the Confederacy, whereby *Poland* was like to have been involv'd in a Civil War, having evacuated that Kingdom, the *Poles* flatter'd themſelves with the Enjoyment of ſome Tranquillity. But, contrary to their Expectations, the Troops of the *Mediator*, which were to have evacuated the Territories of *Poland* immediately after the Exchange of the Ratifications of the Treaty, remain'd there till the cloſe of the Year 1716; and the Room of the few that return'd home, was ſupply'd by the *Muſcovite* Forces that quitted the Dutchy of *Mecklenburgh*.

IN the Year 1717, the CZAR made a Journey into *Holland*, and from thence went to the Court of *France*, where reſiding for ſome Time, he at length return'd into his own Dominions, and having made ſome Stay at *Peterſbourg*, he went to *Muſcovy*, from which Place he had been abſent ten Years. But before he left *Peterſbourg*, he appointed ſeveral Councils for the Adminiſtration of the Government, according to the Method he had

had obſerv'd in *France*, *viz.* 1. For Foreign Affairs. 2. For Finances. 3. For Juſtice. 4. For Reviſion. 5. For War. 6. For Naval Affairs. 7. For Trade and Commerce. 8. For Receipts and Expences. 9. For Arts and Sciences, Mines, Buildings, *&c.*

No ſooner was he arriv'd at *Muſcow*, than, being inform'd of ſeveral Miſmanagements in the Civil Adminiſtration during his Abſence, he order'd the Conduct of his Miniſters to be enquir'd into; and made a terrible Example of Prince *Welkonski*, a Major-General of the Army, who, having been appointed to regulate the Cuſtom-Houſe of *Archangel*, was convicted of corrupt Practices in the Diſcharge of his Office, and ſentenced to be beheaded, but, upon the Interceſſion of his Friends, and his own Choice, the CZAR permitted him to be ſhot to Death, which was executed by the Soldiers of his own Regiment. The ſame Year, upon ſome Miſunderſtandings between the *Czar* and his Son, that Prince thought fit to withdraw out of his Father's Dominions without his Leave; and travelled thro' *Germany* and *Switzerland* into *Italy*, where he continu'd till the Beginning of the Year 1718, when, paſſing thro' *Dantzick*, in his way to *Peterſbourg*, he was met in *Livonia* by a Courier ſent to inform him, that the CZAR was ſet out for *Muſcow*, and expected him there. He proſecuted his Journey with the utmoſt Expedition, and was attended by the Sieur *Tolſtoy*; immediately after his Arrival, he waited upon the *Czar*, with whom he had a long Conference. We have not Room, in the intended Compaſs of theſe Memoirs, to give a particular Detail

Detail of the Proceedings againſt the *Czarowitz*, but muſt refer the Reader to the Account of that Proceſs, which the *Czar* order'd to be printed at the *Hague* in *French*, a Tranſlation of which may be found in *The preſent State of Ruſſia*, in 2 Vols. 8vo. printed at *London*, 1722. It is well known, that the Effect of this Proceſs terminated in the *Czarowitz*'s Renunciation of his Right to the Throne. His Excluſion was follow'd, in a few Months after, with the Death of that unfortunate Prince, whom his Father never deſiſted to perſecute, till he procur'd a Sentence of Death to be formally pronounc'd againſt him. The Mother of the degraded Prince, from whom the CZAR was divorc'd, and the Princeſs *Mary*, the CZAR's own Siſter, were brought from *Muſcow* to *Peterſbourg*, and ſent from thence to be confin'd in the Caſtle of *Slutelburgh*.

WHILE his *Czariſh* Majeſty was meditating a Deſcent into *Sweden* in the Year 1719, the News of the King of *Sweden*'s Death, CHARLES the XII. was brought to him, as was, ſoon after, the Proclamation of *Ulrica Eleonara* to that Crown. That Princeſs notify'd to the *Czar* her Acceſſion by Letters, and propoſed at the ſame Time to renew the ancient Friendſhip between the Two Crowns; and Conferences about the Peace were thereupon continu'd in the Iſle of *Aland*. But, having been broken off ſome Months after, his *Czariſh* Majeſty made the intended Deſcent into *Sweden*, where he burnt ſeveral Cities, and deſtroy'd their Copper, and other Mines. In 1720, the *Czar*, and their *Swediſh* Majeſties having agreed upon the Preliminaries of a new

Treaty

Treaty, it was ſign'd at *Nieuſtadt* in *Finland*, the 10th of *Septemb.* 1721, by which the *Czar* remain'd Poſſeſſor of *Livonia*, *Eſtonia*, *Ingria*, Part of *Carelia*, of the Diſtrict of *Wybourg*, and of almoſt all the Places he had conquer'd during the Northern War. The 22d of *October* following, being the Day that Treaty was publiſhed, his *Czariſh* Majeſty was proclaim'd by the Senate, *Father of his Country*, *Emperor of all* Ruſſia, *and* PETER *the Great:* Which Title has been ſince acknowledg'd by the King and States of *Sweden*, by the King of *Pruſſia*, by the Republick of *Holland*, and by the Grand Signior. In the two ſucceeding Years, 1722 and 1723, he extended his Conqueſts, and carried his Arms as far as the *Caſpian* Sea, where he took the Cities of *Derbent* and *Terki*, and ſubdu'd ſeveral Provinces, formerly ſubject to the Kings of *Perſia*, the Poſſeſſion whereof he ſecur'd to himſelf by the Treaty concluded at *Conſtantinople*, between his Miniſters and the Commiſſioners of the Grand Signior, the next Year, 1724.

ON the 28th of *January*, 1724-5, the *Czar* having, for twelve Days, felt violent Pains, occaſion'd by the *Retention* of his *Urine*, ſent for his Phyſicians, who preſcribed him ſeveral Remedies, but to no Purpoſe. On the 4th of *February* they reſolv'd to probe him, and having diſcover'd an *Abſceſs* in the Neck of his Bladder, they pierced it, which gave him ſome Eaſe; but the Operation having been made too late, the Mortification appear'd, and the *Czar*, ſeeing all Hopes of his Recovery paſt, prepar'd himſelf for Death. He ſent for his

chief

chief Miniſters, to whom he gave ſeveral ſecret Orders to diſcharge ſeveral Perſons under Confinement. He afterwards comforted his Family with a great deal of Reſolution, and having deſir'd to be left alone, he ſpent the ſmall Remainder of his Time in Acts of Religion. And, at laſt, after ſome Hours of Agony, he died on the 8th of the ſame Month, at Five in the Morning, in the fifty third Year of his Age.

THE Grief of the Inhabitants of *Peterſbourg* was inexpreſſible, when they were acquainted with the Death of his *Czariſh* Majeſty, for whom they had the extremeſt Love and Veneration. And what is ſingularly remarkable, an eminent *French* Writer, ſince his Deceaſe, has given him the following Character. "The late CZAR "of *Muſcovy*, *ſays he*, being born and endowed "with the greateſt Virtues and extraordinary "Talents, he diſcovered in his earlieſt Youth a "penetrating Genius, capable of executing the "moſt enterprizing Projects. Being ſatisfied "by the *Hiſtory* of his *Anceſtors*, that the *Form* "*of Government*, as he found it conſtituted at "his Acceſſion to the Throne, was altogether "inſufficient to render his People ſo Polite, in-"duſtrious and skillful as he would have them, "he made it the chief Bent of his Thoughts to "improve that Scheme, but that he might not "introduce any Change, the Succeſs whereof "he could not warrant by any Precedent, he "travelled into diſtant Countries to make Ob-"ſervations upon the beſt regulated Govern-"ments, where after having collected with the "utmoſt Exactneſs ſuch Memoirs as he con-

"ceived

" ceived might be uſeful to his Deſign; he re-
" turned Home, in order to proſecute his inten-
" ded Plan for the Happineſs of his Subjects,
" whoſe Obſtinacy in ſticking tenaciouſly to
" their old Cuſtoms, retarded the Execution of
" ſo good a Project, and obliged him ſometimes
" to uſe Severities. *Muſcovy* is beholden to the
" *Czar* for a ſettled Intercourſe with other Na-
" tions, which cannot but be of great Ad-
" vantage to its Commerce; for introducing
" Arts and Sciences among them, whereof, be-
" fore his Time, that Nation had but a very
" ſmall Tincture; for the Suppreſſion of ma-
" ny ſuperſtitious Cuſtoms; and for a Mili-
" tary Diſcipline; that Prince having form'd
" the Infantry, which heretofore was only fit
" to defend the Country, into Soldiers every
" way qualify'd to make Conqueſts. His Name
" was reſpected by the Eaſtern Nations; the Son
" of a dethroned Monarch implor'd his Aſſi-
" ſtance, and though he has not liv'd long
" enough to revenge the Diſloyalty of that
" unfortunate Prince's Subjects, yet he has ob-
" tain'd the Glory of having curb'd the Chief
" of the Rebels, and to re-take from the *Uſur-*
" *per* thoſe Provinces upon which he had ſo
" unjuſtly ſeiz'd.

In the Year 1722, the CZAR having made a Regulation, which provided, that he might nominate and appoint his Succeſſor by his laſt Will, the States of his Empire ſolemnly ſwore to obſerve that Regulation in 1723, and afterwards renew'd that Oath at the Coronation of the Empreſs CATHERINA ALEXOWINA,

on the 18th Day of *March*, 1724. As he had, by his Will, appointed that his Conſort ſhould be his Succeſſor, the Senate, the Synod, and the General Officers, acknowledg'd her Empreſs of all *Ruſſia*, and by their Advice, and the Univerſal Conſent of her Subjects, ſhe has taken the Government upon her.

In the publick Prayers which are order'd to be read in the Churches for the Empreſs, ſhe is ſtiled, *Our moſt Orthodox and moſt Potent Empreſs and Great Lady* CATHERINA ALEXOWINA, *Sovereign of all* RUSSIA.

Two Days before his Deceaſe, the CZAR order'd, that all the Priſoners in his whole Monarchy, except thoſe for Murder and Robbery, ſhould be ſet at Liberty, and that the whole Army ſhould be paid their Arrears. The Royal Body was expos'd for ſome Days in a Coffin made of pure Silver, weighing ſix hundred Pounds, and curiouſly wrought by a *French* Artiſt.

THE Princeſs *Natalia Petrowna*, the youngeſt of the CZARINA's three Daughters, died on the 15th Day of *March*, 1724-5, in the ſeventh Year of her Age. Her Corpſe was interred with the Emperor her Father in the Cathedral Church of St. *Peter* and St. *Paul*, in the City of *Peterſbourg*, and their Obſequies were perform'd with the greateſt Pomp and Solemnity.

THE Gentlemen of the *Academy* have compoſed ſeveral Epitaphs upon this Occaſion, among

mong which, the Preference is given to this following, on Account of its Elegancy and Conciſeneſs.

En jacet hic Magnus, Magna qui Magna reliquit
Regna, Pius, Sapiens, Victor ubiq; Potens.

FINIS.